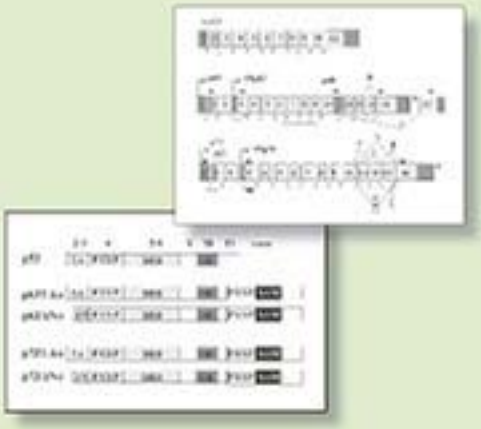
Advances in Oto-Rhino-Laryngology
Editor: W. Arnold
Vol. 62

Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer

Molecular Pathways, Novel Therapeutic Targets, and Prognostic Factors

Editor
Henning Bier



KARGER

Advances in Oto-Rhino-Laryngology

Vol. 62

Series Editor

W. Arnold *Munich*

KARGER

Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer

Molecular Pathways, Novel Therapeutic Targets, and Prognostic Factors

Volume Editor

Henning Bier *Düsseldorf*

52 figures and 22 tables, 2005

KARGER

Basel · Freiburg · Paris · London · New York ·
Bangalore · Bangkok · Singapore · Tokyo · Sydney

Prof. Dr. Henning Bier
Heinrich-Heine-University
Dept. of Otorhinolaryngology/Head and Neck Surgery
Moorenstrasse 5
DE–40225 Düsseldorf (Germany)

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Current research in head and neck cancer / volume editor, Henning Bier.
p. ; cm. – (Advances in oto-rhino-laryngology, ISSN 0065-3071 ; v. 62)
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN 3-8055-7789-3 (hard cover : alk. paper)
1. Head–Cancer. 2. Neck–Cancer.
[DNLM: 1. Head and Neck Neoplasms–genetics. 2. Genes, Tumor Suppressor. 3. Head and Neck Neoplasms–therapy. WE 707 C976 2005] I. Bier, Henning. II. Series.
RF16.A38 vol. 62
[RC280.H4]
617.51 s–dc22
[616.99/4

2004020575

Bibliographic Indices. This publication is listed in bibliographic services, including Current Contents® and Index Medicus.

www.karger.com
Printed in Switzerland on acid-free paper by Reinhardt Druck, Basel
ISSN 0065–3071
ISBN 3–8055–7789–3

Contents

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 1–11

Development of a Conditional Mouse Model for Head and Neck Squamous Cell Carcinoma

E.M.J. Bindels, M.W.M. van den Brekel

Department of Otolaryngology, The Netherlands Cancer Institute,
Amsterdam, The Netherlands

Abstract

Last decade major advances have been made in the field of mouse model engineering. Newly developed conditional mouse models have overcome important drawbacks in conventional mouse models. Conditional mouse models are especially suited for the development of models of sporadic human carcinomas. These models can control gene (in)activation in a time and/or tissue-specific manner. Here, we review two important conditional mouse model systems, based on the Tet off/on and the Cre-Lox system. Furthermore possible applications of the Cre-Lox system in the development of a mouse model for HNSCC are being discussed. In the future, conditional mouse models for HNSCC can be used in the identification of new key genes in HNSCC tumorigenesis, and would furthermore serve as an indispensable tool for designing new treatment-modalities.

Despite advances in the management of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC), overall survival has hardly improved for the last 25 years. The development of a (mouse) model for HNSCC that closely mimics the human situation would be beneficial to detect new key genes in HNSCC tumorigenesis and serve as a tool for designing new treatment modalities.

Current model systems for head and neck cancer research mainly consist of in vitro cell cultures and in vivo models using (nude) mice, hamsters or rats.

Experiments with cultured cells are of course fast and cost effective in testing large amounts of different new drugs and combinations of drugs for cancer therapy and chemoprevention. However, most in vitro systems are devoid of tumor-host interactions, and their tumor cells have genetically adapted to the culture conditions. This makes extrapolation of in vitro results to the human situation very difficult.

So far, several animal models for HNSSC have been generated. The most commonly used model is the 7,12-dimethylbenz(a)anthracene-induced hamster buccal pouch model [1, 2]. This model consistently induces premalignant mucosal lesions and SCC after repeated application of the carcinogen for 14 weeks. Although this seems an attractive approach for carcinogenesis, these tumors do not genetically resemble human oral carcinomas. Unlike the human counterpart, 7,12-dimethylbenz(a)anthracene-induced tumors are relatively genetically stable and contain specific mutations of the Ha-*ras* gene [3].

Rats and mice develop oral SCC after treatment with the carcinogen 4-nitroquinoline-N-oxide. Generally, treatment protocols consist of exposure to 4-nitroquinoline-N-oxide via the drinking water for 2–6 months or painting on the tongue for 12–16 weeks [4, 5]. Unfortunately, the frequency and yield of tumor development is relatively low [6]. Also other carcinogens, like benzo[a]pyrene, N-nitroso-N-methylurea, 4-(methylnitrosamino)-1-(3-pyridyl)-1-butanone or nitrosonornicotine, are used to induce tumors in the oral cavity of hamsters, rats and mice [7, 8]. However, p53 inactivation, an important hallmark in HNSCC development, is infrequent in all these chemically induced epithelial tumors [9]. Furthermore, the prolonged application of carcinogens makes these above-mentioned models laborious and time consuming.

Other in vivo models consist of (xeno)grafting of (human) cancer cells into immunologically compromised mice [10]. Recently, an orthotopic model has been developed which gave rise to invasion and metastasis [11]. However, models with immunocompromised mice have limitations, as these do not resemble multistep carcinogenesis and the influence of the immune system on tumorigenesis cannot be studied.

There is a need for an animal model of HNSCC that more closely resembles the disease as found in man from initiation and progression to metastasis. As there is an enormous genetic homology between man and mouse, it is likely that most genes that play a role in human cancer have their counterparts in mice. Therefore the transgenic mouse model could permit identification and characterization of mutations found during carcinogenesis and progression. In such a model, clonal expansion of premalignant cells can be assessed. It can also be used to assess the contribution of individual genes involved in tumorigenesis (genotype-phenotype relation). Finally this model system might permit to test novel chemopreventive and therapeutic substances closely related and specific to the genes affected. In this way it might be possible to interact at different time points during tumor progression to see which pathways are essential for tumor development and maintenance.

Nowadays, advances in mouse genetic engineering [12, 13] make it possible to fulfill much of the requirements stated above. Conditional mouse models

in general and their use in the development of a mouse model for HNSCC will be discussed below.

Conditional Mouse Models

In the last few decades, conventional transgenic mice (gene overexpression or knockouts) have played an invaluable role in the study of normal biological processes and disease. However, these conventional model systems have limitations. Firstly, in the 'all or nothing' conventional approach, the genetic modification is found in all cells of the mice. Frequently, a genetic alteration has a profound effect on normal development and can either lead to embryonic lethality or developmental adaptation. For that reason, the contribution of embryonic-lethal BRCA1 and BRCA2 in mammary tumorigenesis could not be studied in a classical mouse model [12, 14]. Secondly, because all cells of a specific tissue express the genetic lesion, tumor cells are surrounded by abnormal cells, which might influence tumor behavior. Thirdly, the contribution of some genetic alterations to a specific tumor type is biased by their strong predisposition to tumor formation in other tissues. Homozygous deletion of p53 almost inevitably leads to lymphoma and sarcoma, before onset of tumorigenesis in the desired tissue [12, 14]. To circumvent these problems, conditional transgenic technologies have been developed, which allows spatiotemporal control of gene deletion or (over)expression in mice. These systems can roughly be divided into two categories: (1) regulatable overexpression and (2) conditional genetic (in)activation. With these new conditional mouse tools, an increasing number of mouse models are being made, which cover important cancers in man, like lung, prostate, breast and pancreas carcinoma [14–17].

The Tetracycline Off/On System

Several in vivo systems exist, which can regulate transgene expression via transcriptional transactivation [reviewed in 13, 18]. We only discuss the best described and most frequently used: the tetracycline (Tet)-responsive system. It was originally developed by Gossen and Bujard [19; www.zmbh.uni-heidelberg.de/Bujard/Homepage.html], is nowadays commercially available [www.bdbiosciences.com/clontech/tet/index.shtml] and used worldwide in many laboratories. In the Tet system, the tetracycline repressor is modified in a transcriptional activator by fusing it with the activation domains of the herpes simplex virus VP16 protein. This fusion protein is called tetracycline transcriptional transactivator (tTA). The tTA specifically binds to a DNA binding site called TRE (tetracycline-responsive element), which consists of the tetracycline operator and a cytomegalovirus-derived minimal promoter. In the absence of tetracycline, tTA can bind to the TRE and activate transcription of a desired transgene.

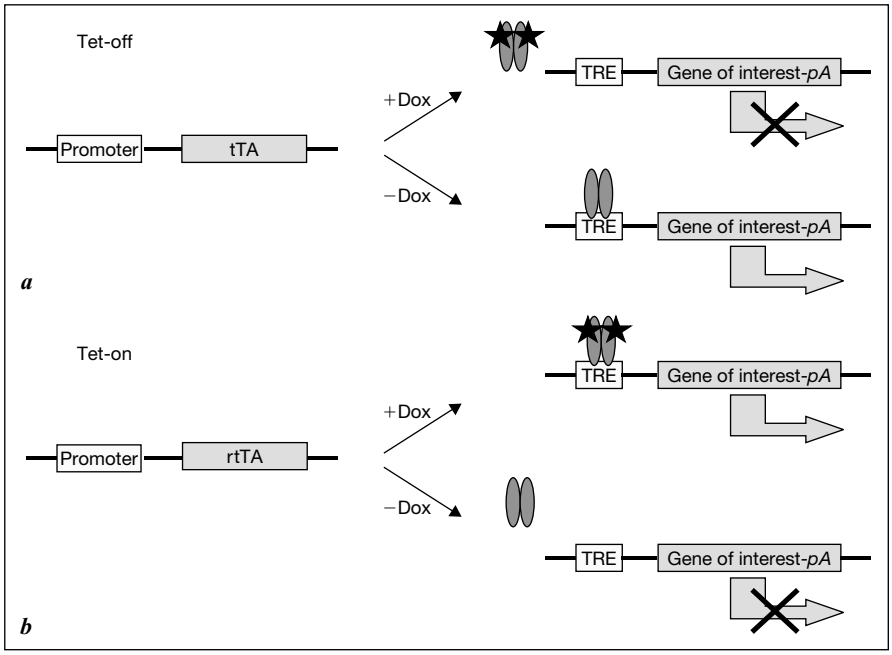


Fig. 1. Regulation of gene expression by the Tet system. ***a*** In the absence of the inducer doxycycline (Dox), tTA dimers bind to the TRE (containing 7 tandem-repeated tetracycline operator sequences fused with a minimal promoter), thereby driving expression of a transgene. In the presence of doxycycline, tTA dimers undergo conformational changes and cannot bind the TRE (Tet-off). ***b*** In the rtTA system, only in the presence of doxycycline, the rtTA dimers can bind to the TRE and activate transcription (Tet-on). *pA* = poly A signal.

Oppositely, addition of tetracycline inactivates tTA and causes transgenic downregulation (Tet-off; fig. 1a). A mutagenized version of tTA exists, 'reverse tTA' (rtTA), which only binds to the TRE in the presence of the ligand (Tet-on; fig. 1b). The Tet system is regarded as the method of choice for 'gain of function' studies of a specific transgene (oncogenic overexpression). Its big advantages are the reversibility of expression and a dose-response effect [19]. Combining this system with a tissue-specific promoter will allow regulatable transgene expression in a particular tissue or cell type.

Especially in mice, tTA and rtTA have a major difference in their kinetics of transgene induction [20]. Because of the low levels of doxycycline (Dox, a tetracycline analogue) required, induction of the rtTA system was rapidly achieved. In the tTA system, gene induction can take days, because of the long half-life of Dox in the animal. Furthermore, Dox has to be permanently

available for the mice as long as the transgene has to be shut down. However, rtTA retained some affinity for the TRE even in the absence of Dox, leading to leaky expression of the transgene, which obscured the role of rtTA in transgenic animals. Therefore, several altered versions of rtTA are developed with reduced basal activity and increased Dox sensitivity [21].

Over the years, both Tet systems have been used in the transgenic laboratory with variable results [13, 18, 19]. Especially, the reversal of oncogene expression after tumor formation has given spectacular information. In a majority of cases, tumors regressed after oncogene downregulation by the Tet system [22]. Suggesting that these oncogenes are not only required for tumor initiation but also tumor maintenance pinpoints them as valid therapeutic targets.

Site-Specific Recombination: The Cre-LoxP System

The site-specific recombination mechanism has opened a possibility for the development of mouse models of sporadic cancer. Best known is the Cre recombinase of the P_1 bacteriophage [23]. It catalyzes the recombination between two of its recognition sites, called LoxP (locus of crossover in P_1). The LoxP site is a 34-base-pair (bp) DNA sequence, containing two 13-bp inverted repeats flanking an 8-bp core sequence (fig. 2a). The 8-bp core sequence confers the directionality to the LoxP site. DNA segments flanked by 2 LoxP sites are the target of Cre. The relative orientation of the 2 LoxP sites determines the mode of recombination: inversion or excision of the intermediate DNA stretch.

The system is best clarified by two examples. (a) In the case of a tumor suppressor gene, LoxP sites are created around coding regions of a specific gene, resulting in a 'floxed' (flanked by LoxP sites) allele. LoxP sites are placed in such a way that they do not harm wild-type expression of the gene. After Cre expression the 'floxed' exons are excised, leading to an inactive tumor suppressor gene (fig. 2b). (b) In the case of an oncogene, transcription of the transgene is prevented by a 'floxed' stop signal. Only after Cre-mediated excision of this stop signal, transcription of the transgene comes about (fig. 2c).

One should bear in mind that, in contrast to the Tet system, the excision reaction of the Cre/LoxP system is irreversible. In that respect, it gives less plasticity than the Tet system. Another caveat is the reported Cre toxicity in vivo and in vitro [24–26]. Unexpected recombination events, like cell growth arrest and chromosomal aberrations, took place in some cases with Cre expression. In the mouse genome, pseudo LoxP sites have been identified, which could be sites of illegitimate Cre recombination [27].

Until now, there are only two reports dealing with Cre toxicity in vivo; their findings are probably correlated with very high Cre levels. Researchers have overcome this problem by using either controllable Cre or self-deleting Cre [24, 25, 28].

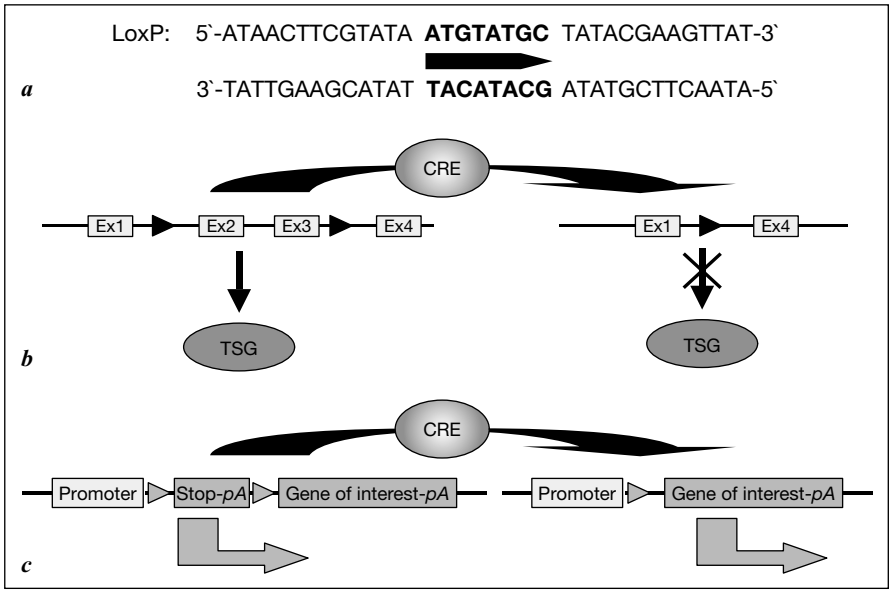


Fig. 2. Controlling gene expression by the Cre/LoxP system. ***a*** The LoxP site is a 34-bp consensus sequence, which consists of an 8-bp core flanked by two 13-bp palindromic sequences. The 8-bp core sequence determines the orientation of the LoxP site. ***b*** Example of a conditional allele; LoxP sites are created in the noncoding regions of a gene, on both sides of one or more exons (Ex), Cre expression will result in excision of the region between the 2 LoxP sites, leading to an inactive tumor suppressor gene (TSG). ***c*** Conditional transgene. Transcription of the transgene is prevented by a stop signal. This stop signal is usually an arbitrary gene with a polyA signal that causes termination of transcription. Cre expression elicits excision of the stop signal and subsequent transcription of the transgene.

Development of a Conditional Mouse Model for HNSCC

Genetic analyses uncovered many of the affected genes in HNSCC, like p53, $p16^{ink4a}$, E-cadherin, cyclin D_1 and c-*erbB2* [29]. Of these described genes, many conditional knockout/transgenic mice are already developed [12]. However, the establishment of tight tissue-specific control of Cre will greatly determine the success on a conditional mouse model for HNSCC. To date many Cre tools are described [12; www.mshri.on.ca/nagy/default.htm], which could help fulfilling this requirement: (1) Cre expression driven by tissue-specific promoters. Interesting candidates are the keratin 5 and 14 promoters (K5 and K14); both are directing expression to the basal cell layers of squamous epithelia [30]. However, expression of these promoters is not only restricted to the oral cavity,

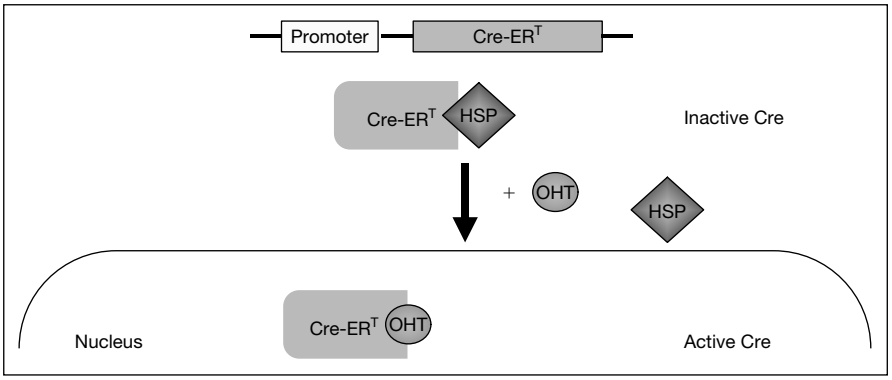


Fig. 3. Inducible Cre-LoxP system. The Cre recombinase is fused to a mutated ligand-binding domain of the ER. Expression of this fusion protein is driven by e.g. a ubiquitous or tissue-specific promoter. Without ligand binding, the inactive Cre-ER^T fusion protein is being sequestered by heat shock proteins (HSP) in the cytoplasm. Upon OHT treatment, OHT binds to the ligand-binding domain of Cre-ER^T. Subsequently, Cre translocates to the nucleus, where it exerts its recombinase activity.

e.g. K14-Cre mice are used to drive recombination in a conditional mouse model for breast cancer [13]. Using the K14-Cre mice, crossed with conditional p53 and nonconditional P16^{ink4a} mice in our laboratory resulted in the induction of cancers in the oral cavity as well as in the skin and breast. Opitz et al. [31] used the Epstein-Barr virus to drive transgenic expression of cyclin D_1 in stratified squamous epithelia. Combining these mice with p53-deficient mice resulted in oral-esophageal cancer. However, their model suffered from unwanted tumorigenesis of the lymphogenic compartment due to use of conventional p53 knockout mice. But then again, the ED-L2 promoter would be an excellent candidate to drive Cre in a conditional mouse model for HNSCC. (2) Somatic Cre delivery. Replication-deficient adeno- or lenti-Cre viruses are being employed to deliver Cre recombinase to tissues [15, 28]. Variation in infection grade per tissue is being noticed and adeno-Cre can have adverse effects on the immune response of the mouse. (3) Regulatable Cre. The archetype of this mode of regulation is called Cre-ER^T, a fusion protein between a mutated ligand-binding domain of the estrogen receptor (ER) and Cre recombinase. The activity of Cre-ER^T can be induced by 4-hydroxytamoxifen (OHT), but not by the natural ligand 17-estradiol (fig. 3). Mice have been made which exhibit expression of Cre-ER^T (RCM) in a wide variety of tissues [32]. With the use of these RCM mice, researches have spatial-temporal control on Cre activity in conditional mice. We have studied the efficiency of ligand-induced gene switching using the R26R reporter mice (fig. 4a), which permits

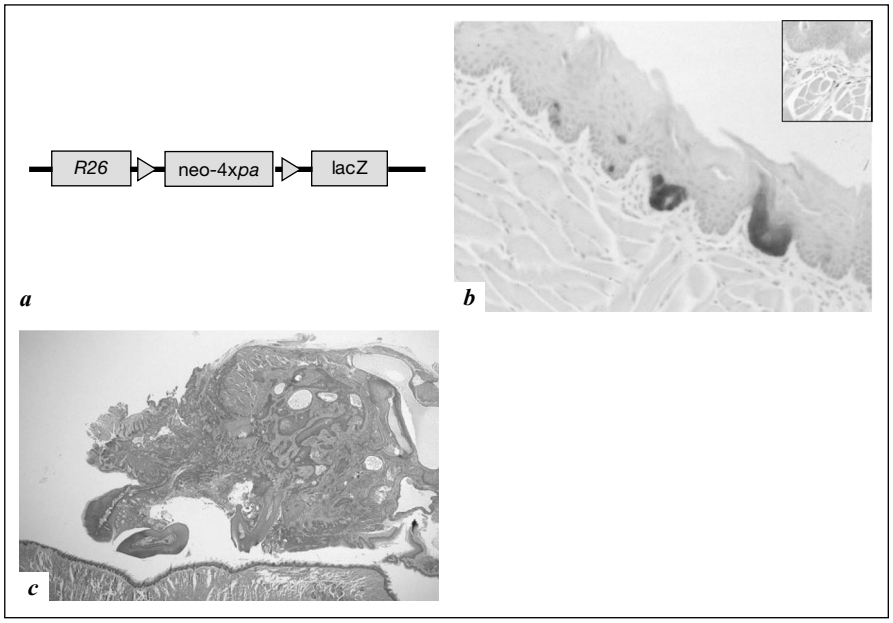


Fig. 4. Efficiency of ligand-induced gene switching in the oral cavity. ***a*** Schematic representation of the conditional reporter allele of R26R reporter mice that permits the visualization of Cre-mediated recombination via β-galoctosidase staining of tissue sections [33]. ***b*** OHT-inducible (RCM) mice were crossbred with R26R mice. After OHT application, specific gene switching could be monitored in the oral cavity. **Inset:** Also nonmucosal cells were switched after OHT treatment. ***c*** Induction of SCC in the oral cavity. RCM mice were crossbred with mice which harbor conditional p53 and nonconditional $p16^{ink4a}$ alleles. Painting of the tongues of these mice with OHT resulted in the formation of oral SCC.

the visualization of Cre-mediated recombination via β-galoctosidase staining of tissue sections [33]. After tamoxifen application, specific gene switching could be monitored in the oral cavity (fig. 4b). Subsequently, tamoxifen treatment of crosses with conditional p53 and nonconditional $p16^{ink4a}$ mice resulted in the induction of SCC in the oral cavity, although with a long latency and low incidence (fig. 4c).

However, Cre-ER^T showed residual recombinase activity in the absence of ligand, leading to germline deletions and making it impossible to use with certain conditional transgenic or knockout mice. Therefore, Cre-ER^{T2} has been developed which has no detectable background recombinase activity and is $\sim$10-fold more sensitive to OHT induction than Cre-ER^T [34]. Uniting Cre-ER^{T2} with a tissue-specific promoter like K14 or ED-L2 would give an even higher

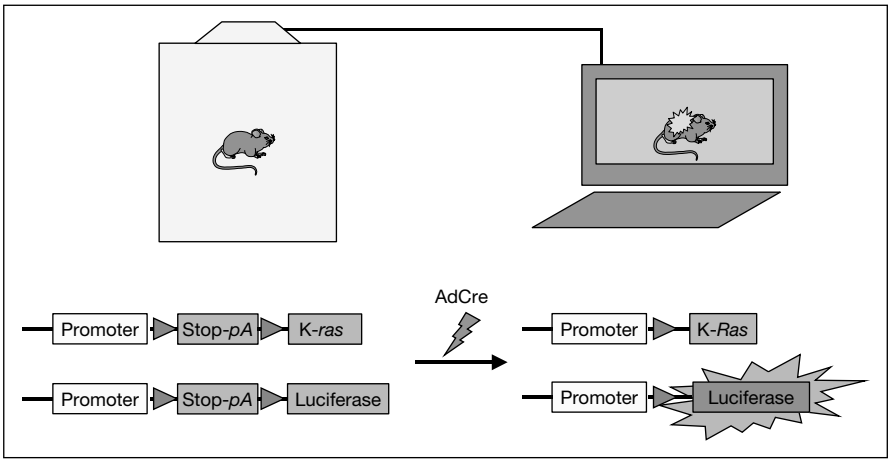


Fig. 5. In vivo imaging of tumor development. A luciferase reporter transgene permits the noninvasive visualization of spontaneous tumorigenesis in tumor-bearing mice. In these mice, Cre-mediated tumor formation is accompanied by activation of a luciferase transgene. Anesthetized mice are injected with luciferin, which serves as a substrate of luciferase. After a short incubation time, photon emission is measured with an ultrasensitive cooled CCD camera and transmitted to a personal computer with image analysis software. As an example, mice harboring conditional K-*ras* and luciferase (reporter) transgenes develop adenocarcinoma of the lungs after intrabronchial administration of adeno-Cre (AdCre). Development of lung tumors can be longitudinally monitored with this noninvasive approach [38].

degree of specificity to the spatial-temporal control in site-specific recombination in the oral cavity.

Concluding Remarks

Conditional mouse models have a great potential for the study of HNSSC. With the worldwide already existing mice with conditional tumor suppressor and oncogenes, efforts have to be concentrated on the tissue-specific expression of Cre. Development of double-layered systems could contribute to a tighter expression of Cre in the epithelium of the oral cavity. This newly developed (future) conditional mouse model for HNSCC can be used for testing new therapies. Furthermore, it will enable the study of tumor genetics using mouse expression arrays, mouse array CGH [35] and mouse spectral karyotyping (SKY) [36]. New imaging techniques using tumor-specific luciferase expression (fig. 5) [37, 38] will even broaden the impact of such a model.

References

1 Shklar G, Schwartz J, Grau D, Trickler DP, Wallace KD: Inhibition of hamster buccal pouch carcinogenesis by 13-*cis*-retinoic acid. Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol 1980;50:45–52.

2 Schwartz J, Gu X: Hamster oral cancer model; in Teicher BA (ed): Tumor Models in Cancer Research. Totowa, Human Press, 2002, pp 141–171.

3 Giminez Conti IB, Bianchi AB, Stockman SL, Conti CJ, Slaga TJ: Activating mutations of the Ha-*ras* in chemically induced tumors of the hamster cheek pouch. Mol Carcinog 1992;5:259–263.

4 Yuan B, Heniford BW, Ackermann BM, Hawkins BL, Hendler FJ: Harvey *ras* (H-ras) point mutations are induced by 4-nitroquinoline-1-oxide in murine oral squamous epithelia, while squamous cell carcinoma and loss of heterozygosity occur without additional exposure. Cancer Res 1994;54:5310–5317.

5 Tang X-H, Knudson B, Bemis D, Tickoo S, Gudas LJ: Oral cavity and esophageal carcinogenesis modeled in carcinogen-treated mice. Clin Cancer Res 2004;10:301–313.

6 Hawkins BL, Heniford B, Ackermann D, Leonberger M, Martinez SA, Hendler FJ: 4NQO carcinogenesis: A mouse model of oral cavity squamous cell carcinoma. Head Neck 1994;16: 424–432.

7 Culp SJ, Gaylor DW, Sheldon WG, Goldstein LS, Beland FA: A comparison of tumors induced by coal tar and benzo[a]pyrene in a 2-year bioassay. Carcinogenesis 1998;7:1317–1322.

8 von Pressentin MDM, Kosinska W, Guttenplan JB: Mutagenesis induced by oral carcinogens in LacZ mouse (Muta^{TM}Mouse) and other oral tissues. Carcinogenesis 1999;20:2167–2170.

9 Ide F, Kitada M, Sakashita H, Kusama K, Tanaka K, Ishikawa T: p53 haploinsufficiency profoundly accelerates the onset of tongue tumors in mice lacking the xeroderma pigmentosum group A gene. Am J Pathol 2003;163:1729–1733.

10 Dinesman A, Haughey B, Gates GA, Aufdermorte T, Von Hoff DD: Development of a new in vivo model for head and neck cancer. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 1990;103:766–774.

11 Myers JN, Holsinger FC, Jasser SA, Bekele BN, Fidler IJ: An orthotopic nude mouse model of oral tongue squamous cell carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 2002;8:293–298.

12 Jonkers J, Berns AB: Conditional mouse models of sporadic cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 2002;2: 251–265.

13 Lewandoski M: Conditional control of gene expression in the mouse. Nat Genet 2001;2:743–755.

14 Jonkers J, Meuwissen R, van der Gulden H, Peterse H, van der Valk M, Berns A: Synergistic tumor suppressor activity of BRCA2 and p53 in a conditional mouse model for breast cancer. Nat Genet 2001;29:418–425.

15 Meuwissen R, Linn SC, Linnoila RI, Zevenhoven J, Mooi WJ, Berns A: Induction of small cell lung cancer by somatic inactivation of both Trp53 and RB1 in a conditional mouse model. Cancer Cell 2003;4:181–189.

16 Wang S, Gao J, Lei Q, Rozengurt N, Pritchard C, Jiao J, et al: Prostate-specific deletion of the murine Pten tumor suppressor gene leads to metastatic prostate cancer. Cancer Cell 2003;4: 209–221.

17 Hingorani SR, Petricoin EF, Maitra A, Rajapakse V, King C, Jacobetz MA, et al: Preinvasive and invasive ductal pancreatic cancer and its early detection in the mouse. Cancer Cell 2003;4:437–450.

18 Ryding ADS, Sharp MGF, Mullins JJ: Conditional transgenic technologies. J Endocrinol 2001; 171:1–14.

19 Gossen M, Bujard H: Studying gene function in eukaryotes by conditional gene inactivation. Annu Rev Genet 2002:36:163–173.

20 Kistner A, Gossen M, Zimmermann F, Jerecic J, Ullmer C, Lübbert H, Bujard H: Doxycycline-mediated quantitative and tissue-specific control of gene expression in transgenic mice. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1996;93:10933–10938.

21 Urlinger S, Baron U, Thellman M, Hasan MT, Bujard H, Hillen W: Exploring the sequence space for tetracycline-dependent transcriptional activators: Novel mutations yield expanded range and sensitivity. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2000;97:7963–7968.

22 Chin L, Tam A, Pomerantz J, Wong M, Holash J, Bardeesy N, et al: Essential role for oncogenic Ras in tumour maintenance. Nature 1999;400:468–472.

23 Nagy A: Cre recombinase: The universal reagent for genome tailoring. Genesis 2000;26:99–109.
24 Loonstra A, Vooijs M, Beverloo HB, Allak BA, van Drunen E, Kanaar R, et al: Growth inhibition and DNA damage by Cre recombinase in mammalian cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2001;98: 9209–9214.
25 Silver DP, Livingston DM: Self-excising retroviral vectors encoding the Cre recombinase overcome Cre-mediated cellular toxicity. Mol Cell 2001;8:233–243.
26 Schmidt EE, Taylor DS, Prigge JR, Barnett S, Capecchi MR: Illegitimate Cre-dependent chromosome rearrangements in transgenic mouse spermatids. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2000;97: 13702–13707.
27 Thyagarajan B, Guimaraes MJ, Groth AC, Calos MP: Mammalian genomes contain active recombinase recognition sites. Gene 2000;244:47–54.
28 Pfeifer A, Brandon EP, Kootstra N, Gage FH, Verma IM: Delivery of the Cre recombinase by a self-deleting lentiviral vector: Efficient gene targeting in vivo. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2001;98: 11450–11455.
29 Forastiere A, Koch W, Trotti A, Sidransky D: Head and neck cancer. N Engl J Med 2001;345: 1890–1900.
30 Wang X, Zinkel S, Polonsky K, Fuchs E: Transgenic studies with a keratin promoter-driven growth hormone transgene: Prospects for gene therapy. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1997;94: 219–226.
31 Opitz OG, Harada H, Suliman Y, Rhoades B, Sharpless NE, Kent R, et al: A mouse model of human oral-esophageal cancer. J Clin Invest 2002;110:761–769.
32 Vooijs M, Jonkers J, Berns A: A highly efficient ligand-regulated Cre recombinase mouse line shows that LoxP recombination is position dependent. EMBO Rep 2001;2:292–297.
33 Soriano P: Generalized lacZ expression with the ROSA26 Cre reporter strain. Nat Genet 1999; 21:70–71.
34 Indra AK, Warot X, Brocard J, Bornert J-M, Xiao J-H, Chambon P, Metzger D: Temporally controlled site-specific mutagenesis in the basal layer of the epidermis: Comparison of the recombinase activity of the tamoxifen-inducible Cre-ER^T and Cre-ER^{T2} recombinases. Nucleic Acids Res 1999;27:4324–4327.
35 Hodgson G, Hagar JH, Volik S, Hariono S, Wernick M, Moore D, et al: Genome scanning with array CGH delineates regional alterations in mouse islet carcinomas. Nat Genet 2001;29:459–464.
36 Liyanage M, Coleman A, du Manoir S, Veldman T, McCormack S, Dickson RB, et al: Multicolour spectral karyotyping of mouse chromosomes. Nat Genet 1996;14:312–315.
37 Weissleder R: Scaling down imaging: Molecular mapping of cancer in mice. Nat Rev Cancer 2002;2:1–8.
38 Lyons SK, Meuwissen R, Krimpenfort P, Berns A: The generation of a conditional reporter that enables bioluminescence imaging of Cre/loxP-dependent tumorigenesis in mice. Cancer Res 2003;63:7042–7046.

E.M.J. Bindels, M.W.M. van den Brekel
Department of Otolaryngology
The Netherlands Cancer Institute, Plesmanlaan 121
NL–1066 CX Amsterdam (The Netherlands)
Tel. +31 20 5122550, Fax +31 20 5122554, E-Mail m.vd.brekel@nki.nl

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 12–24

Hypofolatemia as a Risk Factor for Head and Neck Cancer

Giovanni Almadori, Francesco Bussu, Jacopo Galli, Gabriella Cadoni, Gaetano Paludetti, Maurizio Maurizi

Institute of Otolaryngology, Università Cattolica del Sacro Cuore, Roma, Italy

Abstract

Head and neck cancer (HNSCC) includes squamous cell carcinomas of the oral cavity, pharynx and larynx. Approximately 38,500 cases of HNSCC are estimated to occur in the USA in 2004, with 11,000 deaths. HNSCCs represent about 3% of all malignant tumors in the USA. However, in other parts of the world, as India, Southeast Asia or Brazil, the disease is much more prevalent. The standard therapeutic approach, focused on surgery, irradiation and chemotherapy, alone or in combination, has been in part modified in the last 30 years, but the overall survival of HNSCC patients has not substantially improved. To characterize and thus identify high-risk mucosal areas and preclinical tumors, molecular abnormalities in head and neck carcinogenesis have been extensively studied. Metabolic aspects in head and neck carcinogenesis have been less extensively studied. Nevertheless, we know that metabolic alterations, often aspecific, are frequently associated with cancer. These may be secondary or may precede tumor development and favorite progression. In particular, based upon our results, a role for folate deficiency as a risk factor in head and neck carcinogenesis seems plausible. A chemoprevention protocol with folate is at present feasible and ethically correct and is already in progress at our institution. Homocysteine levels in cancer patients are probably largely affected by the HNSCC phenotype. An accumulation of homocysteine might reveal a genetic defect which is theoretically a target for pharmacological therapy, for example by antifolic drugs.

Head and neck cancer (HNSCC), as defined here, includes squamous cell carcinomas (SCCs) of the oral cavity, pharynx and larynx. Approximately 38,500 cases of HNSCC are estimated to occur in the USA in 2004, with 11,000 deaths [1]. HNSCCs represent about 3% of all malignant tumors in the

USA [1]. However, in other parts of the world, as India, Southeast Asia or Brazil, the disease is much more prevalent [2]. The standard therapeutic approach, focused on surgery, irradiation and chemotherapy, alone or in combination, has been in part modified in the last 30 years, but the overall survival of HNSCC patients has not substantially improved [1, 2]. Efforts toward early detection and prevention have not been entirely successful. For patients affected by early stage carcinomas, with a high disease-specific survival rate, second primary tumors represent the first cause of death [2–5]. On the other hand, patients with advanced head and neck cancer have a high risk of primary-treatment failure and death [2].

The best-established risk factors for HNSCC are behavioral ones, and a primary prevention can be easily obtained by suspension of wrong habits. Smoking and alcohol intake are the best-defined risk factors for HNSCC. A role has been proposed also for low vegetables intake [6], infections by Epstein-Barr virus (especially for the nasopharynx) and human papillomaviruses (for the oropharynx and other sites) [7, 8], betel quid chewing [9], marijuana smoking [10, 11], acid and biliary reflux [12]. A preventive surgery can be performed on early-diagnosed precancerous lesions of the larynx (leukoplakia, erythroplakia). But it is known that not all LSCC patients have a history of behavioral risk factors or clinically evident precancerous lesions. Molecular epidemiology should help us to recognize patients and/or areas of laryngeal mucosa with a high susceptibility to develop laryngeal cancer, and possibly to identify molecular targets for an effective secondary prevention (chemoprevention). To characterize and thus identify high-risk mucosal areas and preclinical tumors, molecular abnormalities in head and neck carcinogenesis have been extensively studied [13–15]. As a genetic predisposition to the development of HNSCC is highly probable, in the last few years a number of genetic polymorphisms have been evaluated in relation to the risk of developing cancers of the aerodigestive tract [16–18]. Metabolic aspects in head and neck carcinogenesis have been less extensively studied. Nevertheless we know that metabolic alterations, often aspecific, are frequently associated with cancer. These may be secondary or may precede tumor development and favorite progression.

In the present work, we focus our attention on compounds involved in the so-called methionine cycle, which leads to the production of S-adenosylmethionine, the body's universal methyl donor. Folate, a water-soluble B vitamin, which is plentiful in fresh vegetables and fruits, is present under a number of coenzymatic forms, whose main biochemical function in mammalian systems is to mediate the transfer of one-carbon units at different states of oxidation. It is fundamental in the synthesis of serine from glycine, in the synthesis of purine and pyrimidine bases and as methyl donor to create methylcobalamin, which is used for remethylation of homocysteine to methionine (fig. 1) [19]. Folate

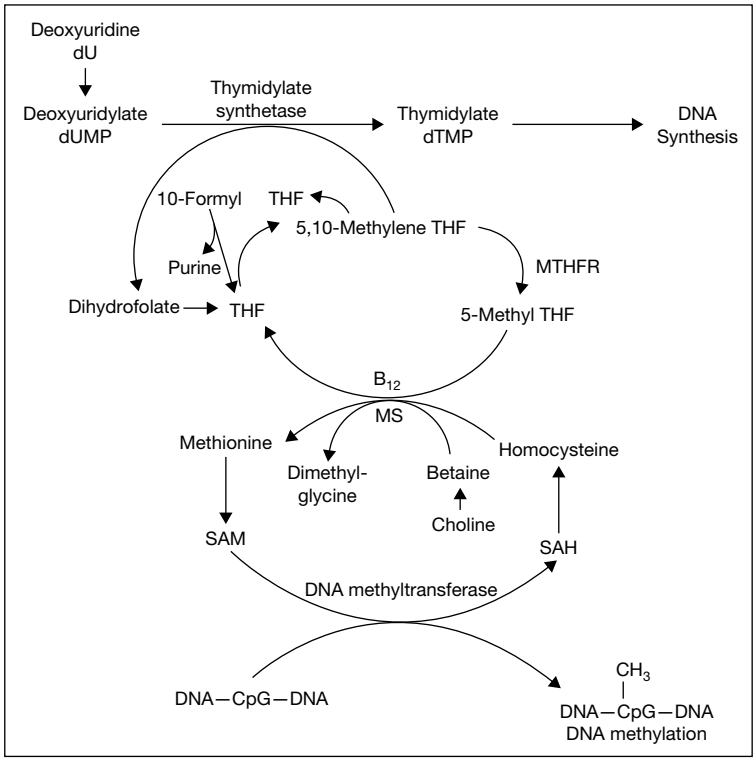


Fig. 1. Compounds involved in the methionine cycle. THF = Tetrahydrofolic acid; MTHFR = methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase; MS = methionine synthase; SAM = S-adenosylmethionine; SAH = S-adenosylhomocysteine; CpG = CpG islands, unmethylated regions with a higher GC content in eukaryotic DNA.

deficiency, almost always secondary to an insufficient dietary intake, has been reported to be the most common vitamin deficiency in the USA, affecting up to 10% of the general adult population [20]. Homocysteine, a sulfur-containing amino acid, is an intermediate metabolite of the methionine metabolism, located in an important metabolic crossroad (fig. 1), and its serum levels can be potentially affected by a large and nonspecific range of metabolic alterations [20]. Folate deficiency is often associated with an elevation of homocysteine, and folate supplementation reduces hyperhomocysteinemia [21]. Vitamin B_{12} (or cobalamin) is a coenzyme of methylmalonyl coenzyme A mutase and of methionine synthase (fig. 1) [19].

Alterations in the methionine cycle have been reported in several human malignancies. Maintenance of an adequate folate status from dietary sources and/or by synthetic folic acid supplementation has been associated with a

protective effect and reduced incidence of a variety of human cancers [22]. In a large prospective study, a high dietary folate intake was shown to protect, in particular heavy smokers, from lung SCC development [23]. Furthermore, folate and vitamin B_{12} supplementation has been described to induce the regression of bronchial squamous metaplasia [24, 25]. An inverse correlation between folate intake and pancreatic and breast cancer risk was also reported [26, 27]. A recent animal study evidenced a strong protective effect of folate in beagles treated with a gastric carcinogen [28]. A role for folate deficiency, first postulated in the 1960s [29], and for other alterations of methionine cycle metabolites (homocysteine, vitamin B_{12}) as a risk factor for cervical cancer has never been definitely demonstrated [30–33]. Colorectal carcinogenesis was extensively studied in relation to folate metabolism, and several epidemiological studies showed an increased risk associated with folate deficiency. Patients affected by colorectal cancer seem to have a lower folate dietary intake [34, 35], higher homocysteine and lower folate serum levels [36]. A role of folate deficiency in colorectal carcinogenesis is confirmed also by animal studies [37, 38]. Folate is at present considered one of the most promising chemopreventive agents for colorectal carcinogenesis [39]. Plasma homocysteine levels are increased also in patients with hematological tumors and in particular in children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia [40]. In ovarian carcinomas, the increase in homocysteine ascitic and cystic concentrations might derive from a biochemical defect of the methionine cycle in tumor cells [41], determined for example by an alteration in the 5,10-methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase (MTHFR) gene [42].

Several cellular effects have been described that may account for an involvement of such metabolites in carcinogenesis. Methionine cycle disruptions, by reducing intracellular S-adenosylmethionine, can alter cytosine methylation in DNA (fig. 1), leading to inappropriate activation of proto-oncogenes, repression of tumor suppressor genes and induction of malignant transformation. Alterations in DNA methylation and in particular a global hypomethylation and a regional hypermethylation, especially of promoters of tumor suppressor genes, have been described in human tumors [43]. In HNSCC, promoter hypermethylation of key genes in critical pathways, as *INK4A*, is common and has also recently been described [44]. Alternatively, abnormal DNA metabolism and a variety of cytogenetic lesions have been associated with folate deficiency in laboratory models as well as in human folate deficiency [45, 46]. Normal levels of the precursor nucleotides (dNTPs and NTPs) for DNA/RNA synthesis are directly dependent on intracellular folate availability [47], and dNTP pool imbalance seems of great relevance for the carcinogenic effects of folate deficiency [48]. A specific and important biochemical alteration, secondary to a defect in dTMP synthesis (fig. 1), is uracil misincorporation in DNA, which might be

sufficient to determine double-strand breaks, mutations and chromosomal aberrations [49, 50]. On the whole, dNTP pool imbalance reduces the efficiency of both DNA-synthesizing enzymes, with an increase in the background mutation rate, and of DNA-repairing enzymes, with an enhancement of mutagen-induced carcinogenesis [22, 51]. Convincing evidence from clinical studies indicates that moderate folate deficiency would not be independently mutagenic *in vivo* but probably interacts with other risk factors in promoting tumor progression. In fact, studies about lung and cervical carcinogenesis suggest that folate deficiency enhances an underlying predisposition due to environmental factors, as heavy cigarette smoking and human papillomavirus infection [52, 53]. On the other hand, hypofolatemia can interact also with genetic factors. Homozygous mutant individuals for a common MTHFR gene polymorphism (677 C → T; Ala → Val) have been reported to have a reduced risk of colorectal cancer [54, 55] and of adult acute lymphocytic leukemia [56]. The reason is probably that the normal more efficient enzyme reduces the quota of folate available for pathways involved in DNA synthesis and repair (fig. 1). Notably in subjects with low systemic folate status, the protective effect for colon carcinogenesis of the mutant TT genotype is lost anyway.

Therefore polymorphisms of MTHFR and probably of other enzymes involved in the methionine cycle may modify susceptibility to cancer. At present we are studying polymorphism 677 CT and other rare polymorphisms of MTHFR, and also the methionine synthase gene.

In a preliminary study, we have previously evaluated the concentrations of folate and homocysteine in the serum of patients with HNSCC, with statistically significant findings. In the present study, we evaluate folate, homocysteine and vitamin B_{12} serum levels in a larger series of HNSCC patients putting it in relation with the site, the local extension and the neck status. We also collected data about these methionine cycle metabolites in patients with laryngeal leukoplakia, a well-known preneoplastic lesion, in order to assess if such alterations are early or should be considered a late consequence of tumor progression.

Patients and Methods

Patients

144 consecutive untreated patients suffering from primary HNSCC (table 1) and 40 consecutive untreated patients with laryngeal leukoplakia were enrolled in our Department of Otolaryngology after obtaining their informed consent. Because most HNSCC patients (89.5%) and patients with leukoplakia (92.5%) were smokers, and cigarette smoking can determine alterations in homocysteine and folate status and could be a confounding factor [58], we compared cancer patients and patients with laryngeal leukoplakia, with 2 control

Table 1. Cancer patients: site and stage

	Early cancers ($T_{1–2}$, N_0)	Locally advanced ($T_{3–4}$, N_0)	Regionally advanced (every T, N_+)	Total
Oral	20	9	9	38
Laryngeal, glottic	46	5	1	52
Laryngeal, supraglottic	5	2	3	10
Laryngeal, transglottic	–	15	4	19
Pharyngolaryngeal	–	4	5	9
Oropharyngeal	2	3	4	9
Nasopharyngeal	1	2	4	7
Total	74	40	30	144

Table 2. Patients and controls

	HNSCC patients	Laryngeal leukoplakias	Nonsmoker controls	Smoker controls
Number	144	40	120	90
Age, years				
Mean	64	56	55	58
Range	37–93	39–77	35–70	30–78
Gender (F/M)	28/116	4/36	30/90	22/68
Smokers	129 (89.5)	37 (92.5)	–	90
10–20 cigarettes daily	38 (29.5)	8 (20)	–	25 (28)
More than 20 cigarettes daily	91 (60)	29 (72.5)	–	65 (72)
Smoking period <20 years	41 (32)	19 (47.5)	–	28 (31)
Smoking period >20 years	88 (57.5)	18 (45)	–	62 (69)
Drinkers	115 (80)	27 (67.5)	40 (33)	63 (70)
2 glasses (or less)/day	65 (45)	17 (42.5)	30 (25)	28 (31)
2–4 glasses/day	50 (35)	10 (25)	10 (8)	35 (39)

Figures in parentheses indicate percentages.

age- and sex-matched groups composed of 90 smokers and 120 nonsmokers (table 2). HNSCC patients were divided according to disease progression in early cancers (T_1–T_2N_0; 74 patients), locally advanced cancers (T_3–T_4N_0; n = 40) and regionally advanced cancers (N_+; n = 30; table 1). Control subjects were from the same geographical area as patients. Both control subjects and patients were enrolled after obtaining informed consent to the use of part of their blood samples for an experimental study. We excluded from our study subjects with an estimated habitual alcohol consumption higher than 35 g of alcohol, or higher

than 4 glasses of alcoholic beverages, per day, as it is well known and described that heavy drinking can alter folate absorption and metabolism, being at the same time a risk factor for HNSCC, and might thus have been a relevant confounding factor in our study. On the other hand, evidence exists that a low to moderate alcohol consumption does not determine any change in serum levels of folate and homocysteine [59]. No subject included in the study had received folate or vitamin B_{12} supplements in the last 6 months. In addition, both the patients and the controls had normal renal function. Characteristics of patients and controls are shown in table 2.

Methods

Homocysteine was measured by a fully automated AxSYM method (Abbott Diagnostics, Abbott Park, USA) according to the manufacturer's recommendations. The automatic method is based on the determination of S-adenosyl-*L*-homocysteine (SAH) obtained from the enzymatic conversion of homocysteine, previously reduced with dithiothreitol, to SAH by bovine SAH hydrolase. The Abbott AxSYM immunoassay is based on the fluorescence polarization immunoassay technology. After the addition of mouse monoclonal SAH antibody to the sample, S-adenosyl-*L*-cysteine fluorescein tracer, which competes with SAH for antibody-binding sites, is added. The homocysteine concentration is then quantified by the intensity of polarized fluorescent light. Serum vitamin B_{12} was measured by microparticle enzyme immunoassay and serum folate by ion capture assay on an AxSYM Analyzer (Abbott Diagnostics).

Statistical Analysis

The α level was fixed at 0.05. Statistical analysis was performed using STATA 6.0 by variance analysis and the Student-Newman-Keuls test.

Results

Detailed results are reported in table 3.

At variance analysis by F test for serum folate levels, differences between groups were shown to be highly probable ($F = 120$, $p < 0.001$). Comparing groups by the Student-Newman-Keuls test, statistically significant differences were found between cancer patients and smoker controls ($q = 19.048$; $p < 0.05$), between cancer patients and nonsmoker controls ($q = 23.644$; $p < 0.05$), between patients with laryngeal leukoplakia and smoker controls ($q = 11.59$; $p < 0.05$) and between patients with laryngeal leukoplakia and nonsmoker controls ($q = 14.052$; $p < 0.05$).

At variance analysis by F test for serum homocysteine, differences between groups were found to be highly probable ($F = 13.22$, $p < 0.001$). Comparing groups by the Student-Newman-Keuls test, statistically significant differences existed between cancer patients and smoker controls ($q = 6.464$; $p < 0.05$), between cancer patients and nonsmoker controls ($q = 7.681$;

Table 3. Serum folate and homocysteine levels in controls, cancer patients and patients with laryngeal leukoplakia

	Folate levels ng/ml	q score p value	Homocysteine levels, μmol/l	q score p value	Vitamin B_{12} levels, pg/ml	q score p value
Cancer patients	4.87 ± 2.26	q = 23.644	13.4 ± 10.2	q = 7.681	429 ± 281	–
Nonsmoker controls	9.7 ± 2.2	$p < 0.05$	8.7 ± 3.9	$p < 0.05$	480 ± 256	(no significance)
Cancer patients	4.87 ± 2.26	q = 19.048	13.4 ± 10.2	q = 6.464	429 ± 281	–
Smoker controls	9.1 ± 2.7	$p < 0.05$	9.1 ± 5	$p < 0.05$	472 ± 225	(no significance
Leukoplakia	5.46 ± 2.12	q = 14.052	8.45 ± 2.29	–	373 ± 152	q = 3.3
Nonsmoker controls	9.7 ± 2.2	$p < 0.05$	8.7 ± 3.9	(no significance)	480 ± 256	$p > 0.05$; (no significance)
Leukoplakia	5.46 ± 2.12	q = 11.59	8.45 ± 2.29	q = 0.691	373 ± 152	–
Smoker controls	9.1 ± 2.7	$p < 0.05$	9.1 ± 5	$p > 0.05$; (no significance)	472 ± 225	(no significance)
Cancer	4.87 ± 2.26	q = 0.691	13.4 ± 10.2	q = 5.594	429 ± 281	–
Leukoplakia	5.46 ± 2.12	$p > 0.05$; (no significance)	8.45 ± 2.29	$p < 0.05$	373 ± 152	(no significance)

$p < 0.05$) as well as between cancer patients and patients with laryngeal leukoplakia ($q = 5.594$; $p < 0.05$).

At variance analysis by F test for serum levels of vitamin B_{12}, differences between groups were not highly probable ($F = 2.4$; $p = 0.068$). Comparing groups by the Student-Newman-Keuls test for vitamin B_{12} serum levels, no statistically significant differences were found among the groups (table 3).

Serum levels of the three metabolites did not differ among patients with SCCs of the various sites in the head and neck either (table 1; data not shown).

Discussion

Lower serum folate and higher serum homocysteine levels were observed in HNSCC patients, compared to smoker and nonsmoker controls, thus confirming our previous results.

Patients with HNSCC of various sites in different stages have substantially the same folate levels, which are therefore not a marker of disease progression.

Folate serum levels are low both in patients with leukoplakia and in cancer patients, without statistically significant differences (table 3), and thus cannot be considered a diagnostic marker; nevertheless this suggests a role for low folate serum levels as a risk factor for head and neck multistep carcinogenesis, which is plausible considering also the function of folate in DNA synthesis and repair. As it was postulated for other malignancies, also in head and neck carcinogenesis hypofolatemia probably has not an independent role as initiating factor. Instead it presumably acts synergistically with other genetic and environmental factors, such as tobacco carcinogens (in fact almost all our patients are smokers anyway), making cells more susceptible to mutagens and increasing the rate of tumor progression (see Introduction).

Homocysteine serum levels are higher in cancer patients than in patients with leukoplakia, who do not significantly differ from controls. These data exclude a role for high homocysteine serum levels both as a risk marker, as they are not altered in the presence of preneoplastic lesions, and as a marker of neoplastic progression. Nevertheless the evaluation of serum homocysteine does not seem useful either for a diagnostic purpose because hyperhomocysteinemia is a quite frequent and nonspecific finding and because it would not be sensible in detecting HNSCC. In fact in HNSCC patients values of homocysteine in the serum are extremely heterogeneous as documented also by the high standard deviation (10.2 μmol/l) if compared with the other groups (table 3). It suggests that, in cancer patients, homocysteine levels do not depend exclusively on folate levels but are probably largely affected by the phenotype of head and neck carcinomas, which are a quite heterogeneous subset of tumors also from a molecular point of view. An accumulation of homocysteine might reveal a genetic defect of the methionine cycle in tumor cells as it has already been described in ovarian cancers [41, 42]. Such a metabolic defect theoretically offers a target for pharmacological therapy, for example by antifolic drugs, in a defined subset of HNSCC.

The hypothesis of an involvement of vitamin B_{12} in carcinogenesis has a scientific basis as described in the Introduction; nevertheless, in the present study focusing on HNSCC, differences in vitamin B_{12} serum levels lack significance.

Epidemiological data suggest an inverse association between the consumption of fruits and vegetables and the incidence of HNSCC [6]. The present data suggest that for HNSCC, as for other malignancies, the protective effect of dietary fruits and vegetables may be due, at least in part, to the presence of folic acid. Hypofolatemia might be a common risk factor for HNSCC and colon cancer, and this might at least partially explain the high incidence of colon second primary tumors in HNSCC patients [4].

A diet rich in folate may thus be a simple and low-cost preventive measure in the population. An increase in the recommended dietary allowances for folate

and for other micronutrients involved in DNA metabolism has been proposed [60]. In fact a folate intake in the recommended range is often insufficient to reach in the cell the optimal levels of the precursor nucleotides (dNTPs and NTPs) for DNA/RNA synthesis and repair [45, 47, 60].

The definition of a role for hypofolatemia as a risk factor for HNSCC opens intriguing perspectives for chemoprevention, defined [61] as an attempt to reverse, suppress or delay the progression towards invasive cancer, particularly relevant under a clinical viewpoint, also considering the peculiar behavior of such tumors. In fact second primary tumors, which develop at an annual rate of 3–7%, are the leading cause for cancer-related mortality in HNSCC patients [4, 5]. Furthermore precursor lesions (i.e. leukoplakia, erythroplakia), which can be directly identified by clinical examination and often precede the development of malignancy, supply a definite target for secondary prevention and an immediate experimental verification during clinical trials, as the response to treatment can be very simply assessed. Retinoids, even if with a noninnocuous toxicity profile, have been initially proposed as chemopreventive agents, but in Euroscan, the largest-scale clinical trial till now, a 2-year supplementation of retinyl palmitate and/or N-acetylcysteine resulted in no benefit – in terms of survival, event-free survival or second primary tumors – to patients with HNSCC or lung cancer [62]. Folate supplementation has no known toxic effects, and it was reported to be effective in reducing the incidence of various malignancies and in inducing regression of precancerous lesions. So, a chemoprevention protocol with folate, in patients with leukoplakia of the oral cavity, oropharynx and larynx, under strict histological and clinical follow-up, is at present rational and ethically correct and is already in progress at our institution with encouraging preliminary results. As folate supplementation of initiated cells has been reported to promote neoplastic proliferation in experimental models, we excluded from such a trial patients with a previous diagnosis of malignancy.

References

1 Jemal A, Tiwari RC, Murray T, Ghafoor A, Samuels A, Ward E, Feuer EJ, Thun MJ: Cancer statistics, 2004. CA Cancer J Clin 2004;54:8–29.

2 Shah JP, Lydiatt W: Treatment of cancer of the head and neck. CA Cancer J Clin 1995;45:352–368.

3 Vokes EE, Weichselbaum RR, Lippman SM, Hong WK: Head and neck cancer. N Engl J Med 1993;328:184–194.

4 Narayana A, Vaughan AT, Fisher SG, Reddy SP: Second primary tumors in laryngeal cancer: Results of long-term follow-up. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1998;42:557–562.

5 Cooper JS, Pajak TF, Rubin P, Tupchong L, Brady LW, Leibel SA, Laramore GE, Marcial VA, Davis LW, Cox JD: Second malignancies in patients who have head and neck cancer: Incidence, effect on survival and implications based on the RTOG experience. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 1989;17:449–456.

6 McLaughlin JK, Gridley G, Block G, Winn DM, Preston-Martin S, Schoenberg JB, Greenberg RS, Stemhagen A, Austin DF, Ershow AG: Dietary factors in oral and pharyngeal cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 1988;80:1237–1243.
7 Gillison ML, Koch WM, Capone RB, Spafford M, Westra WH, Wu L, Zahurak ML, Daniel RW, Viglione M, Symer DE, Shah KV, Sidransky D: Evidence for a causal association between human papillomavirus and a subset of head and neck cancers. J Natl Cancer Inst 2000;92: 709–720.
8 Almadori G, Cadoni G, Cattani P, Posteraro P, Scarano E, Ottaviani F, Paludetti G, Maurizi M: Detection of human papillomavirus DNA in laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma by polymerase chain reaction. Eur J Cancer 1996;32A:783–788.
9 Jeng JH, Chang MC, Hahn LJ: Role of areca nut in betel quid-associated chemical carcinogenesis: Current awareness and future perspectives. Oral Oncol 2001;37:477–492.
10 Almadori G, Paludetti G, Cerullo M, Ottaviani F, D'Alatri L: Marijuana smoking as a possible cause of tongue carcinoma in young patients. J Laryngol Otol 1990;104:896–899.
11 Zhang ZF, Morgenstern H, Spitz MR, Tashkin DP, Yu GP, Marshall JR, Hsu TC, Schantz SP: Marijuana use and increased risk of squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 1999;8:1071–1078.
12 Galli J, Cammarota G, Calo L, Agostino S, D'Ugo D, Cianci R, Almadori G: The role of acid and alkaline reflux in laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma. Laryngoscope 2002;112:1861–1865.
13 Califano J, van der Riet P, Westra W, Nawroz H, Clayman G, Piantadosi S, Corio R, Lee D, Greenberg B, Koch W, Sidransky D: Genetic progression model for head and neck cancer: Implications for field cancerization. Cancer Res 1996;56:2488–2492.
14 Homann N, Nees M, Conradt C, Dietz A, Weidauer H, Maier H, Bosch FX: Overexpression of p53 in tumor-distant epithelia of head and neck cancer patients is associated with an increased incidence of second primary carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 2001;7:290–296.
15 Uhlman DL, Adams G, Knapp D, Aeppli DM Niehans G: Immunohistochemical staining for markers of future neoplastic progression in the larynx. Cancer Res 1996;56:2199–2205.
16 Rebbeck TR: Molecular epidemiology of the human glutathione S-transferase genotypes GSTM1 and GSTT1 in cancer susceptibility. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 1997;6:733–743.
17 Lazarus P, Park JY: Metabolizing enzyme genotype and risk for upper aerodigestive tract cancer. Oral Oncol 2000;36:421–431.
18 Zheng Z, Park JY, Guillemette C, Schantz SP, Lazarus P: Tobacco carcinogen-detoxifying enzyme UGT1A7 and its association with orolaryngeal cancer risk. J Natl Cancer Inst 2001;93:1411–1418.
19 Scott JM, Weir DG: Folic acid, homocysteine and one-carbon metabolism: A review of the essential biochemistry. J Cardiovasc Risk 1998;5:223–227.
20 Senti FR, Pilch SM: Analysis of folate data from the second National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES II). J Nutr 1985;115:1398–1402.
21 Selhub J, Jacques PF, Wilson PW, Rush D, Rosenberg IH: Vitamin status and intake as primary determinants of homocysteinemia in an elderly population. JAMA 1993;270:2693–2698.
22 Choi SW, Mason JB: Folate and carcinogenesis: An integrated scheme. J Nutr 2000;130:129–132.
23 Bandera EV, Freudenheim JL, Marshall JR, Zielezny M, Priore RL, Brasure J, Baptiste M, Graham S: Diet and alcohol consumption and lung cancer risk in the New York State Cohort (United States). Cancer Causes Control 1997;8:828–840.
24 Heimburger DC, Alexander CB, Birch R, Butterworth CE Jr, Bailey WC, Krumdieck CL: Improvement in bronchial squamous metaplasia in smokers treated with folate and vitamin B_{12}: Report of a preliminary randomized, double-blind intervention trial. JAMA 1988;259:1525–1530.
25 Saito M, Kato H, Tsuchida T, Konaka C: Chemoprevention effects on bronchial squamous metaplasia by folate and vitamin B_{12} in heavy smokers. Chest 1994;106:496–499.
26 Baghurst PA, McMichael AJ, Slavotinek AH, Baghurst KI, Boyle P, Walker AM: A case-control study of diet and cancer of the pancreas. Am J pidemiol 1991;134:167–179.
27 Zhang SM, Willett WC, Selhub J, Hunter DJ, Giovannucci EL, Holmes MD, Colditz GA, Hankinson SE: Plasma folate, vitamin B_6, vitamin B_{12}, homocysteine, and risk of breast cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 2003;95:373–380.
28 Xiao SD, Meng XJ, Shi Y, Hu YB, Zhu SS, Wang CW: Interventional study of high dose folic acid in gastric carcinogenesis in beagles. Gut 2002;50:61–64.

29 van Niekerk W: Cervical cells in megaloblastic anaemia of the puerperium. Lancet 1962;1: 1277–1279.
30 Potischman N, Brinton LA, Laiming VA, Reeves WC, Brenes MM, Herrero R, Tenorio F, de Britton RC, Gaitan E: A case-control study of serum folate levels and invasive cervical cancer. Cancer Res 1991;51:4785–4789.
31 Goodman MT, McDuffie K, Hernandez B, Wilkens LR, Selhub J: Case-control study of plasma folate, homocysteine, vitamin B_{12} and cysteine as markers of cervical dysplasia. Cancer 2000; 89:376–382.
32 Buckley DI, McPherson RS, North CQ, Becker TM: Dietary micronutrients and cervical dysplasia in southwestern American Indian women. Nutr Cancer 1992;17:179–185.
33 Brock KE, Berry G, Mock PA, MacLennan R, Truswell AS, Brinton LA: Nutrients in diet and plasma and risk of in situ cervical cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 1988;80:580–585.
34 La Vecchia C, Braga C, Negri E, Franceschi S, Russo A, Conti E, Falcini F, Giacosa A, Montella M, Decarli A: Intake of selected micronutrients and risk of colorectal cancer. Int J Cancer 1997;73:525–530.
35 Giovannucci E, Rimm EB, Ascherio A, Stampfer MJ, Colditz GA, Willett WC: Alcohol, low-methionine–low-folate diets, and risk of colon cancer in men. J Natl Cancer Inst 1995;87: 265–273.
36 Kato I, Dnistrian AM, Schwartz M, Toniolo P, Koenig K, Shore RE, Akhmedkhanov A, Zeleniuch-Jacquotte A, Riboli E: Serum folate, homocysteine and colorectal cancer risk in women: A nested case-control study. Br J Cancer 1999;79:1917–1922.
37 Cravo ML, Mason JB, Dayal Y, Hutchinson M, Smith D, Selhub J, Rosenberg IH: Folate deficiency enhances the development of colonic neoplasia in dimethylhydrazine-treated rats. Cancer Res 1992;52:5002–5006.
38 Kim YI, Salomon RN, Graeme-Cook F, Choi SW, Smith DE, Dallal GE, Mason JB: Dietary folate protects against the development of macroscopic colonic neoplasia in a dose responsive manner in rats. Gut 1996;39:732–740.
39 Lamprecht SA, Lipkin M: Chemoprevention of colon cancer by calcium, vitamin D and folate: Molecular mechanisms. Nat Rev Cancer 2003;3:601–614.
40 Refsum H, Wesenberg F, Ueland PM: Plasma homocysteine in children with acute lymphoblastic leukemia: Changes during a chemotherapeutic regimen including methotrexate. Cancer Res 1991;51:828–835.
41 Corona G, Toffoli G, Fabris M, Viel A, Zarrelli A, Donada C, Boiocchi M: Homocysteine accumulation in human ovarian carcinoma ascitic/cystic fluids possibly caused by metabolic alteration of the methionine cycle in ovarian carcinoma cells. Eur J Cancer 1997;33:1284–1290.
42 Viel A, Dall'Agnese L, Simone F, Canzonieri V, Capozzi E, Visentin MC, Valle R, Boiocchi M: Loss of heterozygosity at the 5,10-methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase locus in human ovarian carcinomas. Br J Cancer 1997;75:1105–1110.
43 Warnecke PM, Bestor TH: Cytosine methylation and human cancer. Curr Opin Oncol 2000; 12:68–73.
44 Sanchez-Cespedes M, Esteller M, Wu L, Nawroz-Danish H, Yoo GH, Koch WM, Jen J, Herman JG, Sidransky D: Gene promoter hypermethylation in tumors and serum of head and neck cancer patients. Cancer Res 2000;60:892–895.
45 Ames BN: DNA damage from micronutrient deficiencies is likely to be a major cause of cancer. Mutat Res 2001;475:7–20.
46 Fenech M: Biomarkers of genetic damage for cancer epidemiology. Toxicology 2002;181–182: 411–416.
47 Melnyk S, Pogribna M, Miller BJ, Basnakian AG, Pogribny IP, James SJ: Uracil misincorporation, DNA strand breaks, and gene amplification are associated with tumorigenic cell transformation in folate deficient/repleted Chinese hamster ovary cells. Cancer Lett 1999;146:35–44.
48 James SJ, Miller BJ, Basnakian AG, Pogribny IP, Pogribna M, Muskhelishvili L: Apoptosis and proliferation under conditions of deoxynucleotide pool imbalance in liver of folate/methyl deficient rats. Carcinogenesis 1997;18:287–293.
49 Duthie SJ, Hawdon A: DNA instability (strand breakage, uracil misincorporation, and defective repair) is increased by folic acid depletion in human lymphocytes in vitro. FASEB J 1998;12:1491–1497.

50 Wickramasinghe SN, Fida S: Bone marrow cells from vitamin B_{12}- and folate-deficient patients misincorporate uracil into DNA. Blood 1994;83:1656–1661.
51 Branda RF, Blickensderfer DB: Folate deficiency increases genetic damage caused by alkylating agents and gamma-irradiation in Chinese hamster ovary cells. Cancer Res 1993;53:5401–5408.
52 Le Marchand L, Yoshizawa CN, Kolonel LN, Hankin JH, Goodman MT: Vegetable consumption and lung cancer risk: A population-based case-control study in Hawaii. J Natl Cancer Inst 1989; 81:1158–1164.
53 Schiffman MH: New epidemiology of human papillomavirus infection and cervical neoplasia. J Natl Cancer Inst 1995;87:1345–1347.
54 Chen J, Giovannucci E, Kelsey K, Rimm EB, Stampfer MJ, Colditz GA, Spiegelman D, Willett WC, Hunter DJ: A methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase polymorphism and the risk of colorectal cancer. Cancer Res 1996;56:4862–4864.
55 Ma J, Stampfer MJ, Giovannucci E, Artigas C, Hunter DJ, Fuchs C, Willett WC, Selhub J, Hennekens CH, Rozen R: Methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase polymorphism, dietary interactions, and risk of colorectal cancer. Cancer Res 1997;57:1098–1102.
56 Skibola CF, Smith MT, Kane E, Roman E, Rollinson S, Cartwright RA, Morgan G: Polymorphisms in the methylenetetrahydrofolate reductase gene are associated with susceptibility to acute leukemia in adults. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1999;96:12810–12815.
57 Almadori G, Bussu F, Galli J, Cadoni G, Zappacosta B, Persichilli S, Minucci A, Giardina B: Serum folate and homocysteine levels in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Cancer 15-2-2002; 94:1006–1011.
58 Piyathilake CJ, Macaluso M, Hine RJ, Richards EW, Krumdieck CL: Local and systemic effects of cigarette smoking on folate and vitamin B_{12}. Am J Clin Nutr 1994;60:559–566.
59 Pikaar NA, Wedel M, van der Beek EJ, van Dokkum W, Kempen HJ, Kluft C, Ockhuizen T, Hermus RJ: Effects of moderate alcohol consumption on platelet aggregation, fibrinolysis, and blood lipids. Metabolism 1987;36:538–543.
60 Fenech M: Recommended dietary allowances (RDAs) for genomic stability. Mutat Res 2001;480–481:51–54.
61 Sporn MB: Approaches to prevention of epithelial cancer during the preneoplastic period. Cancer Res 1976;36:2699–2702.
62 van Zandwijk N, Dalesio O, Pastorino U, de Vries N, van Tinteren H: Euroscan, a randomized trial of vitamin A and N-acetylcysteine in patients with head and neck cancer or lung cancer. For the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer Head and Neck and Lung Cancer Cooperative Groups. J Natlm Cancer Inst 2000;92:977–986.

Giovanni Almadori
Associate Professor
Institute of Otolaryngology
Università Cattolica del Sacro Cuore
00168 Roma (Italy)
Fax +39 6 301 55434, E-Mail almigo@yahoo.com

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 25–37

Reduced DNA Repair Capacity in Laryngeal Cancer Subjects

A Comparison of Phenotypic and Genotypic Results

Marzena Gajecka[a], *Malgorzata Rydzanicz*[a], *Renata Jaskula-Sztul*[a], *Martgorzata Wierzbicka*[b], *Witold Szyfter*[b], *Krzysztof Szyfter*[a,b]

[a]Institute of Human Genetics, Polish Academy of Sciences, and
[b]Department of Otolaryngology, K. Marcinkowski University of Medical Sciences, Poznan, Poland

Abstract

The impact of genetic factors on laryngeal cancer risk was studied in relation to DNA repair capacity on the phenotypic and genotypic level. DNA lesions induced by bleomycin or S9-activated benzo[a]pyrene were determined in blood lymphocytes using the alkaline comet assay. Laryngeal cancer subjects (n = 52) were shown to have higher levels of spontaneous and mutagen-induced DNA damage as compared to healthy controls (n = 56). A level of spontaneous DNA damage tended to increase with tumour grading. A percentage of individuals with an efficient DNA repair was higher in controls than in cancer subjects for both used mutagens. The distribution of polymorphic variants of *XPD*, *XRCC1* and *XRCC3* DNA repair genes in the group of laryngeal cancer subjects (n = 293), subjects with second primary tumours (n = 84) and in the matched controls (n = 322) was estimated by PCR-based genotyping. Five polymorphisms were studied in 3 DNA repair genes. There were found only 2 *XPD* alleles significantly overrepresented in laryngeal cancer that could be interpreted as an increase in genetic risk. There were no significant differences in distribution of 'risk' and 'protective' genotypes between single primary and second primary tumours. Altogether, the established phenotypic deficit of DNA repair in laryngeal cancer subjects was only partly confirmed by overrepresentation of 'risk' genotypes of the studied DNA repair genes.

Laryngeal cancer is tightly associated with tobacco smoking and abuse of strong alcoholic beverages. However, independently of geographical factors

only a fraction of tobacco smokers and alcohol abusers develops laryngeal cancer. It is becoming evident that a genetic predisposition has to be taken into account [1]. Numerous studies provided a good background of genetically determined susceptibility to carcinogens but an application of this fact to a given individual remains still uncertain. Recently, a variability of DNA repair efficacy has been extensively studied assuming that DNA repair impairment is a primary genetic marker of predisposition to cancer [2]. Besides an association of interindividual differences with an individual risk to develop cancer it could also be considered in relation to a variable progression of cancer as well as in line with the clinician's claim to individualize cancer therapy.

Exposure of blood lymphocytes to benzo[a]pyrene (B[a]P) diol epoxide in vitro raised a suggestion that the individual sensitivity to the genotoxic activity of B[a]P diol epoxide may be associated with a suboptimal DNA repair capacity [3]. On the other hand, susceptibility to genotoxic and clastogenic agents could be connected with DNA and chromatic structure [3, 4]. Therefore, a concept of this study was to estimate together a susceptibility to B[a]P and bleomycin used as model carcinogens generating DNA lesions with DNA repair capacity. The latter was studied as a removal of carcinogen-induced DNA damage (phenotype) and distribution of polymorphic variants of *XRCC1*, *XRCC3* and *XPD* repair genes (genotype). The study was addressed to the genetic risk to develop laryngeal cancer that is much less studied than lung cancer, which is also associated with tobacco smoking [5, 6]. This type of cancer was chosen as (1) it is strongly associated with exogenous carcinogen exposure and (2) is lacking any known high-penetration genes that imply the studies of low-penetration genes. Another argument to deal with laryngeal cancer was connected with a frequent appearance of second (multiple) primary tumours considerably decreasing therapy outcome. Thus, a comparison of the distribution of polymorphic genes between subjects with single and multiple primary tumours was attempted. Finally, laryngeal cancer is a serious medical and social problem in Poland. Morbidity and mortality rates from laryngeal cancer in Hungary and Poland are among the highest in the world [7, 8].

Material and Methods

Study Subjects

For studies on susceptibility to DNA damage a case-control group of 52 male larynx cancer subjects (age: 59.9 $\pm$ 10.5 years) was compared with a matched healthy control group of 56 male volunteers (age: 48.3 $\pm$ 6.3 years). All the blood donors were moderate or heavy cigarette smokers. For genotyping, blood samples were derived from 293 laryngeal cancer subjects with single tumour (males, age range: 40–80 years), 84 subjects with second primary tumour (SPT,

larynx as primary site; 80 males, 4 females, age range: 40–85 years) and 322 healthy controls (all males, age range: 50–64 years). All blood donors were Caucasians from Poland.

Alkaline Comet Assay

DNA damage was induced by S9-activated B[a]P (1 μM, 10 min, 37°C) or bleomycin (30 μg/ml, 10 min, 37°C) in DMSO (final concentration 0.5%). For DNA repair, cells were placed in carcinogen-free medium and incubated at 37°C up to 30 min. DNA damage was estimated as the level of single-strand DNA (ssDNA) breaks by the alkaline comet assay. The protocol already described [9] was used without modifications. Image analysis was performed using an Axiophot fluorescence microscope (Opton, Germany). A length of 50 comets was measured for each experimental point.

Genotyping

Genomic DNA was isolated from peripheral blood samples collected into EDTA tubes. *XRCC1* at G28125A (exon 10) and C26304T (exon 6) polymorphic sites, *XRCC3* (C18067T) and *XPD* (A35931C, exon 23 and C22541A, exon 6) genotypes were determined by the RFLP-PCR technique. Restriction enzymes, primers and conditions of PCR for *XRCC1* and *XRCC3* analysis were taken from Butkiewicz et al. [5] and for *XPD* from Sturgis et al. [10].

Statistics

For DNA damage and repair, the data were rank transformed to estimate statistical significance by the Mann-Whitney U test using computer software. Results were considered significant when $p < 0.05$.

Fisher's exact and χ^2 tests were used to analyse the differences between groups in allelic or genotypic distribution. Logistic regression was carried out to calculate genotype-associated tumour risks (odds ratio and 95% confidence interval); analyses were performed using Prism (version 3.0) software.

Results

The average results of DNA sensitivity to mutagens and damage removal studied by the comet assay are shown in figures 1 and 2. The left-hand bars represent a level of spontaneous DNA damage that is higher in cancer subjects than in controls. An in vitro exposure of lymphocytes to bleomycin (fig. 1) or activated B[a]P (fig. 2) was followed by an increase in comet length due to DNA fragmentation, because an electrophoretical DNA migration is proportional to the number of ssDNA breaks. An average increase in comet length was significant both in larynx cancer subjects and in controls. The mutagen-induced DNA fragmentation was higher in larynx cancer subjects than in controls. When larynx subjects were divided into subgroups according to histological grading, it was established that a level of spontaneous DNA fragmentation tended to increase with parameter G that seems to reflect a genetic instability associated with tumour aggressiveness (fig. 3).

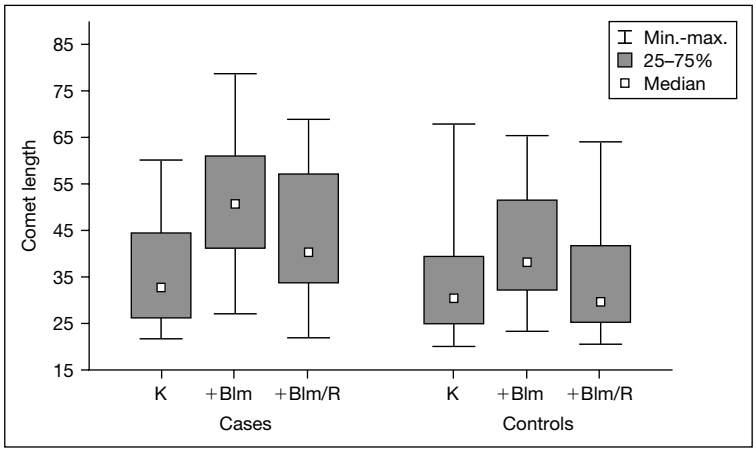


Fig. 1. Bleomycin (Blm)-induced DNA damage and its removal from lymphocytes proliferating in vitro shown as an average comet length calculated for larynx cancer subjects and healthy controls. K = control; R = repair.

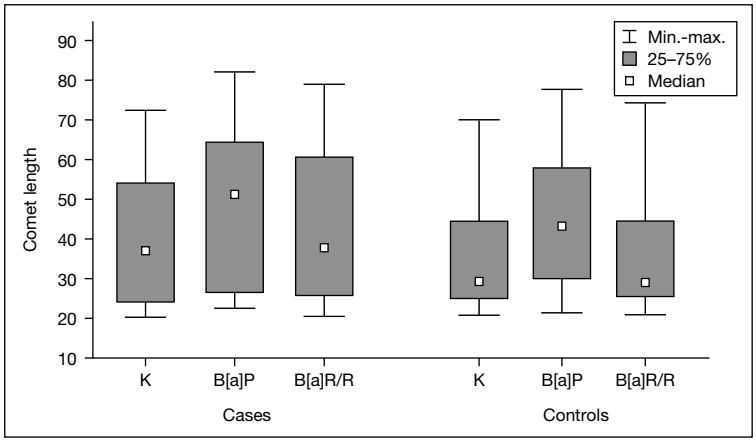


Fig. 2. B[a]P-induced DNA damage and its removal from lymphocytes proliferating in vitro shown as an average comet length calculated for larynx cancer subjects and healthy controls. B[a]P was activated by S9 microsomal fraction. K = control; R = repair.

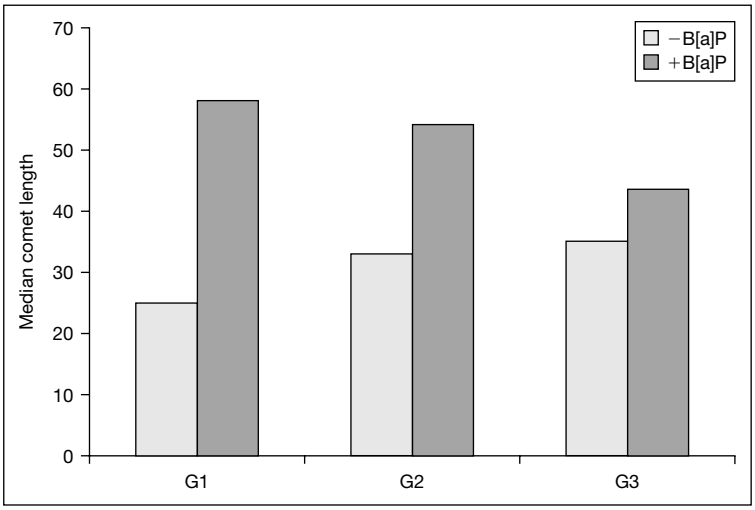


Fig. 3. Spontaneous and mutagen-induced DNA damage in human lymphocytes in vitro as a function of the histological classification of laryngeal tumour. G = Grade.

Table 1. Removal of mutagen-induced DNA lesions (%) from lymphocytes incubated in vitro for 30 min

Mutagen	Larynx cancer subjects	Controls
No mutagen	28.8	28.6
B[a]P	47.1	69.6
Bleomycin	39.4	58.2

The results are shown as a percentage of samples with arbitrarily chosen efficient DNA repair.

Then, a potential of DNA repair in vitro was estimated in lymphocytes exposed previously to bleomycin (fig. 1) or activated B[a]P (fig. 2). A number of samples with ssDNA breaks removed to the background level within 30 min (the arbitrary chosen repair time) was compared in the group of laryngeal cancer subjects and controls (table 1). An apparently more efficient removal of DNA lesions induced by both mutagens was observed for controls than for laryngeal cancer subjects. It was also noticed that repair of B[a]P-induced lesions was more effective than removal of bleomycin-induced DNA lesions. At

this point it must be stressed that the DNA-damaging effect of B[a]P is more relevant to tobacco smoke genotoxicity than that induced by bleomycin.

The genotype and allele frequencies of the studied DNA repair genes are shown in table 2. In principle, a distribution of genotypes of 5 studied polymorphisms in the group of subjects with a single tumour, SPT and controls was very much comparable. The only significant differences in risk estimates (shown in italics in table 2) were attributed to *XPG* genotypes in both studied polymorphic sites. There was also an increase in risk connected with the CT allele of *XRCC3* C18067T, but a difference between laryngeal subjects and the control group did not reach the level of significance.

The subjects with SPT (larynx as primary tumour site) were included into the study as another control group. Odds ratio values were not calculated for this group because of a relatively small group size. This group is under current analysis of genotype and allele distribution focused on the coincidence of risk-associated genotypes.

Finally, the influence of genotypes of DNA repair genes on removal of mutagen-induced DNA damage measured by the comet assay was examined. There were subgroups of subjects with a single primary tumour, and controls consisted of individuals with DNA lesion removal below the means. For each studied allele of DNA repair genes, frequency and risk estimates were calculated separately for removal of bleomycin- (table 3) and B[a]P-induced (table 4) ssDNA breaks. The highest risk estimates were attributed to the following alleles: *XPD* A35931C AC (for both mutagens), *XPD* C22541A CA (for bleomycin; for both mutagens), *XRCC1* G28152A AA (for both mutagens, particularly high for bleomycin) and *XRCC3* C18067T (for both mutagens). However, differences of frequency distribution between larynx cancer subjects and controls were far from significant.

Discussion

A relationship between mutagen sensitivity and cancer risk was described first on a chromosomal level. The bleomycin test established by Hsu et al. [11] has become a useful tool to identify individuals hypersensitive to environmental mutagens who are also at high risk to develop cancer [12]. A protocol of the bleomycin test provides a quantitative analysis of chromatid breaks but an extension of the method to identify particular breaking sites allows for a correlation of chromosome alterations with activation of oncogenes and inactivation of tumour suppressor genes. This attempt was also applied to estimate head and neck cancer risk [13–15].

The studies on a link between DNA lesions and cancer risk were more diverse because of the variety of measurable DNA lesions. The generation of

Table 2. Genotype and allele frequency of *XPD*, *XRCC1* and *XRCC3* repair genes in subjects with laryngeal tumour (single primary, second primary) and controls

Genotype	Controls, n	Single tumours, n	OR	95% CI	p	SPT, n
XPD A35931C (exon 23, Lys751Gln)						
AA	87 (27.2)	110 (37.5)	1.00			29 (35.4)
AC	175 (54.7)	135 (46.1)	*0.61*	*0.43–0.87*	*0.007*	41 (50.0)
CC	58 (18.1)	48 (16.4)	1.53	0.95–2.46	0.079	12 (14.6)
AA + AC	262 (81.9)	245 (83.6)	1.00			70 (85.4)
CC	58 (18.1)	48 (16.4)	1.13	0.74–1.72	0.569	12 (14.6)
A/C	349 (54.5)/291 (45.5)	355 (60.6)/231 (39.4)	*1.28*	*1.02–1.61*	*0.032*	99 (60.4)/65 (39.9)
XPD C22541A (exon 6, Arg156Arg)						
CC	105 (32.9)	127 (44.4)	1.00			27 (33.4)
CA	171 (53.6)	127 (44.4)	*0.61*	*0.43–0.87*	*0.005*	47 (58.0)
AA	43 (13.5)	32 (11.2)	0.62	0.36–1.04	0.069	7 (8.6)
CC + CA	276 (86.5)	254 (88.8)	1.00			74 (91.4)
AA	43 (13.5)	32 (11.2)	0.81	0.49–1.31	0.393	7 (8.6)
C/A	381 (59.7)/257 (40.3)	381 (66.6)/191 (33.4)	*1.35*	*1.06–1.70*	*0.013*	101 (62.3)/61 (37.7)
XRCC1 G28152A (exon 10, Arg399Gln)						
GG	124 (38.9)	106 (36.2)	1.00			34 (42.0)
GA	145 (45.5)	153 (52.2)	1.23	0.87–1.74	0.231	40 (49.4)
AA	50 (15.7)	34 (11.6)	0.79	0.47–1.32	0.376	7 (8.6)
GG + GA	269 (84.3)	259 (88.4)	1.00			74 (91.4)
AA	50 (11.7)	34 (11.6)	0.71	0.44–1.13	0.143	7 (8.6)
G/A	393 (61.6)/245 (38.4)	365 (62.3)/221 (37.7)	1.03	0.82–1.30	0.804	108/–

Table 2. (continued)

Genotype	Controls, n	Single tumours, n	OR	95% CI	p	SPT, n
XRCC1 C26304T (exon 6, Arg194Trp)						
CC	291 (89.5)	262 (90.4)	1.00		72 (87.8)	
CT	33 (10.2)	27 (9.3)	1.11	0.64–1.88	0.726	10 (12.2)
TT	1 (0.3)	1 (0.3)	1.11	0.06–17.8	1.000	0 (0)
CC + CT	324 (99.7)	289 (99.7)			1.00	82 (100)
TT	1 (0.3)	1 (0.3)	1.12	0.06–18.0	1.000	0
C/T	615 (94.6)/35 (5.4)	551 (95.0)/29 (5.0)	1.08	0.65–1.79	0.761	153 (93.9)/10 (6.0)
XRCC3 C18067T						
CC	144 (44.7)	135 (46.1)	1.00			9 (10.8)
CT	131 (40.7)	125 (42.7)	1.36	0.81–2.21	0.259	40 (48.2)
TT	47 (14.6)	33 (11.2)	0.75	0.45–1.24	0.236	34 (41.0)
CC + CT	275 (85.4)	260 (88.7)	1.00			49 (59.0)
TT	47 (14.6)	33 (11.2)	0.74	0.46–1.12	0.220	34 (41.0)
C/T	419 (65.1)/225 (34.9)	395 (67.4)/191 (32.6)	1.11	0.88–1.41	0.386	52 (32.5)/108 (67.5)

OR = Odds ratio; CI = confidence interval; figures in parentheses are percentages. Data in italics indicate significant differences in risk estimates.

Table 3. Allele distribution of DNA repair genes in subgroups with a reduced capacity of removal of bleomycin-induced DNA damage

Genotype	Controls, n	Cases, n	OR	95% CI	p
XPD A35931C (exon 23, Lys751Gln)					
AA	10 (20.8)	14 (29.2)	1.00		
AC	7 (14.6)	15 (31.3)	1.53	0.46–5.13	0.552
CC	6 (12.5)	3 (6.3)	0.36	0.07–1.78	0.259
XPD C22541A (exon 6, Arg156Arg)					
CC	5 (11.1)	9 (19.1)	1.00		
CA	11 (24.4)	17 (36.1)	1.16	0.31–4.41	1.000
AA	4 (8.9)	4 (8.5)	0.55	0.09–3.25	0.662
XRCC1 G28152A (exon 10, Arg399Gln)					
GG	9 (19.1)	10 (20.8)	1.00		
GA	11 (23.4)	16 (33.4)	1.31	0.4–4.28	0.766
AA	2 (4.3)	6 (12.5)	2.7	0.43–16.95	0.405
XRCC1 C26304T (exon 6, Arg194Trp)					
CC	24 (48.0)	29 (60.4)	1.00		
CT	2 (4.0)	2 (4.2)	1.21	0.16–9.23	1.000
TT	0	0	–	–	–
XRCC3 C18067T					
CC	13 (26.0)	17 (35.4)	1.00		
CT	10 (20.0)	16 (33.4)	1.22	0.42–3.57	0.789
TT	1 (2)	5 (10.5)	3.82	0.40–36.85	0.371

OR = Odds ratio; CI = confidence interval; figures in parentheses are percentages.

DNA adducts by polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons was investigated to estimate breast cancer [16] and lung cancer [3] risks. With the same goal in mind, Schmetzer et al. [17] have successfully tested the usefulness of the comet assay in lymphocytes derived from lung cancer subjects. Many types of human cells taken from cancer subjects were shown to be very sensitive to mutagen-induced damage estimated by the comet assay [18, 19]. The paper by Kleinsasser et al. [20] describing the genotoxic sensitivity of lymphocytes and mucosa cells from the upper aerodigestive tract using the comet assay is closest to our work. The authors found a higher genotoxic sensitivity of cells derived from cancer subjects compared with non-cancer donors, but the main message of this article is that because of high intra- and interindividual differences peripheral blood lymphocytes are a poor predictor of sensitivity in target (mucosa) cells. The cancer group described in our article consisted exclusively of laryngeal cancer subjects, and in this way it is a novum when considering the high

Table 4. Allele distribution of DNA repair genes in subgroups with a reduced capacity of removal of activated B[a]P-induced DNA damage

Genotype	Controls, n	Cases, n	OR	95% CI	p
XPD A35931C (exon 23, Lys751Gln)					
AA	10 (20.8)	10 (33.3)	1.00		
AC	9 (18.7)	14 (45.2)	1.56	0.46–5.23	0.547
CC	5 (10.4)	4 (12.9)	1.25	0.26–6.07	1.000
XPD C22541A (exon 6, Arg156Arg)					
CC	3 (6.7)	7 (23.4)	1.00		
CA	13 (28.9)	17 (56.4)	1.78	0.39–8.27	0.711
AA	6 (13.3)	3 (10)	0.21	0.03–1.49	0.178
XRCC1 G28152A (exon 10, Arg399Gln)					
GG	9 (19.1)	6 (19.4)	1.00		
GA	12 (25.5)	15 (48.4)	1.87	0.52–6.76	0.502
AA	2 (4.3)	7 (22.6)	5.25	0.8–34.4	0.105
XRCC1 C26304T (exon 6, Arg194Trp)					
CC	24 (48.0)	27 (87.1)	1.00		
CT	2 (4.0)	1 (3.2)	0.44	0.04–5.22	0.604
TT	0	0	–	–	–
XRCC3 C18067T					
CC	13 (26.0)	17 (54.8)	1.00		
CT	10 (20.0)	6 (19.4)	0.46	0.13–1.59	0.353
TT	2 (4.0)	5 (16.1)	1.91	0.32–1.48	0.67

OR = Odds ratio; CI = confidence interval; figures in parentheses are percentages. Data in italics indicate significant differences in risk estimates.

sensitivity of lymphocytes to genotoxic agents followed by a reduced DNA repair capacity as described in this article.

An effect of DNA repair impairment on cancer incidence was recognized first in some human syndromes including defect(s) in DNA repair pathways [21]. Later on, it was established that a DNA repair deficit is common in cancer subjects [6, 22] including head and neck cancer [23].

To understand the impact of DNA repair genes in the estimation of genetic risk and in the development of laryngeal cancer we attempted to study the distribution of 3 polymorphic DNA repair genes. To choose the most representative genes it was decided to focus on *XPD*, *XRCC1* and *XRCC3*. The chosen genes take part in the 3 major mechanisms of DNA repair involved in the removal of DNA lesions induced by tobacco smoke carcinogens, namely nucleotide excision repair (*XPD*), base excision repair (*XRCC1*) and recombination repair

(*XRCC3*), but a cross-participation is not excluded [24]. The nucleotide excision repair pathway is responsible for the removal of 'bulky' aromatic DNA adducts, cross-links and other large lesions and therefore attracts studies on tobacco smoke genotoxicity [25]. Hence, polymorphism of *XPD*, mainly at position A35931C (Lys → Gln) seems to be associated with modulation of DNA repair followed at least by an increase in aromatic DNA adducts [26, 27] and supposedly also a risk of lung [26, 28] and head and neck [29] cancer. However, the increase in cancer risk connected with this particular polymorphism was small enough to claim an association of given polymorphisms with a real genetic risk [27]. Our results concerning the significance of *XPD* A35931C polymorphisms are in agreement with those of other papers dealing with tobacco-smoke-associated cancers [26–29].

The studied polymorphisms of *XRCC1* and *XRCC3* have not been proven to affect the laryngeal cancer risk in the studied group. The most relevant research by Sturgis et al. [10] concerned the same 2 *XRCC1* polymorphic sites studied in the group of head and neck cancer subjects of the same size. Although a general conclusion of the article is a statement on the contribution of *XRCC* to cancer risk, in the result section the authors wrote that 'no significantly elevated risk was associated with it in laryngeal cancer (data not shown'.

The data concerning the impact of DNA repair genotypes on DNA repair following mutagen-induced DNA fragmentation are calculated on a relatively small number of samples. Hence, these experiments have a preliminary character only.

Altogether our results seem to indicate a complex nature of the estimation of cancer risk. Without high-penetration genes one could expect that a risk results not only from an interaction of many polymorphisms, but also gene-environment interaction [30] has to be taken into account.

Acknowledgement

This work was supported, in part, by the Polish State Committee for Scientific Research, grant No. 6 P05A 13620.

References

1 Norppa H: Genetic susceptibility, biomarker responses and cancer. Mutat Res 2003;544:339–348.
2 Mohrenweiser H, Jones IM: Variation in DNA repair is a factor in cancer susceptibility: A paradigm for the promises and perils of individual and population risk estimation. Mutat Res 1998;400:15–24.
3 Li D, Firozi PF, Wang LE, Bosken CH, Spitz MR, Hong WK, Wei Q: Sensitivity to DNA damage induced by BPDE and risk of lung cancer. Cancer Res 2001;61:1445–1450.
4 Cloos J, Reid CBA, Snow GB, Braakhuis BJM: Mutagen sensitivity: Enhanced risk assessment of squamous risk carcinoma. Oral Oncol Eur J Cancer 1996;32B:367–372.

5 Butkiewicz D, Rusin M, Enewold L, Shields PG, Chorazy M, Harris CC: Genetic polymorphisms in DNA repair genes and risk of lung cancer. Carcinogenesis 2001;22:593–597.
6 Cheng L, Spitz MR, Hong WK,Wei Q: Reduced expression levels of nucleotide excision repair genes in lung cancer: A case-control analysis. Carcinogenesis 2000;21:1527–1530.
7 Zatoński W, Becher H, Lissowska J, Wahrendorf J: Tobacco, alcohol, and diet in the etiology of laryngeal cancer: A population-based case-control study. Cancer Causes Control 1991; 2:3–10.
8 Bray, Brennan P, Boffetta P: Projections of alcohol- and tobacco-related cancer mortality in Central Europe. Int J Cancer 2000:87;122–128.
9 Jaloszyński P, Kujawski M, Wąsowicz M, Szulc R, Szyfter K: Genotoxicity of inhalation anesthetics halothane and isoflurane in human lymphocytes studied in vitro using the comet assay. Mutat Res 1999;439:199–206.
10 Sturgis EM, Castillo EL, Li L, Zheng R, Eicher SA, Clayman GL, Strom SS, Spitz MR, Wei Q: XPD/ERCC2 polymorphisms and risk of head and neck cancer: A case-control analysis. Carcinogenesis 1999:21:2219–2223.
11 Hsu TC, Johnston DA, Cherry LM, Ramkissoon D, Schantz S, Jessup JM, Winn RJ, Shirley L, Furlong C: Sensitivity to genotoxic effects of bleomycin in humans: Possible relationship to environmental carcinogenesis. Int J Cancer 1989;43:403–409.
12 Székely G, Remenár E, Kásler M, Gundy S: Does the bleomycin sensitivity assay express cancer phenotype? Mutagenesis 2003:18:59–63.
13 Field JK: Genomic instability in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. Anticancer Res 1996;16:2421–2432.
14 Gajęcka M, Jarmuż M, Szyfter W, Szyfter K: Nonrandom distribution of chromatid breaks in lymphocytes of laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma patients. Oncol Rep, in press.
15 Wu X, Lippman SM, Lee JJ, Zhu Y, Wei V, Thomas M, Hong WK, Spitz MR: Chromosome instability in lymphocytes: A potential indicator of predisposition to oral premalignant lesions. Cancer Res 2002;62:2813–2818.
16 Rundle D, Tang H, Hibshoosh A, Estabrook F, Schnabel W, Cao S, Grumet FP, Perera: The relationship between genetic damage from polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in breast tissue and breast cancer. Carcinogenesis 2000;21:1281–1289.
17 Schmetzer P, Rajaee-Behbahani N, Risch A, Thiel S, Rittgen W, Drings P, Dienemann H, Kayser KW, Schultz V, Bartsch H: Rapid screening assay for mutagen sensitivity and DNA repair capacity in human peripheral blood lymphocytes. Mutagenesis 2001;16:25–35.
18 Pool-Zobel BL, Leucht U: Induction of DNA damage by risk factors of colon cancer in human colon cells derived from biopsies. Mutat Res 1997;375:105–115.
19 Liu XL, Zhao J, Zheng R: DNA damage of tumor-associated lymphocytes and total antioxidant capacity in cancerous patients. Mutat Res 2003;539:1–8.
20 Kleinsasser NH, Wallner BC, Kastenbauer ER, Meunzerieder RK, Harréus UA: Comparing genotoxic sensitivities of human peripheral blood lymphocytes and mucosa cells of the upper aerodigestive tract using the comet assay. Mutat Res 2000;467:21–30.
21 de Boer J, Hoeijmakers JHJ: Nucleotide excision repair and human syndromes. Carcinogenesis 2000;21:453–460.
22 Wei Q, Cheng L, Hong WK, Spitz MR: Reduced DNA repair capacity in lung cancer patients. Cancer Res 1996;56:4103–4107.
23 Cheng L, Eicher SA, Guo Z, Hong WK, Spitz MR, Wei Q: Reduced DNA repair capacity in head and neck cancer patients. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 1998;7:465–468.
24 Matullo G, Palli D, Peluso M, Guarrera A, Carturan S, Polidoro S, Munnia A, Krogh V, Masala G, Berrino F, Panico S, Tumino R, Vineis P: Combination of DNA repair gene single nucleotide polymorphisms and increased levels of DNA adducts in a population-based study. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2003;12:674–677.
25 Goode EL, Ulrich CM, Potter JD: Polymorphisms in DNA repair genes and associations with cancer risk. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2002;11:1513–1530.
26 Hou SM, Fält S, Angelini S, Yang K, Nyberg F, Lambert B, Hemminki K: The XPD variant alleles are associated with increased aromatic DNA adduct level and lung cancer risk. Carcinogenesis 2002;23:599–603.

27 Matullo G, Palli D, Peluso M, Guarrera S, Carturan S, Celentano E, Krogh V, Munnia A, Tumino R, Polidoro S, Piazza A, Vineis P: XRCC1, XRCC3, XPD gene polymorphisms, smoking and ^{32}P-DNA adducts in a sample of healthy subjects. Carcinogenesis 2001;22:1437–1445.
28 Chen S, Tang D, Xue K, Xu L, Ma G, Hsu Y, Cho SS: DNA repair gene XRCC1 and XPD polymorphisms and risk of lung cancer in a Chinese population. Carcinogenesis 2002;23:1321–1325.
29 Sturgis EM, Zheng R, Li L, Castillo EL, Eicher SA, Chen M, Strom SS, Spitz MR, Wei Q: Polymorphisms of DNA repair gene *XRCC1* in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. Carcinogenesis 2000;20:2125–2129.
30 Brennan P: Gene-environment interaction and aetiology of cancer: What does it mean and how can we measure it? Carcinogenesis 2002;23:381–387.

Krzysztof Szyfter
Institute of Human Genetics, Polish Academy of Sciences
Strzeszyska 32, PL–60–479 Poznan (Poland)
Tel. +48 61 8233011, Fax +48 61 8233235, E-Mail szyfkris@man.poznan.pl

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 38–48

Intratumoral Genomic Heterogeneity in Advanced Head and Neck Cancer Detected by Comparative Genomic Hybridization

Karl Götte[a], *Susanne C. Tremmel*[b], *Susanne Popp*[b,c], *Susanne Weber*[b], *Karl Hörmann*[a], *Claus R. Bartram*[b], *Anna Jauch*[b]

[a]Department of Otolaryngology, Head and Neck Surgery, University Hospital Mannheim, Mannheim, and [b]Institute of Human Genetics, University of Heidelberg, and [c]Deutsches Krebsforschungszentrum, Division of Genetics of Skin Carcinogenesis, Heidelberg, Germany

Abstract

Objectives: Little is known about the extent of intratumoral genetic heterogeneity in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC). **Material:** Therefore, we examined 79 stage III and IV primary HNSCCs and matched lymph node metastases for over- and underrepresentation of specific chromosome regions by comparative genomic hybridization. **Results:** The overall ratio of gains and losses was higher in metastases (M) than in primary (P) tumors (4/1 vs. 2.5/1). Gains of 3q (78.1% P vs. 87.5% M) and 11q (78.1% P vs. 62.5% M), and deletions of 3p (43.8% P vs. 34.4% M) and 9p (31.3% P vs. 15.6% M) were most frequently detected. The highest rate of intratumoral discordance was observed for primary tumors and corresponding metastases (32.8%) compared to matched pairs of 2 metastases (26.5%), and of 2 anatomically distinct sides of 1 primary tumor (24.3%). Furthermore, the discordance rate was dependent on the primary tumor site (oral cavity 49.2%, oropharynx 31%, hypopharynx 30.3% and larynx 27.3%). In some tumors, the extent of genomic discordance argues against a monoclonal origin. **Conclusion:** We demonstrate a high individual variation of intratumoral genomic heterogeneity depending on the localization and selection of matched pairs. These findings are of specific importance in view of establishing prognostic markers.

K.G. and S.C.T. contributed equally to this work and should be considered as first author.

Primary and advanced head and neck squamous cell carcinomas (HNSCCs) are characterized by complex karyotypes with multiple chromosome aberrations and cytogenetically different subclones [1–3]. This intratumoral heterogeneity can be explained by selective growth advantage of certain cells with slightly varying karyotypes (related subclones) reflecting ongoing clonal evolution [4, 5]. Furthermore, prolonged exposure to carcinogenic agents such as tobacco can lead to the development of multiple synchronous or metachronous tumors with karyotypically unrelated subclones due to the hypothesis of 'field cancerization' [6].

Several studies have addressed the complex process of tumor progression and metastatic formation in HNSCC. However, the detailed underlying genetic mechanisms are not completely understood. Using cytogenetic and fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) methods different groups found evidence that deletions of specific chromosomes or chromosomal subregions such as 3p, 5q, 8p and 9p are early events in head and neck carcinogenesis whereas tetraploidy followed by extensive chromosomal imbalances is a frequent feature in advanced carcinomas [3, 7, 8].

In the last decade, comparative genomic hybridization (CGH) has emerged as a powerful tool to analyze recurrent genomic imbalances in primary and advanced HNSCCs [9–18]. To date, two CGH studies have focused on genetic differences between primary tumors and their corresponding lymph node metastases [19, 20]. In one of these studies, a mean concordance rate of 68% was calculated between matched pairs of primary tumors and metastases [20].

To determine the clonality in advanced HNSCC and to investigate possible factors involving the discordance rate, we examined 79 HNSCC samples from 35 patients by CGH. Three groups of intratumoral constellations were investigated: (1) primary tumors (P) compared to 1 synchronous corresponding lymph node metastasis (M), (2) primary tumors compared to 2 synchronous corresponding lymph node metastases at different locations (M1 and M2) and (3) 2 anatomically distinct biopsies from 1 primary tumor (P1 and P2) compared to 1 corresponding lymph node metastasis. Additionally, we correlated the discordance rates with the primary tumor sites.

Materials and Methods

Patients and Tumor Specimens

Seventy-nine tumor samples from 35 patients (25 males and 10 females) with head and neck cancer were studied. Surgical resection was performed between 1998 and 2000 at the Department of Otolaryngology and Head and Neck Surgery (University Hospital Mannheim). The patients' age ranged between 47 and 74 years (average 58.5 years). Consumption of alcohol and tobacco was assessed in all patients. None of them received treatment (radiation therapy or chemotherapy) prior to surgery. All tumor specimens were

categorized according to the American Joint Committee on Cancer TNM classification system [21]. All tumors examined were stage III or IV, including primary tumors of the oral cavity (5 cases), oropharynx (7 cases), hypopharynx (15 cases), larynx (5 cases) and corresponding lymph node metastases.

Three groups of intratumoral constellations were investigated: (1) primary tumors (P) compared to 1 synchronous corresponding lymph node metastasis (M), (2) primary tumors compared to 2 synchronous corresponding ipsilateral and/or contralateral lymph node metastases (M1 and M2) and (3) 2 anatomically distinct biopsies from 1 primary tumor (P1 and P2) compared to 1 corresponding lymph node metastasis.

DNA Extraction and Degenerate-Oligonucleotide-Primed Polymerase Chain Reaction

Tumor specimens were snap-frozen immediately after surgery. Hematoxylin-eosin-stained sections (7.5 μm) were used to confirm the pathological diagnosis as well as to estimate the ratio of tumor cells in the specimens. DNA was prepared by phenol-chloroform extraction using standard protocols. Microdissection was performed on tumor specimens containing less than 80% neoplastic cells, and DNA was extracted using a DNA extraction kit (Roche Diagnostics, Mannheim, Germany). Tumor specimens that contained no sufficient DNA for CGH analysis (No. 21-P, 7-M and 5-P) were amplified by degenerate-oligonucleotide-primed polymerase chain reaction [22].

Comparative Genomic Hybridization

CGH analysis was performed as described previously [23]. Briefly, tumor DNA and genomic DNA of a healthy male donor (reference DNA) were labeled by standard nick translation procedures. Biotinylated tumor DNA and digoxigenin-labeled reference DNA were precipitated in the presence of Cot-1 DNA (Roche Diagnostics) and hybridized to metaphase spreads from a healthy male donor. After 3 days of hybridization, probe detection was carried out using fluorescein isothiocyanate for biotin- and Cy3 for digoxigenin-labeled probes. Chromosomes were counterstained with 4,6-diamidino-2-phenylindole resulting in a G-banding-like pattern that was used for chromosome identification. Image acquisition, processing and evaluation were performed using a Leica DM RXA epifluorescence microscope, equipped with a Sensys CCD camera (Kodak KAF 1400 chip; Photometrics, Tucson, Ariz., USA) controlled by the Leica Q-FISH software (Leica Microsystem Imaging Solutions, Cambridge, UK). Three color images, green for tumor DNA, red for reference DNA and blue for 4,6-diamidino-2-phenylindole counterstaining, were acquired from 12–18 metaphase spreads per sample. Images were processed using the Leica Q-CGH software. Threshold values for detection of genomic imbalances were determined as 0.75 for losses and 1.25 for gains. For tumor specimens containing ≤50% neoplastic cells, threshold values were redefined as 0.85 for losses and 1.15 for gains. Overrepresentations were considered as high-level amplifications when the fluorescein isothiocyanate fluorescence showed a strong distinct signal detected by visual inspection and when the fluorescence ratio exceeded the value of 2.0.

Statistical Analysis

DNA copy number changes of primary tumors and corresponding lymph node metastases were compared using McNemar's test. For comparison of gains and losses detected in primary tumors and/or metastases from individual patients the discordance rates (in percent) were

calculated (modified after Waldman et al. [24]). Imbalances affecting more or less the same chromosomal region in two tumor samples of an individual patient were defined as a common event. Genetic changes were scored as one event if they affected entire chromosomes, all other changes were scored by chromosome arm. The Mann-Whitney U test was applied to compare average discordance rates between primary tumors and corresponding metastases dependent on the primary tumor site. The same test was used to compare average discordance rates between P-M matched pairs, M1-M2 matched pairs and P1-P2 matched pairs (2 anatomically distinct biopsies from 1 primary tumor). p values ≤ 0.05 were considered statistically significant.

Results

Genomic Imbalances in Primary versus Metastatic Tumors

For comparison of genetic changes only those patients who exhibited at least 1 primary tumor (n = 32) and 1 metastasis (n = 32) were selected. In the few cases presenting more than 1 biopsy of a primary tumor (P1 and P2, No. 25, 26, 27 and 33) or more than 1 metastasis (M1 and M2, No. 12, 22 and 23), the sample pairs were selected randomly. Chromosomal imbalances were detected in all but 2 tumor samples. The number of individual aberrations varied from 3 to 19 per primary tumor compared to 0–22 aberrations per metastasis. Sixty-nine percent of the primary tumors and 53% of the metastases showed more than 10 aberrations per tumor. In primary tumors, gains were 2.5 times more frequent (263 gains vs. 102 losses) whereas in metastases gains were 4 times more common (261 gains vs. 60 losses). Losses were observed more frequently in primary tumors than in metastases. Figure 1 summarizes all copy number changes observed in primary tumors and corresponding metastases. Gains affected the following entire chromosomes or chromosomal regions: 3q [78.1% P (25/32) vs. 87.5% M (28/32)], 11q [78.1% P (25/32) vs. 62.5% M (20/32)], X [43.8% P (14/32) vs. 43.8% M (14/32)], 19 [40.6% P (13/32) vs. 46.9% M (15/32)], 5p [37.5% P (12/32) vs. 34.4% M (11/32)], 8q [37.5% P (12/32) vs. 40.6% M (13/32)], 1q [34.4% P (11/32) vs. 40.6% M (13/329)], 7q [34.4% P (11/32) vs. 50% M (16/32)] and 17 [34.4% P (11/32) vs. 34.4% P (11/32)]. The most common losses affected 3p [43.8% P (14/32) vs. 34.4% M (11/32)], 9p [31.3% P (10/32) vs. 15.6% M (5/32)], Y [28.1% P (9/32) vs. 31.3% M (10/32)], 18q [25% P (8/32) vs. 18.8% M (6/32)] and 8p [18.8% P (6/32) vs. 12.5% M (4/32)]. High-level amplifications frequently affected the following chromosomal subregions: 11q13 (7/32 P vs. 9/32 M), 3q26.3–q27 (5/32 P vs. 5/32 M), 5p (2/32 P vs. 4/32 M), 8q24 (2/32 P vs. 2/32 M) and 12p (2/32 P vs. 3/23 M). Other regions were affected by high-level amplifications only once in primary or metastatic tumors (3q, 2q31, 4q12, 6p12, 7p11.2, 7q21–q22, 7q36, 8p11.2, 17q22, 18p, 18p11.3, 18q11.2, 20q13, and 21q21). None of the aberrations were significantly associated with only primary or

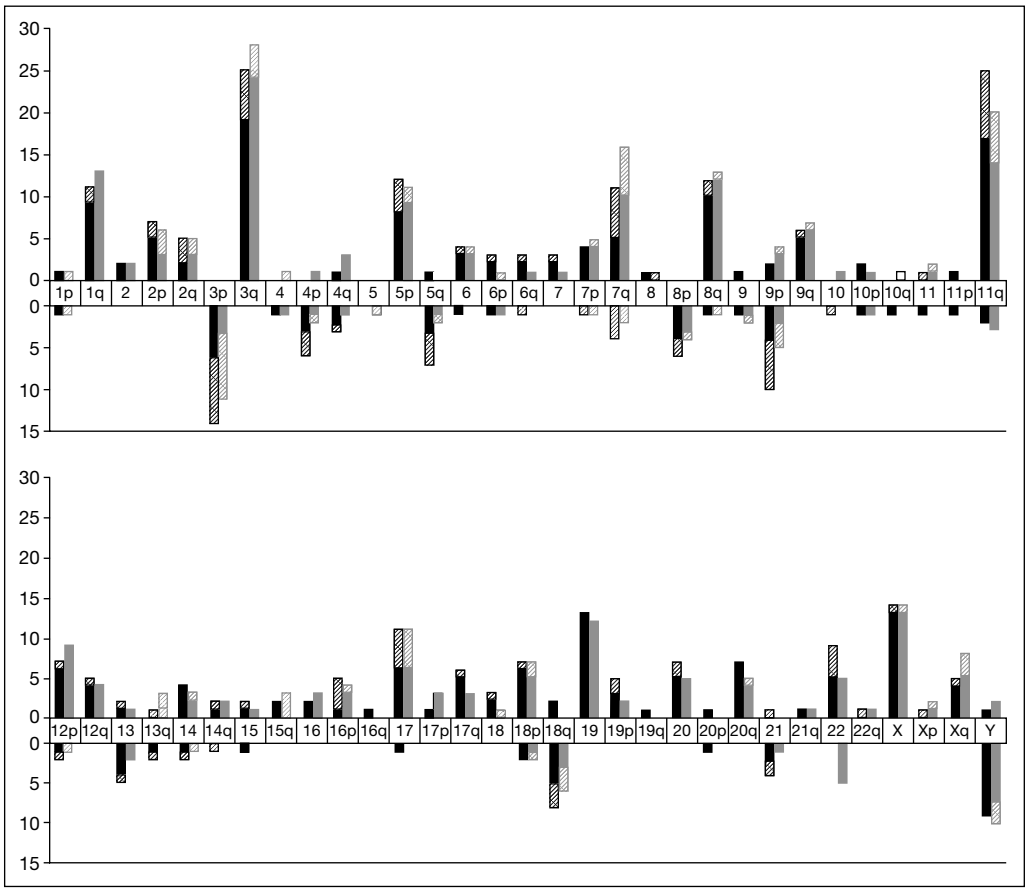


Fig. 1. Genomic imbalances detected in 32 primary tumors (black bars) and 32 corresponding lymph node metastases (gray bars) (threshold values for losses determined as 0.77 and 1.25 for gains). Hatched bars indicate genomic imbalances with threshold levels determined as 0.85 for losses and 1.15 for gains.

metastatic tumors. However, deletions of specific chromosome regions were more often observed in primary tumors, namely 4p (6/32 P vs. 2/32 M), 5q (7/32 P vs. 3/32 M) and 9p (10/32 P vs. 5/32 M). In addition, gains of distinct chromosome regions were differently distributed, namely 7q (11/32 P vs. 16/32 M) and 11q (25/32 P vs. 20/32 M).

Comparison of Discordance Rates

To determine the intratumoral genetic heterogeneity, the discordance rates of the following matched pairs were calculated for the individual patients: (1)

primary tumor compared to 1 synchronous corresponding lymph node metastasis, (2) primary tumor compared to 2 synchronous corresponding lymph node metastases at different locations and (3) 2 anatomically distinct biopsies from 1 primary tumor compared to 1 corresponding lymph node metastasis. A higher discordance rate was found for all P-M matched pairs (average discordance rate 32.8%, range 0–100%) compared to M1-M2 (average discordance rate 26.5%, range 3–50%) and P1-P2 matched pairs (average discordance rate 24.3%, range 0–53%). However, differences were statistically not significant.

Comparison of Anatomically Distinct Primary Tumor Sites

The discordance rates of the P-M matched pairs were correlated with the different anatomic sites of the primary tumors. P-M matched pairs of the oral cavity showed the highest average discordance rate (49.2%, range 10–100%) compared to P-M matched pairs of the oropharynx (31%, range 3–100%), P-M matched pairs of the hypopharynx (30.3%, range 0–87%) and P-M matched pairs of the larynx (27.3%, range 4–50%). However, differences were statistically not significant. Furthermore, there was no correlation between the average discordance rates of P-M matched pairs with regard to ipsi- or contralateral localization of the metastasis.

Discussion

Genetic aberrations in head and neck cancer are extensively studied using G-banding, interphase FISH, CGH analysis and molecular methods [for reviews, see 25–27]. However, fewer studies have analyzed the intratumoral heterogeneity by comparing genomic alterations of primary and corresponding metastatic tumors [19, 20, 28–32] and of different tumor sites [18, 33, 34]. In the present study, CGH identified recurrent chromosome aberrations in 77 of 79 HNSCC specimens. In general, the pattern of chromosomal imbalances in primary tumors and corresponding lymph node metastases was highly comparable with frequent gains of chromosomes 3q and 11q, and losses of chromosomes 3p and 9p. These results are in good agreement with other CGH analyses [9–13, 15–17, 20, 35–37]. Gains obviously dominated over losses in primary and metastatic tumors. However, more losses were observed in the primary tumors. These data support previous studies which showed that loss of specific chromosomal segments is an early event in HNSCC carcinogenesis. Later during progression tetraploidization frequently occurs followed by random loss of chromosome copies [3, 7].

The high incidence of 3q overrepresentation including amplification of 3q26–q27 observed in the present study supports the assumption that gain of

3q is an important transition event in the progression to invasive head and neck cancer [35, 38]. *PIK3CA*, which is located on 3q26, has recently been discussed as strong candidate gene in ovarian and cervical cancer [39, 40]. Furthermore, the *AIS* oncogene on 3q27–q29 was found to be amplified in lung cancer and HNSCC suggesting an important role in the progression of SCCs [41, 42]. The chromosome 11q13 region harbors several oncogenes whereby amplification of *Cyclin* D_1 was found to be associated with poor prognosis in head and neck tumors [43–45]. The *CDKN2A* gene, which encodes for p16, is localized on 9p21, a frequently underrepresented chromosome region. This gene is commonly inactivated in HNSCC [46, 47], and alterations have been related to a shorter overall survival in advanced laryngeal SCC [48]. Chromosome 3p contains several putative tumor suppressor genes such as *VHL, FHIT* and *MLH1* [49]. However, these genes are unlikely to be the targets in HNSCC [50–52]. According to a recent study, a new tumor suppressor gene, *RASSF1A* on 3p21.3, a regulator in the *ras* pathway, plays a role in the oncogenesis of HNSCC [53, 54].

Differences of more than 10% in genomic alterations between primary tumors and corresponding metastases were detected on 4p, 5q, 7q, 9p and 11q. It is noteworthy that we detected – in accordance with a recently published study [20] – a higher frequency (15%) of 7q gains in metastases compared to primary tumors. Bockmühl et al. [20] also postulated a particular relevance of 7q11.2 for metastatic spread in HNSCC. Along the same line, Petersen et al. [55] reported on 7q gains in carcinoma metastases to the brain.

The average discordance rate between primary tumors and metastases was 32.8% in our study, which is in agreement with the findings of Bockmühl et al. [20], who detected – dependent on the algorithm – concordance rates of 64 and 68%. Comparison of average discordance rates between matched pairs of primary tumor and metastasis (32.8%), 2 metastases on different sides (26.5%) and 2 biopsies of a primary tumor (24.3%) revealed the highest discordance rate in the group of primary tumors and corresponding lymph node metastases. The highest affinity was found in the group of anatomically distinct biopsies from 1 primary tumor. These findings are in line with previously published studies using microsatellite analyses [28, 31, 32, 34].

Besides the average discordance rates, it is worth considering the enormous genetic variation within individual tumors. While some tumors revealed almost complete concordance (e.g. tumors No. 17, 19, 21), others demonstrated nearly complete discordance (e.g. tumor No. 15). In this specific case, the discordance rate was 87%. Taking into account statistic chances of identical genetic aberrations, a common precursor of both the primary and the metastatic tumor is questionable. With the concept of 'field cancerization' for HNSCC in mind [6], this would not be surprising. Interestingly, in a recently published

cytogenetic study, Jin et al. [56] made a similar observation in 1 HNSCC with 2 highly complex cytogenetically unrelated clones indicating a multicellular origin. From a clinician's point of view, this could mean that in some rare cases one must suspect the coexistence of a hidden synchronous second primary tumor within the upper aerodigestive tract in the presence of a primary and a genetically unrelated metastatic tumor, which represents a 'CUP' syndrome ('carcinoma of unknown primary tumor').

Furthermore, we demonstrate that the average discordance rate is dependent on the primary tumor site (oral cavity 49.2%; oropharynx 31%; hypopharynx 30.3%; larynx 27.3%). There are no similar reports in the literature, although Huang et al. [18] have recently postulated a different CGH pattern for primary HNSCCs dependent on the tumor site. These results indicate that the analysis of a single biopsy from an oral cavity cancer may be least representative for the entire neoplasm. To date, it remains unknown whether subtle genetic differences between tumors of different localizations in the upper aerodigestive tract account for their different clinical behavior.

In conclusion, we have detected a high individual variation of intratumoral genomic heterogeneity depending on the localization and selection of matched pairs. These findings are of specific importance in view of establishing prognostic markers.

Acknowledgements

The authors want to thank Mrs. Tanja Mayer and Mrs. Petra Prohaska for their help and technical assistance. Parts of this work were supported by the Research Fund of the Faculty of Medicine Mannheim, University of Heidelberg, the Else-Kröner-Fresenius-Stiftung (both to K.G.) and the Verein zur Förderung der Krebsforschung in Deutschland (to A.J.).

References

1 Jin Y, Mertens F, Mandahl N, Heim S, Olegard C, Wennerberg J, Biörklund A, Mitelman F: Chromosome abnormalities in eighty-three head and neck squamous cell carcinomas: Influence of culture conditions on karyotypic pattern. Cancer Res 1993;53:2140–2146.
2 Jin Y, Mertens F, Jin C, Akervall J, Wennerberg J, Gorunova L, Mandahl N, Heim S, Mitelman F: Nonrandom chromosome abnormalities in short-term cultured primary squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck. Cancer Res 1995;55:3204–3210.
3 Van Dyke DL, Worsham MJ, Benninger MS, Krause CJ, Baker SR, Wolf GT, Drumheller T, Tilley BC, Carey TE: Recurrent cytogenetic abnormalities in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck region. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 1994;3:192–206.
4 Nowell PC: The clonal evolution of tumor cell populations. Science 1976;194:23–28.
5 Nowell PC: Chromosomal and molecular clues to tumor progression. Semin Oncol 1989;16:116–127.
6 Slaugther DP, Southwick HW, Smejkal W: 'Field cancerization' in oral stratified squamous epithelium. Cancer 1953;6:963–968.

7 Carey TE, Van Dyke DL, Worsham MJ: Nonrandom chromosomes aberrations and clonal populations in head and neck cancer. Anticancer Res 1993;13:2561–2568.
8 Soder AI, Hopman AH, Ramaekers FC, Conradt C, Bosch FX: Distinct nonrandom patterns of chromosomal aberrations in the progression of squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck. Cancer Res 1995;55:5030–5037.
9 Speicher MR, Howe C, Crotty P, du Manoir S, Costa J, Ward DC: Comparative genomic hybridization detects novel deletions and amplifications in head and neck squamous cell carcinomas. Cancer Res 1995;55:1010–1013.
10 Brzoska PM, Levin NA, Fu KK, Kaplan MJ, Singer MI, Gray JW, Christman MF: Frequent novel DNA copy number increase in squamous cell head and neck tumors. Cancer Res 1995;55: 3055–3059.
11 Bockmühl U, Schwendel A, Dietel M, Petersen I: Distinct patterns of chromosomal alterations in high- and low-grade head and neck squamous cell carcinomas. Cancer Res 1996;56:5325–5329.
12 Bockmühl U, Petersen S, Schmidt S, Wolf G, Jahnke V, Dietel M, Petersen I: Patterns of chromosomal alterations in metastasizing and nonmetastasizing primary head and neck carcinomas. Cancer Res 1997;57:5213–5216.
13 Bockmühl U, Wolf G, Schmidt S, Schwendel A, Jahnke V, Dietel M, Petersen I: Genomic alterations associated with malignancy in head and neck cancer. Head Neck 1998;20:145–151.
14 Weber RG, Scheer M, Born IA, Joos S, Cobbers JM, Hofele C, Reifenberger G, Zoller JE, Lichter P: Recurrent chromosomal imbalances detected in biopsy material from oral premalignant and malignant lesions by combined tissue microdissection, universal DNA amplification, and comparative genomic hybridization. Am J Pathol 1998;153:295–303.
15 Bergamo NA, Rogatto SR, Poli-Frederico RC, Reis PP, Kowalski LP, Zielenska M, Squire JA: Comparative genomic hybridization analysis detects frequent over-representation of DNA sequences at 3q, 7p, and 8q in head and neck carcinomas. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 2000;119: 48–55.
16 Hermsen MA, Joenje H, Arwert F, Braakhuis BJ, Baak JP, Westerveld A, Slater R: Assessment of chromosomal gains and losses in oral squamous cell carcinoma by comparative genomic hybridisation. Oral Oncol 1997;33:414–418.
17 Oga A, Kong G, Tae K, Lee Y, Sasaki K: Comparative genomic hybridization analysis reveals 3q gain resulting in genetic alteration in 3q in advanced oral squamous cell carcinoma. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 2001;127:24–29.
18 Huang Q, Yu GP, McCormick SA, Mo J, Datta B, Mahimkar M, Lazarus P, Schäffer AA, Desper R, Schantz SP: Genetic differences detected by comparative genomic hybridization in head and neck squamous cell carcinomas from different tumor sites: Construction of oncogenetic trees for tumor progression. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 2002;34:224–233.
19 Welkoborsky HJ, Bernauer HS, Riazimand HS, Jacob R, Mann WJ, Hinni ML: Patterns of chromosomal aberrations in metastasizing and nonmetastasizing squamous cell carcinomas of the oropharynx and hypopharynx. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol 2000;109:401–410.
20 Bockmühl U, Schluns K, Schmidt S, Matthias S, Petersen I: Chromosomal alterations during metastasis formation of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 2002;33:29–35.
21 Fleming ID, Cooper JS, Henson DE, Hutter RVP, Kennedy BJ, Murphy GP, et al (eds): American Joint Committee on Cancer Staging Manual, ed 5. Philadelphia, Lippincott-Raven, 1997.
22 Telenius H, Pelmear AH, Tunnacliffe A, Carter NP, Behmel A, Ferguson-Smith MA, Nordenskjold M, Pfragner R, Ponder BA: Cytogenetic analysis by chromosome painting using DOP-PCR amplified flow-sorted chromosomes. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 1992;4:257–263.
23 Du Manoir S, Speicher MR, Joos S, Schröck E, Popp S, Döhner H, Kovacs G, Robert-Nicoud M, Lichter P, Cremer T: Detection of complete and partial chromosome gains and losses by comparative genomic in situ hybridization. Hum Genet 1993;90:590–610.
24 Waldman FM, DeVries S, Chew KL, Moore DH II, Kerlikowske K, Ljung BM: Chromosomal alterations in ductal carcinomas in situ and their in situ recurrences. J Natl Cancer Inst 2000;92: 313–320.
25 Forastiere A, Koch W, Trotti A, Sidransky D: Head and neck cancer. N Engl J Med 2001;345: 1890–1900.

26 Gollin SM: Chromosomal alterations in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck: Window to the biology of disease. Head Neck 2001;23:238–253.
27 Crowe DL, Hacia JG, Hsieh CL, Sinha UK, Rice H: Molecular pathology of head and neck cancer. Histol Histopathol 2002;17:909–914.
28 Sun PC, el-Mofty SK, Haughey BH, Scholnick SB: Allelic loss in squamous cell carcinomas of the larynx: Discordance between primary and metastatic tumors. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 1995;14:145–148.
29 Leong PP, Rezai B, Koch WM, Reed A, Eisele D, Lee DJ, Sidransky D, Jen J, Westra WH: Distinguishing second primary tumors from lung metastases in patients with head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. J Natl Cancer Inst 1998;90:972–977.
30 Takes RP, Baatenburg de Jong RJ, Wijffels K, Schuuring E, Litvinov SV, Hermans J, van Krieken JH: Expression of genetic markers in lymph node metastases compared with their primary tumors in head and neck cancer. J Pathol 2001;194:298–302.
31 Götte K, Riedel F, Schäfer C, Coy JF, Hörmann K: Genetic discordance between primary tumors and metastases of head and neck cancer detected by microsatellite analysis. Oncol Rep 2002;9:829–834.
32 Tabor MP, van Houten VM, Kummer JA, Vosjan MJ, Vlasblom R, Snow GB, Leemans CR, Braakhuis BJ, Brakenhoff RH: Discordance of genetic alterations between primary head and neck tumors and corresponding metastases associated with mutational status of the TP53 gene. Genes Chromosomes Cancer 2002;33:168–177.
33 El-Naggar AK, Lopez-Varela V, Luna MA, Weber R, Batsakis JG: Intratumoral DNA content heterogeneity in laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma. Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 1992; 118:169–173.
34 El-Naggar AK, Hurr K, Luna MA, Goepfert H, Hong WK, Batsakis JG: Intratumoral genetic heterogeneity in primary head and neck squamous carcinoma using microsatellite markers. Diagn Mol Pathol 1997;6:305–308.
35 Bockmühl U, Schmidt S, Petersen S, Petersen I: Deletionen des Chromosoms 10q – Marker für die Metastasierung bei Kopf-Hals-Karzinomen? Laryngorhinootologie 2000;79:81–85.
36 Hermsen M, Guervos MA, Meijer G, Baak J, van Diest P, Marcos CA, Sampedro A: New chromosomal regions with high-level amplifications in squamous cell carcinomas of the larynx and pharynx, identified by comparative genomic hybridization. J Pathol 2001;194:177–182.
37 Wolff E, Girod S, Liehr T, Vorderwülbecke U, Ries J, Steininger H, Gebhart E: Oral squamous cell carcinomas are characterized by a rather uniform pattern of genomic imbalances detected by comparative genomic hybridisation. Oral Oncol 1998;34:186–190.
38 Singh B, Stoffel A, Gogineni S, Poluri A, Pfister DG, Shaha AR, Pathak A, Bosl G, Cordon-Cardo C, Shah JP, Rao PH: Amplification of the 3q26.3 locus is associated with progression to invasive cancer and is a negative prognostic factor in head and neck squamous cell carcinomas. Am J Pathol 2002;161:365–371.
39 Shayesteh L, Lu Y, Kuo WL, Baldocchi R, Godfrey T, Collins C, Pinkel D, Powell B, Mills GB, Gray JW: PIK3CA is implicated as an oncogene in ovarian cancer. Nat Genet 1999;21:99–102.
40 Ma YY, Wei SJ, Lin YC, Lung JC, Chang TC, Whang-Peng J, Liu JM, Yang DM, Yang WK, Shen CY: PIK3CA as an oncogene in cervical cancer. Oncogene 2000;19:2739–2744.
41 Hibi K, Trink B, Patturajan M, Westra WH, Caballero OL, Hill DE, Ratovitski EA, Jen J, Sidransky D: AIS is an oncogene amplified in squamous cell carcinoma. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2000;97:5462–5467.
42 Yamaguchi K, Wu L, Caballero OL, Hibi K, Trink B, Resto V, Cairns P, Okami K, Koch WM, Sidransky D, Jen J: Frequent gain of the p40/p51/p63 gene locus in primary head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Int J Cancer 2000;86:684–689.
43 Akervall JA, Michalides RJ, Mineta H, Balm A, Borg A, Dictor MR, Jin Y, Loftus B, Mertens F, Wennerberg JP: Amplification of cyclin D_1 in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck and the prognostic value of chromosomal abnormalities and cyclin D_1 overexpression. Cancer 1997;79:380–389.
44 Namazie A, Alavi S, Olopade OI, Pauletti G, Aghamohammadi N, Aghamohammadi M, Gornbein JA, Calcaterra TC, Slamon DJ, Wang MB, Srivatsan ES: Cyclin D_1 amplification and p16(MTS1/CDK4I) deletion correlate with poor prognosis in head and neck tumors. Laryngoscope 2002;112:472–481.

45 Rodrigo JP, Gonzalez MV, Lazo PS, Ramos S, Coto E, Alvarez I, Garcia LA, Suarez C: Genetic alterations in squamous cell carcinomas of the hypopharynx with correlations to clinicopathological features. Oral Oncol 2002;38:357–363.
46 Reed AL, Califano J, Cairns P, Westra WH, Jones RM, Koch W, Ahrendt S, Eby Y, Sewell D, Nawroz H, Bartek J, Sidransky D: High frequency of p16 (CDKN2/MTS-1/INK4A) inactivation in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Cancer Res 1996;56:3630–3633.
47 Nunn J, Scholes AG, Liloglou T, Nagini S, Jones AS, Vaughan ED, Gosney JR, Rogers S, Fear S, Field JK: Fractional allele loss indicates distinct genetic populations in the development of squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (SCCHN). Carcinogenesis 1999;20:2219–2228.
48 Bazan V, Zanna I, Migliavacca M, Sanz-Casla MT, Maestro ML, Corsale S, Macaluso M, Dardanoni G, Restivo S, Quintela PL, Bernaldez R, Salerno S, Morello V, Tomasino RM, Gebbia N, Russo A: Prognostic significance of p16INK4a alterations and 9p21 loss of heterozygosity in locally advanced laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma. J Cell Physiol 2002;192:286–293.
49 Knuutila S, Aalto Y, Autio K, Björkqvist AM, El-Rifai W, Hemmer S, Huhta T, Kettunen E, Kiuru-Kuhlefelt S, Larramendy ML, Lushnikova T, Monni O, Pere H, Tapper J, Tarkkanen M, Varis A, Wasenius VM, Wolf M, Zhu Y: DNA copy number losses in human neoplasms. Am J Pathol 1999;155:683–694.
50 Piccinin S, Gasparotto D, Vukosavljevic T, Barzan L, Sulfaro S, Maestro R, Boiocchi M: Microsatellite instability in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck related to field cancerization phenomena. Br J Cancer 1998;78:1147–1151.
51 Partridge M, Emilion G, Pateromichelakis S, Phillips E, Langdon J: Location of candidate tumour suppressor gene loci at chromosomes 3p, 8p and 9p for oral squamous cell carcinomas. Int J Cancer 1999;83:318–325.
52 Pateromichelakis S, Lee G, Langdon JD, Partridge M: The FHIT gene in oral squamous cell carcinoma: Allelic imbalance is frequent but cDNA aberrations are uncommon. Oral Oncol 2000;36:180–188.
53 Hogg RP, Honorio S, Martinez A, Agathanggelou A, Dallol A, Fullwood P, Weichselbaum R, Kuo MJ, Maher ER, Latif F: Frequent 3p allele loss and epigenetic inactivation of the RASSF1A tumour suppressor gene from region 3p21.3 in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Eur J Cancer 2002;38:1585–1592.
54 Van den Brekel MW, Balm AJ: Editorial comment on ‘Frequent 3p allele loss and epigenetic inactivation of the RASSF1A tumour suppressor gene from region 3p21.3 in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma’ by Hogg and colleagues. Eur J Cancer 2002;38:1561–1563.
55 Petersen I, Hidalgo A, Petersen S, Schluns K, Schewe C, Pacyna-Gengelbach M, Goeze A, Krebber B, Knosel T, Kaufmann O, Szymas J, von Deimling A: Chromosomal imbalances in brain metastases of solid tumors. Brain Pathol 2000;10:395–401.
56 Jin C, Jin Y, Wennerberg J, Akervall J, Dictor M, Mertens F: Karyotypic heterogeneity and clonal evolution in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck. Cancer Genet Cytogenet 2002;132:85–96.

Privatdozent Dr. Karl Götte
Department of Otolaryngology
Head and Neck Surgery, University Hospital Mannheim
PO Box, DE–68135 Mannheim (Germany)
Tel. +49 621 383 1600, Fax +49 621 383 3827, E-Mail karl.goette@hno.ma.uni-heidelberg.de

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 49–57

Function and Importance of p63 in Normal Oral Mucosa and Squamous Cell Carcinoma of the Head and Neck

Niklas Thurfjell[a], *Philip J. Coates*[c], *Linda Boldrup*[a], *Britta Lindgren*[a], *Bodil Bäcklund*[a], *Tony Uusitalo*[a], *David Mahani*[a], *Erik Dabelsteen*[d], *Åke Dahlqvist*[b], *Björn Sjöström*[b], *Göran Roos*[a], *Borek Vojtesek*[e], *Rudolf Nenutil*[f], *Karin Nylander*[a]

[a]Department of Medical Biosciences/Pathology, Umeå University, and [b]Department of Clinical Sciences/Otorhinolaryngology, Umeå University Hospital, Umeå, Sweden; [c]Division of Pathology and Neurosciences, University of Dundee, Ninewells Hospital and Medical School, Dundee, UK; [d]Department of Oral Diagnostics, Dental School, University of Copenhagen, Copenhagen, Denmark; [e]Department of Cellular and Molecular Oncology, Masaryk Memorial Cancer Institute, and [f]Department of Pathology, Maternity Hospital, Brno, Czech Republic

Abstract

Background/Aims: Squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (HNSCC) is the 6th most common malignancy worldwide with a 5-year survival that has not improved over the last 20–25 years. Factors of prognostic significance for this tumour type include the presence of regional lymph node metastasis and amplification of chromosome 3q21–29, where the *p63* gene is located. This gene encodes 6 proteins and is crucial for formation of the oral mucosa, teeth, salivary glands and skin. Each of the 6 different p63 proteins has different characteristics and functions, where some resemble the tumour suppressor protein p53, whilst others have functions that oppose p53. **Methods:** To understand the function and importance of p63 in oral mucosa and tumour development we have studied protein as well as mRNA expression in normal oral mucosa and tumours. **Results/Conclusion:** Expression of p63 proteins differs between the cell layers in normal oral mucosa, and primary HNSCC has a high expression level of p63 isoforms normally expressed in basal cells. Data suggest that p63 expression in HNSCC influences tumour cell differentiation.

Background

Squamous Cell Carcinoma of the Head and Neck

Squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (HNSCC) is the 6th most common malignancy worldwide, and over recent years an increased number of these tumours has been seen [1]. The 5-year survival for this type of tumour is among the lowest for all cancer types and has not improved over the last 20–25 years. Both advanced disease as well as treatment cause the patient severe both functional and aesthetic problems, and reconstruction after major surgery can be very complicated. The majority of tumours are histologically highly or moderately differentiated but show striking dissimilarities in clinical course [2]. Until recently, the presence of regional lymph node metastases was the only single factor of prognostic significance for this tumour type. However, a few years ago a study of primary HNSCC showed amplification of chromosome 3q21–29 to have higher significance as a prognostic marker [3]. Within this region on chromosome 3, the *p63* gene is located.

p53 and p63

In accordance with other human solid tumours that have been studied, HNSCC has mutations within the tumour suppressor gene *TP53* in about half of the tumours, resulting in a non-functional p53 protein that lacks the protective function of the normal protein. Over the last few years, two relatives with strong homology to p53 have been identified, termed p63 and p73 [4, 5]. p63 comprises a group of (at least) 6 different proteins. Three of these possess an N-terminal sequence of amino acids that has high homology to the transcriptional activation (TA) domain of p53, a central domain and a C-terminal domain of varying length (TAp63α, TAp63β, TAp63γ). The other three p63 isoforms lack the N-terminal transactivation region but have the same common central domain and variable C-terminal sequences as the TA isoforms (ΔNp63α, ΔNp63β, ΔNp63γ) [6, 7] (fig. 1).

Because the ΔNp63 proteins lack the transactivation domain it was long thought that they also lacked the ability to transactivate, but still through the central DNA binding domain could inhibit p53 function by competing with p53 for binding to target genes. However, recent studies have shown the presence of a second transactivation domain within exons 11–12 of the *p63* gene, as well as a repressive domain within exons 13–14, mapping towards the C-terminal regions of the proteins [8, 9]. In this study, the transactivational capacity of all known p63 proteins was studied, showing the p63β proteins to be most efficient, which could be explained by their lack of exon 13 containing the repressive domain. The TAp63γ protein was not as efficient in transactivation as the p63β proteins, presumably due to its lack of the second transactivating domain

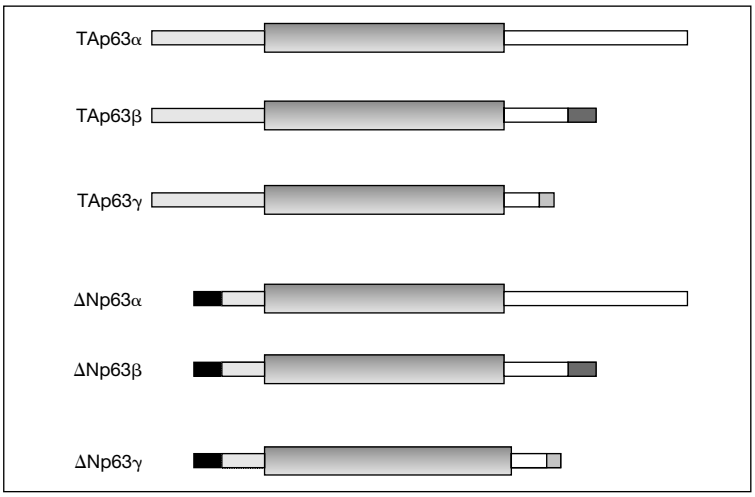


Fig. 1. Schematic drawing of the 6 p63 proteins showing common and divergent regions between the proteins. Modified after Nylander et al. [14].

within exons 11–12, and ΔNp63γ was as efficient in transactivation as the TAp63α protein [8].

The function of p53 is well established causing cell cycle arrest or apoptosis after genotoxic or other forms of stress. Clues into the function of p63 have come from a number of studies, including the production of transgenic mice in which the *p63* gene has been functionally deleted. These mice show severe developmental abnormalities of squamous epithelia and die rapidly due to dehydration, indicating that p63 expression is vital for the development of the skin as well as the oral mucosa [10, 11]. In addition, the mice also show abnormalities of other glandular epithelia. However, in these mice all 6 isoforms have been deleted, so it has remained unclear which particular isoform(s) is involved, and what the function of the other isoforms might be. Attempts at establishing 'single p63 knockout' mice, where each individual p63 protein has been inactivated, would clearly be extremely useful in this regard. However, achieving this goal is complicated by the fact that all isoforms are encoded by the same gene and arise by the use of two different promoters in combination with complex alternative splicing events. Thus, it may be impossible to prevent expression of a single isoform whilst allowing expression of the remainder.

Other clues to the function of p63 have come from studying the expression patterns of the protein in normal and pathological tissues. In contrast to the p53 protein, which is undetectable in normal adult tissues but is expressed in essentially all cell types following stress, expression of p63 can easily be detected

normally, but is limited to certain tissue types [12, 13]. Most studies of p63 expression reported to date have employed the 4A4 monoclonal antibody that does not discriminate between the different isoforms of p63. Results with this reagent suggested that p63 is most strongly expressed in epithelial stem/reserve cells in the basal layer of the skin and in other epithelial tissues [6]. More recently, we have begun to dissect out the isoform-specific expression patterns of p63 and have demonstrated that the N-terminal truncated proteins are expressed only in epithelial tissues, whilst the full-length proteins can also be detected in other types of tissue such as endothelium and lymphoid tissue [14].

In our most recent studies, we have been investigating the roles of individual p63 isoforms in the development of HNSCC by mapping changes in p63 status that have occurred in tumour tissue compared to normal corresponding tissue within each individual patient. For these studies we have used a multidisciplinary approach involving microdissection of specific anatomical regions, a highly sensitive quantitative RT-PCR method for analysing mRNA expression and immunocytochemistry to identify specific groups of p63 proteins.

Methods and Results

In order to distinguish between different p63 proteins and map their localization within the oral epithelium, we have developed antibodies specifically directed against the 2 N-terminal isoforms (TAp63 and ΔNp63) and against the C-terminal region of the p63α proteins. Using these antibodies in immunohistochemistry of formalin-fixed and wax-embedded tissue sections we could see strong staining for ΔNp63 in the basal layer, extending up to about halfway through the epithelium. The TAp63 proteins show a weaker but broader staining pattern [14] (fig. 2). Using an antibody specific for the p63α isoforms shows that these C-terminal variants are highly expressed in the oral epithelium. To date, there are no antisera available that can specifically identify p63β or p63γ due to the limited regions of uniqueness in these isoforms. These data indicate that the p63 isoforms switch from the ΔN to the TA forms during normal cellular differentiation, implying distinct roles for these isoforms in the proliferation and/or differentiation of the oral epithelium. To compare protein status with levels of mRNA for the respective proteins and to analyse the other C-terminal isoforms, we used laser dissection and divided frozen sections of normal buccal mucosa from non-smokers in 3 layers for analysis of RNA levels of the individual p63 forms. Data from this analysis confirmed results from the immunohistochemical study, showing mainly ΔNp63α in the basal cell layers and low levels of the full-length proteins, TAp63, within all levels of the epithelium. In addition, we were able to demonstrate low level expression of

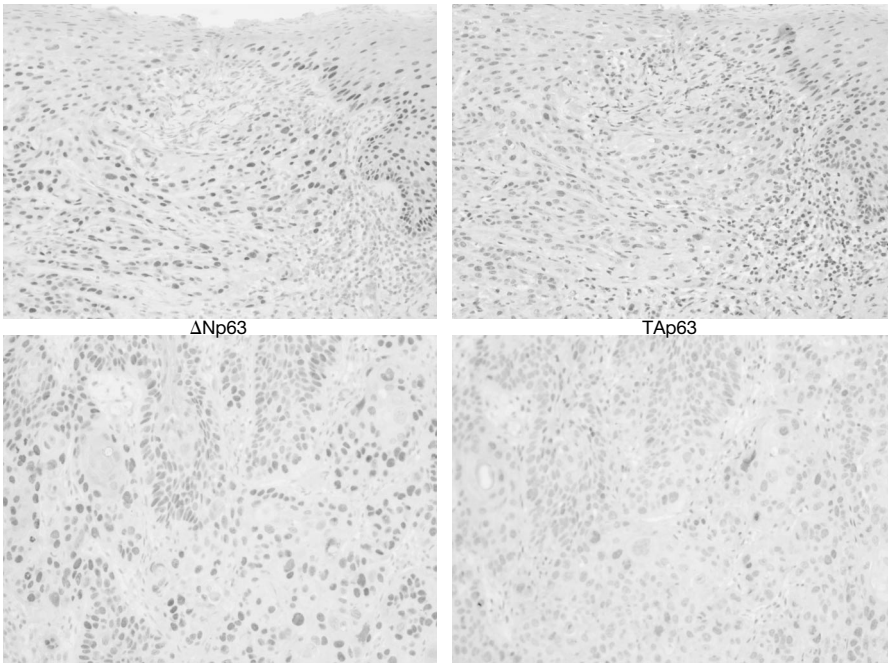


Fig. 2. Staining of parallel sections with antibodies directed against the N-terminal truncated ΔNp63 proteins (antibody KN-Δ) and the full-length TAp63 proteins (antibody KN-long). The N-terminal truncated proteins are located in basal and suprabasal layers up through approximately half of the epithelium, whereas the full-length proteins can be seen all the way through the epithelium. Furthermore, the N-terminal truncated proteins are more abundant (shown by a stronger staining reaction) and are also exclusively located within the epithelium, whereas the full-length proteins can also be seen in, for example, lymphocytes [14].

p63β mRNA [15]. These findings indicate that the transcriptionally inactive ΔNp63α [8] is the predominant isoform expressed, although transcriptionally active TAp63 and p63β isoforms are also present at low levels.

In our analyses of HNSCC, the ΔNp63α isoform was again the most widely expressed and the level of the full-length TAp63 mRNA was, as in normal mucosa, lower than the corresponding levels of ΔNp63. Some tumours also contained mRNA for p63β at low levels (table 1). An interesting finding in both normal and tumour tissue was the individual variation found in levels of the different p63 isoforms, emphasizing the importance of using normal mucosa from each patient as his/her own control in studies of p63 [15]. To further elucidate the role of p63 in proliferation, inhibition of wild-type p53 activity and/or extension of cellular life-span in HNSCC, levels of Ki-67, p53 and hTERT were also measured. Ki-67 and p53 were assessed at the protein level

Table 1. p63 mRNA levels in tumour samples

	p63α	ΔNp63	p63β
Tumour	69%	85%	77%
Statistical significance (Wilcoxon signed rank test)	–	0.016	0.046

In the analysis of p63 mRNA levels in paired normal and tumour samples from the same individual, tumours in general showed higher levels for all isoforms. For the ΔNp63 and p63β isoforms, results were statistically significant [15].

by immunohistochemistry, and hTERT levels were determined at the mRNA level. There was no obvious correlation between any of these factors and p63 [15]. Immunocytochemical analysis of p63 expression revealed an association between the differentiation state of the tumour cells and the intensity of staining for p63. In particular, tumours with nests of keratinizing cells showed only weak staining or were negative for p63 in these areas.

As smoking is a well-known risk factor for developing HNSCC, we have also collected clinically normal mucosa from smokers and age- and sex-matched non-smokers. An individual variation in levels of p63 mRNAs was seen in these 2 groups, and in accordance with the other tissues studied, the ΔN and α-isoforms predominated. Although p63 is considered as a homologue to p53, which is induced by genotoxic agents such as those found in tobacco smoke, there were no statistically significant differences in the p63 expression profiles of smokers versus non-smokers. These data indicate that p63 is unlikely to play a role in defending the oral mucosa from the damaging effects of tobacco-derived carcinogens.

Conclusions

The 5-year survival for patients with HNSCC has not improved over the last 20–25 years. As disease as well as treatment can cause patients severe aesthetic and functional problems, it is of the utmost importance to map tumour development as well as characterize the tumour cells if we are to develop more effective treatments. Therefore, as part of this process, we are studying a group of proteins called p63, which are crucial for the formation of a normal oral mucosa. These 6 proteins have, despite the fact that they belong to the same family, different characteristics, for example concerning their ability to transactivate certain downstream target genes. In this aspect, although p63 shares

some target genes in common with p53, some of the p63 proteins are more efficient than p53, and p63 can also transactivate certain genes that are apparently not regulated by p53.

To understand tumour development in the oral epithelium (as well as other tissues), one first has to map and understand conditions in the normal oral epithelium. We have developed antibodies directed towards different subgroups of the p63 family and found differences in distribution between the full length (TAp63α, TAp63β, TAp63γ) and N-terminal truncated p63 proteins (ΔNp63α, ΔNp63β and ΔNp63γ). In order to refine this mapping of location we then took biopsies from normal buccal mucosa of non-smokers and divided them into different layers to analyse mRNA. This analysis confirmed data from immunohistochemical analysis and also confirmed the ΔNp63α isoform to be the most prevalent in the basal part of the epithelium. We could further detect mRNA for p63β, mainly in the basal layer but also within the spinosum layer of normal mucosa and also in HNSCC [15]. The statistically significant up-regulation of p63β in HNSCC is interesting, as these isoforms (TAp63β and ΔNp63β) have been shown to be very efficient transactivators, in fact the most potent transactivators of all p63 isoforms [8]. This could suggest that even low levels of p63β mRNA could have a high impact on the biology of the tumours in which it is expressed [15].

Smoking is a well-known risk factor for developing HNSCC, and we therefore also looked at clinically normal oral mucosa from smokers (defined as persons who had smoked for at least 10 years and currently smoked at least 10 cigarettes per day). When comparing mucosa from these smokers to age- and sex- matched non-smokers, no difference in levels of the different p63 isoforms could be seen, and thus no indications that p63 is involved in the response to tobacco-derived genotoxic agents [15]. One striking finding was, however, the interindividual variation in p63 mRNA levels, which could also be seen in normal mucosae from HNSCC patients [15]. The fact that levels of p63 normally vary between individuals emphasizes the importance of using each individual tumour patient as his/her own control.

In HNSCC, mRNA levels of the N-terminal truncated ΔNp63 and the p63β isoforms showed a statistically significant up-regulation. Accordingly, as these isoforms are mainly found in the basal cell layers of normal epithelium, what we see in HNSCC could represent a maintenance of a high expression level of p63 isoforms normally expressed in basal cells, rather than an up-regulation of certain p63 isoforms in the tumorigenic process [15].

In all HNSCC we have studied so far, an up-regulation of hTERT could be seen in most tumours, but without correlation to expression of a particular p63 isoform. No correlation could either be seen between quantitation of p63 isoforms and the percentage of Ki-67-positive cells, as a measure of the proliferative index of the tumour [15]. Nor did we find any correlation between any p63

isoform and p53 status. Taken together, these findings do not support a role for any of the p63 isoforms in the enhancement of proliferation, inactivation of wild-type p53 or extension of the cellular lifespan [15]. However, there is a noticeable correlation between p63 expression and differentiation in both normal epithelium and in tumours, suggesting that p63 has an important role in the development of squamous epithelia and in the degree of differentiation of HNSCC.

As with all science, these findings should not be considered in isolation, but must be taken in the broader context of the physiology of the oral mucosa, where multiple proteins act in concert to regulate proliferation and differentiation. One surprising result from the human genome mapping project is that there are fewer genes than had been thought, raising the question as to how a complex organism can be formed and maintained by the action of relatively few proteins. One part of the answer to this question is exemplified by p63: a single gene gives rise to multiple different proteins with different activities, and individual cells can express different isoforms and at different levels, giving in itself a high degree of flexibility. Furthermore, p63 can interact with p53 and also with a third member of the family, termed p73 [16]. The latter also undergoes extensive splicing to produce a series of proteins from a single gene (currently at least 10 proteins). Undoubtedly, it will be an extremely difficult and laborious process to identify the true roles of each of these proteins, but we are already able to draw some conclusions concerning their functions. Our data so far point to a primary role for p63 in regulating the differentiation status of epithelial cells. In the future, we need to further define the role of p63 in neoplasia and assess whether intervening in the expression of p63 can be therapeutically beneficial. We have previously mapped the p63 status of HNSCC cell lines and seen overrepresentation of chiefly ΔNp63α, in accordance with HNSCC tumours *in vivo* [14]. Some lines also express low levels of p63β, again mirroring the situation in primary tumours. As these cell lines were established from human squamous tumours, they provide a good model system for these types of studies into the roles of the various p63 isoforms in tumour development and growth. It is likely that the next few years will provide us with answers to many of the questions that remain unanswered concerning the role of p63 in normal and pathological conditions of the oral mucosa.

Acknowledgements

This project was supported by grants from the Lion's Cancer Research Foundation, Umeå University, the Swedish Cancer Society, grants No. 4569-B01–01XAB and 4569-B03–03XAB, the Swedish Dental Society and Swedish Research Council. P.J.C. is supported by the Leukaemia Research Fund, N.T. was part-time supported by a grant from NorFa.

References

1 MacFarlane GJ, Boyle P, Evstifeeva TV, Robertson C, Scully C: Rising trends of oral cancer mortality among males worldwide: The return of an old public health problem. Cancer Causes Control 1994;5:259–265.

2 Carter R: Pathology of squamous carcinomas of the head and neck. Current Opin Oncol 1992; 4:485–490.

3 Bockmühl U, Schlüns K, Küchler I, Petersen S, Petersen I: Genetic imbalances with impact on survival in head and neck patients. Am J Pathol 2000;157:369–375.

4 Schmale H, Bamberger C: A novel protein with strong homology to the tumor suppressor p53. Oncogene 1997;15:1363–1367.

5 Kaghad M, Bonnet H, Yang A, Creancier L, Biscan JC, Valent A, Minty A, Chalon P, Lelias JM, Dumont X, Ferrara P, McKeon F, Caput D: Monoallelically expressed gene related to p53 at 1p36, a region frequently deleted in neuroblastoma and other human cancers. Cell 1997;90:809–819.

6 Yang A, Kagdah M, Wang Y, Gillett E, Fleming MD, Dötsch V, Andrews NC, Caput D, McKeon F: p63, a p53 homolog at 3q27–29, encodes multiple products with transactivating, death-inducing, and dominant-negative activities. Mol Cell 1998*;*2:305–316.

7 Osada M, Ohba M, Kawahara C, Ishioka C, Kanamura R, et al: Cloning and functional analysis of human p51, which structurally and functionally resembles p53. Nat Med 1998;4:839–843.

8 Ghioni P, Bolognese F, Dujif PHG, van Bokhoven H, Mantovani R, Guerrini L: Complex transcriptional effects of p63 isoforms: Identification of novel activation and repression domains. Mol Cell Biol 2002;22:8659–8668.

9 Serber Z, Lai HC, Yang A, Ou HD, Sigal MS, Kelly AE, Darimont BD, Dujif PHG, van Bokhoven H, McKeon F, Dötsch V: A C-terminal inhibitory domain controls the activity of p63 by an intramolecular mechanism. Mol Cell Biol 2002;22:8601–8611.

10 Yang A, Schweitzer R, Sun D, Kaghad M, Walker N, Bronson RT, Tabin C, Sharpe A, Caput D, Crum C, McKeon F: p63 is essential for regenerative proliferation in limb, craniofacial and epithelial development. Nature 1999;398:714–718.

11 Mills AA, Zheng B, Wang XJ, Vogel H, Roop DR, Bradley A: *p63* is a *p53* homologue required for limb and epidermal morphogenesis. Nature 1999;398:708–713.

12 Hall PA, Campbell SJ, O'Neill M, Royston DJ, Nylander K, Carey FA, Kernohan NM: The expression of the p53 homologue, p63α and ΔNp63α in normal and neoplastic cells. Carcinogenesis 2000;21:153–160.

13 Nylander K, Coates PJ, Hall PA: Characterisation of the expression pattern of p63α and ΔNp63α in benign and malignant oral epithelial lesions. Int J Cancer 2000;87:368–372.

14 Nylander K, Vojtesek B, Nenutil R, Lindgren B, Roos G, Zhanxiang W, Sjöström B, Dahlqvist Å, Coates PJ: Differential expression of p63 isoforms in normal tissues and neoplastic cells. J Pathol 2002;198:417–427.

15 Thurfjell N, Coates PJ, Mahani D, Uusitalo T, Dabelsteen E, Dahlqvist Å, Sjöström B, Nylander K: Levels of different p63 isoforms in normal nonexposed and tobacco exposed oral mucosa and squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck. Int J Oncol 2004;25:27–35.

16 Flores ER, Tsai KY, Crowley D, Sengupta S, Yang A, McKeon F, Jacks T: p63 and p73 are required for p53-dependent apoptosis in response to DNA damage. Nature 2002;416:560–564.

Karin Nylander
Department of Medical Biosciences/Pathology, Umeå University
Building 6M, 2nd floor, SE–901 85 Umeå (Sweden)
Tel. +46 90 785 1591, Fax +46 90 785 2829, E-Mail karin.nylander@medbio.umu.se

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 58–71

p53, p63 and p73 Expression in Squamous Cell Carcinomas of the Head and Neck and Their Response to Cisplatin Exposure

Vera Balz, Kathrin Scheckenbach, Christian Gwosdz, Henning Bier

Department of Otorhinolaryngology/Head and Neck Surgery, Heinrich Heine University, Düsseldorf, Germany

Abstract

p63 and *p73* share significant structural and functional homologies with the tumour suppressor *p53*. Unlike the *p53* gene, both encode for several isoforms which vary in their NH_2 and COOH termini with variable and, in part, opposed biological functions. The objective of the present study was to analyse the expression profiles of p53 family members in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck (HNSCC) and their alterations caused by exposure to the clinically active drug cisplatin. Using multiplex RT-PCR combined with the Southern technique, we determined transcription of p53 family members in 10 established HNSCC cell lines. In the majority of HNSCC, p53 and different p63/p73 isoforms were expressed with cell-line-specific patterns for composition and intensity of transcript expression. Exposure to cisplatin caused multiple alterations in the p63 and p73 profiles suggesting a complex regulation which may influence the sensitivity to chemotherapy.

p53 plays a decisive role in counteracting tumorigenesis, and the majority of human cancers shows evidence for a profound impairment of normal p53 function [1]. In particular, it has been shown that the abrogation of p53 tumour suppressor activity appears to be a mandatory event in the development of squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck (HNSCC) [2]. p53 is activated in response to cellular stress, such as DNA damage or oncogene activation, and functions to inhibit cell proliferation by causing cell cycle arrest and apoptosis. Several observations have suggested the presence of homologs for *p53*, including the activation of *p53* targets independent of *p53* regulation [3]. Eventually,

two homologs of *p53*, *p63* and *p73*, were identified [4–7]. Both genes have remarkable structural similarity with *p53*, and they encode for a set of proteins exhibiting both p53-agonistic and p53-antagonistic functions as well as entirely novel properties. The major reason for this functional diversity lies in the gene architecture of *p63* and *p73* (fig. 1).

p53 produces a single protein, including transactivation, proline-rich, DNA-binding and oligomerization domains (TAD, PXXP, DBD and OD, respectively). In contrast, the products of *p63* and *p73* are much more complex and yield two functionally opposed protein classes via alternative promoters and exon splicing at the NH_2 terminus: p53-like proteins retain the TAD (TA isoforms), and p53-inhibitory proteins lack the TAD (ΔTA isoforms). Furthermore, p63 and p73 undergo extensive alternative COOH-terminal splicing, which results in 5 and 7 different variants, respectively. Some of the full-length TAD isoforms were described to support or even substitute p53 activity; they induce cell cycle arrest and apoptosis by activation of p53-dependent genes, at least when being overexpressed [6–10]. On the other hand, isoforms encoded by transcripts derived from the second promoter (ΔN isoforms) and alternative NH_2-terminal splice variants are believed to be transcriptionally inactive and to have a dominant-negative effect on p53 and its homologs by blocking their transactivation [9, 11–13]. Furthermore, apoptosis induced by DNA damage has been shown to require the cooperation of p53, p63 and p73 [14]. Therefore, these 3 family members are considered to play a significant role in both the multifactorial process of carcinogenesis and the response of cancers to antineoplastic measures (fig. 2).

In contrast to p53-deficient mice, which are highly tumour prone but lack developmental malfunction, p63- and p73-deficient mice bear specific developmental defects and a non-cancerous phenotype [9, 15, 16]. p63 null mice are born alive but display severe deformations of the limbs and cranium as well as altered epithelial tissues, including skin, breast, urothelia and prostate. p63 appears to be involved in the ordered differentiation of stratified epithelia, because basal cells strongly express ΔNp63 as most prominent isoform [9] and gradually lose it when they withdraw from the stem cell compartment [17]. In accordance with its role in the development and maintenance of epithelia, and consistent with its frequently amplified locus at the chromosomal region 3q27–29, p63 levels are significantly increased in squamous cell carcinomas [18–20]. In squamous cell carcinomas of the larynx, p63 protein expression was detected by immunohistochemistry in all 150 specimens analyzed [21]. Moreover, anti-apoptotic ΔNp63 is the isoform transcript mainly expressed in HNSCC, whereas TAp63 transcripts are frequently down-regulated [21, 22]. Loss of *p73* expression in p73 null mice leads to defects in neurogenesis, pheromonal signalling causing abnormal reproductive and social behaviour,

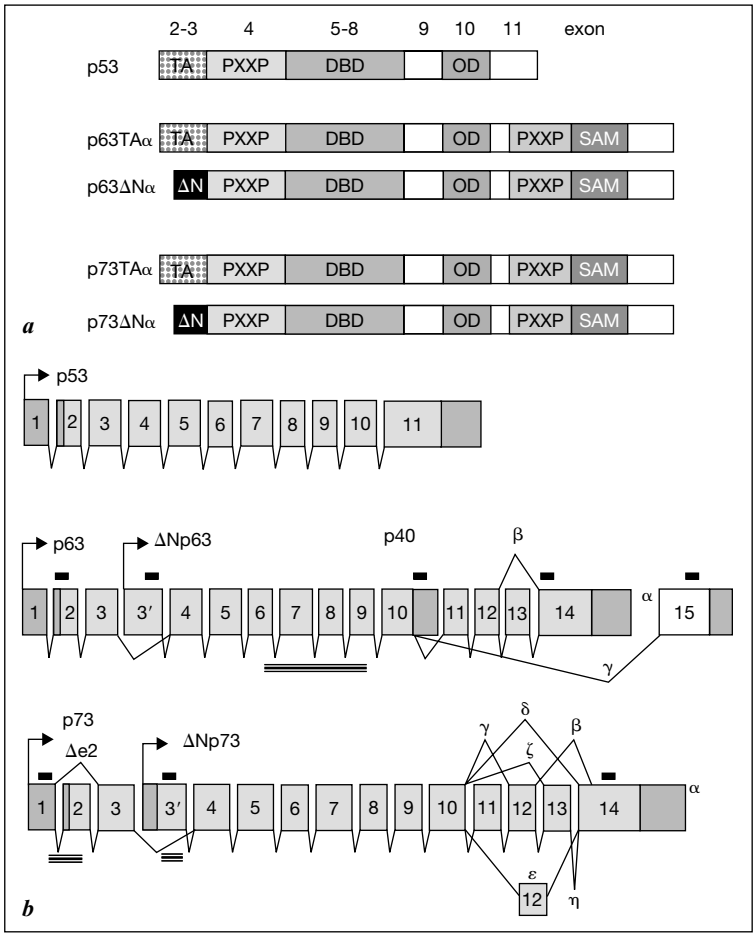


Fig. 1. Gene architecture and functional organization of the p53 family members. ***a*** In contrast to the single p53 protein comprising TAD, PXXP, DBD and OD, the p63 and p73 products are much more complex. Exemplarily shown are the α-isoforms of p63TA/ΔN and p73TA/ΔN, which additionally contain a PXXP and a sterile alpha motive (SAM) at the COOH terminus. ***b*** Genomic organization of *p53*, *p63* and *p73*. In comparison to *p53* – here a single promoter generates 1 transcript – both *p63* and *p73* feature 2 promoters. In addition, p63 and p73 undergo alternative splicing at the COOH terminus, giving rise to 5 and 7 different variants, respectively. In case of p73, there are additional splice variants lacking exon 2, exon 2 and 3, or inserting parts of exon 3′. The dark boxes show the 5′and 3′ untranslated regions. Black bars above the genes display the localization of primers used for multiplex RT-PCR, multiple lined bars beneath the genes indicate hybridization probes.

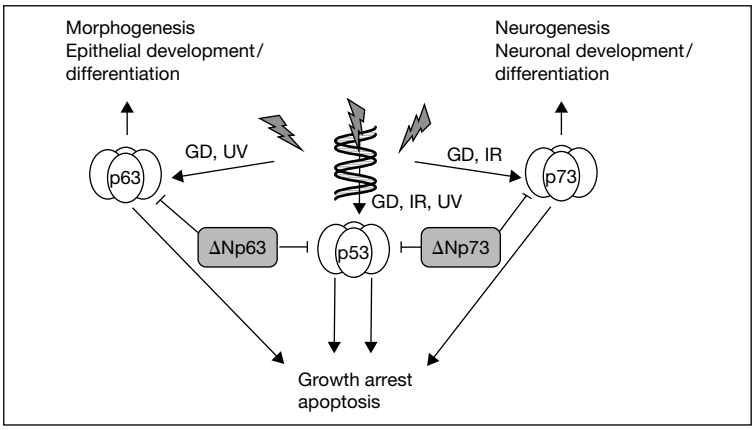


Fig. 2. Schematic p53 family pathways. Besides specific developmental and physiological functions, p63 and p73 participate in genomic guardian functions. Upon genotoxic stress by ultraviolet irradiation (UV), γ-irradiation (IR) or genotoxic drugs (GD), such as cisplatin, the two homologs interplay with p53 to induce growth arrest and apoptosis.

cerebrospinal fluid circulation and immunity of the respiratory mucosa [16]. ΔNp73 counteracts p53-mediated neuronal death and is mandatory for central nervous system development [11]. Like p63, p73 also plays a role in the differentiation of stratified epithelia. p73α was described to be necessary for the differentiation of stratified squamous epithelia and transitional epithelia [23].

Although p63 and p73 null mice do not spontaneously develop tumours, the network formed by the p53 family members is indicative of their likely impact on carcinogenesis. However, in contrast to *p53*, *p63* and *p73* lack a well-established tumour suppressor feature, i.e. the high frequency of inactivating mutations [24]. Rather overexpression of p73 has been described in hepatocellular [25], colorectal [26] and breast carcinoma [27], and this overexpression is supposed to be correlated with poor prognosis. In HNSCC, the observed patterns of p73 down-regulation and p53 inactivation support the concept of independent functions fulfilled by these two family members [28].

p53 serves as a molecular stress response device. This activity is characterized by the integration of signals emanating from a wide range of cellular insults and the response to these insults by activating a set of genes to induce protective and adaptive measures, e.g. cell cycle arrest, DNA repair and apoptosis (fig. 2). Upon genotoxic stress resulting in DNA damage, such as γ-irradiation, UV radiation and exposure to antineoplastic agents, p53 accumulates in the cell nucleus. This is mainly achieved by phosphorylation and thus stabilization of the p53 peptide. Interestingly, p73 is also activated by phosphorylation in

response to antitumour drugs and γ-irradiation (but not UV radiation) and is capable of triggering apoptosis [29–32]. Responses of p63 to DNA damage appear to be cell type and insult specific. UV radiation of human keratinocytes causes up-regulation of TAp63, whereas ΔNp63 isoforms are down-regulated [33]. The down-regulation of ΔNp63 parallels p53 stabilization, which in turn mediates apoptosis in keratinocytes damaged by UV radiation. On the other hand, expression of TAp63γ in mouse erythroleukaemia cells is stabilized after γ-irradiation, UV radiation or treatment with actinomycin D, and induces erythroid differentiation instead of apoptosis [9].

So far, well-defined integration of *p53*, *p63* and *p73* into a conclusive concept of the development and progression of the malignant phenotype remains notably complicated. As a major obstacle, oncogenic and tumour-suppressive activities of the various p63 and p73 isoforms are difficult to define as well as to distinguish. In order to improve our understanding of the multifunctional p53 family members, two issues should be addressed: the identification of predominant isoforms in normal and malignant tissue and the determination of altered isoform patterns after exposure to antineoplastic agents. The aim of the present study, therefore, was to characterize the expression of p53 family members in established cell lines of HNSCC before and after treatment with the clinically active antineoplastic agent cisplatin.

Methods

Cell Culture and Chemosensitivity Assay

The analysis included 10 cell lines established from HNSCC at the Universities of Düsseldorf, Germany (UD-SCC 1, 2, 7A and 7B), Ann Arbor, Mich., USA (UM-SCC 10B, 17A, 17B and 22B), and Turku, Finland (UT-SCC 9, 24B and 33). All cell lines were grown under standard culture conditions. The 50% inhibitory cisplatin concentration (IC_{50}) for each cell line was determined with the dimethylthiazol diphenyltetrazolium (MTT) test as described previously [34]. Briefly, on day 0, exponentially growing cells were harvested and plated at 6×10^3 cells/well in 96-well flat bottom microtitre plates. On day 3, cells were treated with cisplatin, and on day 6, MTT was added; the tetrazolium salt MTT is cleaved to formazan by the succinate-tetrazolium reductase system which belongs to the respiratory chain of the mitochondria. Colorimetric readouts at 570 nm reflect the number of metabolically active mitochondria in viable cells. This experimental procedure has been shown to produce a linear correlation between absorbance and number of live tumor cells [34, 35]. The IC_{50} was determined by logarithmic regression from 6-fold replicates in at least 3 independent experiments (table 1).

RT-PCR Analysis and Southern Blot

Total RNA was isolated from untreated cells and from cells exposed to cisplatin (IC_{50}/4 or 24 h) with the QIAshredder/RNeasy kit (Qiagen, Hilden, Germany), including on-column DNAse treatment. Three micrograms RNA were converted to cDNA using anchored oligo-dT

Table 1. p53 status and cisplatin sensitivity of HNSCC cell lines

Cell line	p53 status in transcript	Cisplatin sensitivity (IC_{50}) μM
UD-SCC 1	Wild type/AA25 Del 22 Nt	4.1
UD-SCC 2	Wild type	11.7
UD-SCC 7A	AA248 Arg → Leu	0.7
UD-SCC 7B	AA248 Arg → Leu	0.5
UM-SCC 10B	AA245 Gly → Cys	8.3
UM-SCC 17A	Wild type	8.3
UM-SCC 17B	Wild type	3.3
UT-SCC 9	Del exon 2–9	6.6
UT-SCC 24B	Wild type/AA225 Ins 48 Nt	5.7
UT-SCC 33	AA282 Arg → Trp	8.3

The p53 status was determined by sequence analysis of the entire coding region of p53 transcripts [44]. The colorimetric MTT assay was used to define the cisplatin IC_{50}. AA = Amino acid; Del = deletion; Ins = Insertion; Nt = nucleotide.

primers and reverse transcriptase (Sigma, Eggenstedt, Germany), and aliquots were subjected to semiquantitative RT-PCR analysis for p53. For analysis of p63 and p73, RT-PCR primers were designed to distinguish individual isoforms by amplificate length. For semi-quantitative analysis, we performed multiplex RT-PCRs to amplify all known isoforms in a single reaction. As control for cDNA quality as well as for normalization purposes, RT-PCR analysis for glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH) was performed. RT-PCR products were separated by gel electrophoresis and transferred to a nylon membrane (Applied Biosystems, Weiterstadt, Germany). Specific hybridization probes were synthesized by RT-PCR using the cDNA of cell line UD-SCC 7A, which expresses the isoforms of all p53 family members. Amplificates were labelled with alkaline phosphatase (AlkPhos labelling kit, Amersham, Freiburg, Germany), hybridized and visualized with CDP-Star (NEN, Cologne, Germany). Finally, size determination of the fragments and normalization to GAPDH expression was performed using a one-dimensional gel electrophoresis software (Aida Image Analyzer, Schwelm, Germany). This novel approach enables the simultaneous determination of all known p63 and p73 isoforms. The primers for RT-PCR reactions and generation of hybridization probes as well as RT-PCR conditions are listed in table 2. The localization of primers and hybridization probes is shown in figure 1.

Results

The sensitivity to cisplatin (IC_{50}) ranged between 0.5 and 11.7 μM, and this appeared to be independent of the p53 mutation status (table 1). The panel comprises 3 wild-type (UD-SCC 2, UM-SCC 17A and UM-SCC 17B) and

Table 2. Primer and PCR conditions for amplification of p53, p63, p73 and GAPDH transcripts and hybridization probes

Sense primer	Antisense primer	PCR conditions
p53 blot fragment		
p53 1-1: CCGGATCCGCGTGCTTTCCACGACG	p53 3-2: CGGAATTCCTGACGCACACCTATTGCAA	3 min 95 °C/5 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 70 °C, 70 s 72 °C)/5 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 64 °C, 70 s 72 °C)/15 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 66 °C, 70 s 72 °C)/5 min 72 °C
p53 hybridization probe		
p53 C1: CCGGATCCTTGCATTCTGGGACAGCCAA	p53 2-4: CGGAATTCTCAAAGCTGTTCCGTCCCAG	3 min 95 °C/35 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 66 °C, 45 s 72 °C)/5 min 72 °C
p63 blot fragments (multiplex RT-PCR)		
p63TAs: ATGTCCCAGAGCACACAG p63DNs: CAGACTCAATTTAGTGAG	p63αβas: CTCAGGGATTTTCAGACTTG p63γas: ACACTTGAGACCTTCGTTTC p63I10as: GAAAGAGGGTTGCCATACCA	3 min 95 °C/5 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 63 °C, 70 s 72 °C)/5 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 61 °C, 70 s 72 °C)/20 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 59 °C, 70 s 72 °C)/5 min 72°C
p63 hybridization probe		
Hybp63s: TTCGAGTAGAGGGGAACAGC	Hybp63as: CATCATCTGGGGATCTTCGT	3 min 95 °C/35 × (20 s 95 °C, 20 s 62 °C, 20 s 72 °C)/5 min 72 °C
p73 blot fragments (multiplex RT-PCR)		
p73TA3: ACGCAGCGAAACCGGGGC p73ΔN1: CCTCACTAGCTGCGGAGCCTCTC	p73as3: CTGCTGCGCGGTGCTGTAGTC	3 min 95 °C/5 × (30 s 95 °C, 70 s 72 °C)/5 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 70 °C, 70 s 72 °C)/26 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 68 °C, 70 s 72 °C)/5 min 72 °C
p73 hybridization probe (TA isoforms)		
Hybp73TAs: GCTGCGACGGCTGCAGAG	Hybp73TAas: AGAGAGCTCCAGAGGTGCTCAAAC	3 min 95 °C/35 × (20 s 95 °C, 20 s 57 °C, 20 s 72 °C)/5 min 72 °C

p73 hybridization probe (ΔN isoforms)		
Hybp73ΔNs: AAGCGAAAATGCCAACAAAC	Hybp73Δnas: CGACGTACAGCATGGTAG	3 min 95 °C/35 × (20 s 95 °C, 20 s 52 °C, 20 s 72 °C)/5 min 72 °C
p73 promoter analysis (multiplex RT-PCR)		
p73TAvars: GGACGGACGCCGATGCC p73ΔN1: CCTCACTAGCTGCGGAGCCTCTC	p73allas: GGAAAGTGACCTCAAAGTG	3 min 95 °C/29 × (15 s 95 °C, 15 s 56 °C, 45 s 72 °C)/7 min 72 °C
GAPDH blot fragment		
GAPDH Ges s: ACAGTCAGCCGCATCTTCTT	GAPDH Ges as: TTCCTCTTGTGCTCTTGCTG	3 min 95 °C/5 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 65 °C, 60 s 72 °C)/5 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 63 °C, 60 s 72 °C)/4 × (30 s 95 °C, 30 s 61 °C, 60 s 72 °C)/5 min 72 °C
GAPDH hybridization probe		
GAPDH-1: ACCACAGTCCATGCCATCAC	GAPDH-2: TCCACCACCCTGTTGCTGTA	3 min 95 °C/30 × (20 s 95 °C, 20 s 66 °C, 20 s 72 °C)/5 min 72 °C

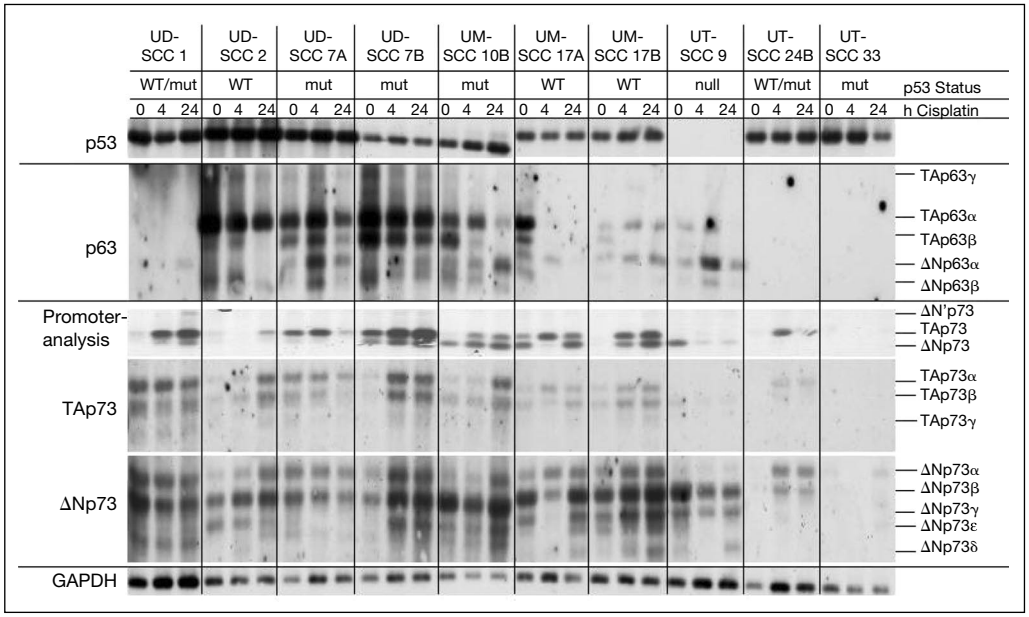


Fig. 3. Differential response of p53, p63 and p73 to cisplatin in 10 established cell lines of HNSCC. RNA was extracted from untreated cells (0 h) and cells exposed to cisplatin at the respective IC_{50} for 4 and 24 h. RT-PCR products of p53, p63 and p73 were separated in agarose gels, blotted on nylon membranes and hybridized with specific probes. While p53 and p63 expression was analysed using a single hybridization probe, analysis of p73 isoforms was subdivided into three steps: first, analysis of promoter activity and NH_2-terminal splice variants was performed with a multiplex RT-PCR covering the NH_2-terminal region of p73; second, a single multiplex RT-PCR produced amplification products which served for 2 identical nylon membranes; finally, the membranes were hybridized with TA-specific and ΔN-specific probes. RT-PCR amplificates for GAPDH served as loading control and for normalization purposes. WT = Wild-type p53 transcript; mut = mutated p53 transcript.

4 mutated cell lines (UD-SCC 7A, UD-SCC 7B, UM-SCC 10B and UT-SCC 33); 2 cell lines harbour mutated as well as wild-type p53 (UD-SCC 1 and UT-SCC 24B), and 1 cell line (UT-SCC 9) carries a homozygous deletion of p53 exons 2–9, resulting in loss of protein expression. Irrespective of the p53 status, the expression of p53 transcript was abundant except for the p53 null cell line UT-SCC 9 (fig. 3). Upon treatment with cisplatin, the levels of transcript remained unaffected in most cell lines. Normalization to GAPDH expression revealed minor up-regulation of p53 in cell lines expressing wild-type p53.

Expression of p63 was less uniform: 3 of the 10 HNSCC showed no p63 (UD-SCC 1, UT-SCC 24B and UT-SCC 33), and profiles of the remaining 7 cell lines showed considerable variations with regard to isoform composition

and intensity of expression. In most cases, the main isoforms were TAp63α and TAp63β (UD-SCC 2, UD-SCC 7A, UD-SCC 7B, UM-SCC 10B and UM-SCC 17A), whereas ΔNp63α and ΔNp63β were expressed to a much lesser extent. Cell lines UM-SCC 17B and UT-SCC 9 expressed only the α-isoforms of both TAp63 and ΔNp63.

Treatment with cisplatin (4 and 24 h) altered the expression levels but did not influence the characteristic isoform patterns in the majority of HNSCC. While expression of all isoforms was down-regulated after 4 h of exposure in UD-SCC 2, UD-SCC 7B, UM-SCC 10B and UM-SCC 17A, expression was initially up-regulated and subsequently down-regulated in UD-SCC 7A and UT-SCC 9. There was no correlation between p53 status and p63 expression; cell lines with mutated p53 behave quite differently with regard to p63 up- and down-regulation (e.g. UD-SCC 7A and UM-SCC 10B), and the same phenomenon was true for p53 wild-type HNSCC.

For p73, we determined the active promoters and NH_2-terminal splice variants prior to the analysis of alternative COOH-terminal isoforms. All cell lines with the exception of UT-SCC 33 expressed p73 transcripts. The majority of transcripts derived from TA- and ΔN-promoters encoding either full-length or ΔN isoforms. Only in 1 cell line (UD-SCC 1) ΔN′ transcripts were found, and neither Δexon 2 nor Δexon 2/3 transcripts were present. Closer analysis of transcripts derived from the TA promoter revealed expression of 2 major transcripts in most cell lines, TAp73α and TAp73β. In case of ΔN transcripts, the main isoforms were ΔNp73β and ΔNp73α. Occasionally, ΔNp73γ, ΔNp73δ and ΔNp73ε were also expressed.

Transcripts of both promoters were up-regulated by cisplatin in cell lines UD-SCC 1, UD-SCC 2, UD-SCC 7A, UD-SCC 7B, UM-SCC 10B and UM-SCC 17B, with a more pronounced effect for TA transcripts (UD-SCC 1, UD-SCC 7B and UM-SCC 17B). In UD-SCC 7A and UT-SCC 9, expression of p73 was down-regulated after cisplatin exposure. However, in cell lines showing either up- or down-regulation of p73 transcripts, the composition of COOH-terminal variants did not change. As for p63, the p53 status showed no correlation with p73 expression. Finally, the expression profiles of p63 and p73 appeared to be unrelated to cisplatin sensitivity and displayed independent drug responses.

Discussion

In order to define the complex expression pattern of p53, p63 and p73 in established cell lines of HNSCC, we performed an isoform-specific multiplex RT-PCR and identified resulting amplicons with the Southern technique. Regardless of the mutation status, p53 was found to be abundantly transcribed

in all cell lines but p53 null UT-SCC 9, and transcript levels remained more or less the same after exposure to cisplatin. This was to be expected, because drug-induced DNA damage causes activation and accumulation of p53 protein but not up-regulation of transcription [36].

Besides p53, various isoforms of p63 and p73 are constitutively expressed in these tumor cell lines. Coexistent expression of p63 and p73 in HNSCC was already demonstrated by immunohistochemistry employing pan-p63 and pan-73 antibodies [28, 37]. A more detailed RT-PCR analysis of p63 expression in carcinomas of the larynx looked for TA and ΔN transcripts: ΔNp63 mRNA was present in all 23 analysed specimens, and TAp63 transcripts were absent in 5 cases [21]. In the present tumour panel, 3 cell lines showed no detectable p63 expression, and 7 HNSCC exhibited considerable variations for both composition and intensity of p63 isoform expression. However, we generally found surplus TAp63, and TAp63α was the most prominent isoform in 5 HNSCC.

Sensitivity to cisplatin appeared to be independent of p63 expression. For example, UD-SCC 2 and UD-SCC 7B showed similar basal and stimulated expression patterns but differed substantially in their IC_{50} (11.7 vs. 0.5 μ*M*), and HNSCC lacking p63 expression featured average sensitivity (UD-SCC 1: 4.1 μ*M*, UT-SCC 24B: 5.7 μ*M*, and UT-SCC 33: 8.3 μ*M*). Studies in an immortalized mammary epithelial cell line revealed a dramatic decline in ΔNp63α transcript and protein upon cisplatin exposure, and this effect required p53 wild-type expression [38]. In our experimental system of HNSCC, drug exposure also affected p63 expression levels but neither altered the individual isoform pattern nor induced uniform up- or down-regulation. Moreover, we found no correlation with the p53 status.

Expression of p73 was regularly observed in HNSCC cell lines, although the level of expression was lower in comparison to p53 or p63, thus confirming earlier immunohistochemical studies in tumour specimens [28]. Several reports on p73 splice variants have shown that p73α and p73β are ubiquitously present in both normal tissues and cancers. The smaller splice variants, p73γ, δ, ε, ς and η, are expressed in some normal tissues and mostly derive from the TA promoter [39, 40]. They were reported to be up-regulated in ovarian cancer and haematopoietic malignancies [40, 41]. Our analysis showed the constitutive expression of α- and β-isoforms transcribed from both TA and ΔN promoters in the majority of HNSCC. Occasionally, ΔNp73γ and ΔNp73δ were present, though at lower levels. With regard to the NH_2 terminus, transcripts of TA and ΔN promoters were present in 9 of 10 cell lines; only 1 cell line also showed ΔN′ transcripts. Computer-assisted analysis of *p63* and *p73* promoters disclosed potential p53-binding sites in ΔN but not in TA promoter regions [42]. However, in reporter assays with exogenously expressed p53, only ΔNp73 was shown to be up-regulated by p53, whereas ΔNp63 transcription was repressed

[38, 42]. An up-regulation of ΔNp73 could indeed be demonstrated for cell lines UD-SCC 2 and UM-SCC 17B. In contrast, p53 wild-type UM-SCC 17A showed ΔNp73 down-regulation after 4 h and subsequent up-regulation, which may indicate a defect in p53 target activation. Transcripts of TAp73 promoters were up-regulated in most cell lines regardless of their p53 mutation status, suggesting a p53 independent response to cisplatin-induced DNA damage [30, 43]. As for p63, the individual p73 isoform composition was not markedly changed, and sensitivity to cisplatin did not appear to depend on the constitutive level of p73 expression.

In conclusion, we encountered a variety of expression patterns for the p53 family members p63 and p73 in a panel of 10 HNSCC cell lines. This may reflect a more or less stringent selection pressure for cancer cells to survive pro-apoptotic alterations during malignant transformation or is just the consequence of genetic instability. Exposure to the DNA-damaging agent cisplatin caused complex and difficult to interpret alterations of the p63 and p73 expression profiles. The differential and possibly independent regulation of the p53 family members suggests different biological roles as well as redundant pathways, which may be involved in the response of cancer cells to antineoplastic treatment.

Acknowledgements

We wish to thank Reidar Grénman (Turku, Finland) and Thomas E. Carey (Ann Arbor, Mich., USA) for providing UT-SCC and UM-SCC cell lines, and Kerstin Schirlau and Anke van Lierop for excellent technical assistance.

References

1 Vogelstein B, Lane D, Levine AJ: Surfing the p53 network. Nature 2000;408:307–310.
2 Balz V, Scheckenbach K, Götte K, Bockmühl U, Petersen I, Bier H: Is the inactivation frequency in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck underestimated? Analysis of p53 exons 2–11 and human papillomavirus 16/18 E6 transcripts in 123 unselected tumor specimens. Cancer Res 2003;63:1188–1191.
3 Weinberg WC, Azzoli CG, Chapman K, Levine AJ, Yuspa SH: p53-mediated transcriptional activity increases in differentiating epidermal keratinocytes in association with decreased p53 protein. Oncogene 1995;10:2271–2279.
4 Schmale H, Bamberger C: A novel protein with strong homology to the tumor suppressor p53. Oncogene 1997;15:1363–1367.
5 Osada M, Ohba M, Kawahara C, Ishioka C, Kanamaru R, Katoh I, Ikawa Y, Nimura Y, Nakagawara A, Obinata M, Ikawa S: Cloning and functional analysis of human p51, which structurally and functionally resembles p53. Nat Med 1998;4:839–843.
6 Yang A, Kaghad M, Wang Y, Gillett E, Fleming MD, Dotsch V, Andrews NC, Caput C, McKeon F: p63, a p53 homolog at 3q27–29, encodes multiple products with transactivating, death-inducing, and dominant-negative activities. Mol Cell 1998;2:305–316.

7 Kaghad M, Bonnet H, Yang A, Creancier L, Biscan JC, Valent A, Minty A, Chalon P, Lelias JM, Dumont X, Ferrara P, McKeon F, Caput D: Monoallelically expressed gene related to p53 at 1p36, a region frequently deleted in neuroblastoma and other cancers. Cell 1997;90:809–819.
8 Jost CA, Marin MC, Kaelin WG: p73 is a simian p53-related protein that can induce apoptosis. Nature 1997;389:191–194.
9 Yang A, Schweitzer R, Sun D, Kaghad M, Walker N, Bronson RT, Tabin C, Sharpe A, Caput S, Crum C, McKeon F: p63 is essential for regenerative proliferation in limb, craniofacial and epithelial development. Nature 1999;398:714–718.
10 Grob TJ, Fey MF, Tobler A: The two faces of p73. Cell Death Diff 2002;9:237–245.
11 Pozniak CD, Radinovic S, Yang A, McKeon F, Kaplan DR, Miller FD: An anti-apoptotic role for the p53 family member p73 during developmental neuron death. Science 2000;289:304–306.
12 Kartasheva NN, Contente A, Lenz-Stoppler C, Roth J, Dobbelstein M: Δp73 can modulate the expression of various genes in a p53-independent fashion. Oncogene 2002;21:4715–4727.
13 Zaika AI, Slade N, Erster SH, Sansome C, Joseph TW, Pearl M, Chals E, Moll UM: ΔNp73, a dominant-negative inhibitor of wild-type p53 and TAp73, is upregulated in human tumors. J Exp Med 2002;196:765–780.
14 Flores ER, Tsai KY, Crowley D, Sengupta S, Yang A, McKeon F, Jacks T: p63 and p73 are required for p53-dependent apoptosis in response to DNA damage. Nature 2002;416:560–564.
15 Mills AA, Zheng B, Wang XJ, Vogel H, Roop DR, Bradley A: p63 is a p53 homologue required for limb and epidermal morphogenesis. Nature 1999;398:708–713.
16 Yang A, Walker N, Bronson R, Kaghad M, Oosterwegel M, Bonnin J, Vagner C, Bonnet H, Dikkes P, Sharpe A, McKeon F, Caput D: p73-deficient mice have neurological, pheromonal and inflammatory defects but lack spontaneous tumours. Nature 2000;404:99–103.
17 Pellegrini G, Dellambra E, Golisano O, Martinelli E, Fantozzi I, Bondanza S, Ponzin D, McKeon F, De Luca M: p63 identifies keratinocyte stem cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2001;98:3156–3161.
18 Crook T, Nicholls JM, Brooks L, O'Nions J, Allday MJ: High level of expression of ΔNp63: A mechanism for the inactivation of p53 in undifferentiated nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC). Oncogene 2000;19:3439–3444.
19 Hibi K, Trink BMP, Westra WH, Caballero OL, Hill DE, Ratoviski EA, Jen J, Sidransky D: AIS is an oncogene amplified in squamous cell carcinomas. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 2000;97: 5462–5467.
20 Park JJ, Sun D, Quade BJ, Flynn C, Sheets EE, Tang A, McKeon F, Crum CP: Stratified mucin-producing intraepithelial lesions of the cervix: Adenosquamous or columnar cell neoplasia? Am J Surg Pathol 2000;24:1414–1419.
21 Pruneri G, Pignataro L, Manzotti M, Carboni N, Ronchetti D, Neri A, Cesana BM, Viale G: p63 in laryngeal squamous cell carcinomas: Evidence for a role of TA-p63 down-regulation in tumorigenesis and lack of prognostic implications of p63 immunoreactivity. Lab Invest 2002;82:1327–1334.
22 Nylander K, Coates PJ, Hall PA: Characterization of the expression pattern of p63α and ΔNp63α in benign and malignant oral epithelial lesions. Int J Cancer 2000;87:368–372.
23 Puig P, Capodieci P, Drobnjak M, Verbel D, Prives C, Cordon-Cardo C, Di Como C: p73 expression in human normal and tumor tissues: Loss of p73α expression is associated with tumor progression in bladder cancer. Clin Cancer Res 2003;9:5642–5651.
24 Stiewe T, Pützer BM: Role of p73 in malignancy: Tumor suppressor or oncogene? Cell Death Diff 2002;9:2226–2230.
25 Tannapfel A, Wasner M, Krause K, Geissler F, Katalinic A, Hauss J, Mossner J, Engeland K, Witteking C: Expression of p73 and its relation of histopathology and prognosis in hepatocellular carcinoma. J Natl Cancer Inst 1999;91:1154–1158.
26 Sun XF: p73 overexpression is a prognostic factor in patients with colorectal adenocarcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 2002;8:165–170.
27 Dominguez G, Silva JM, Silva J, Garcia JM, Sanchez A, Navarro A, Gallego I, Provencio M, Espana P, Bonilla F: Wild type p73 overexpression and high-grade malignancy in breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res 2001;66:183–190.
28 Faridoni-Laurens L, Bosq J, Janot F, Vayssade M, Le Bihan ML, Kaghad M, Caput D, Bénard J, Ahomadegbe JC: p73 expression in basal layers of head and neck squamous epithelium: A role in differentiation and carcinogenesis in concert with p53 and p63? Oncogene 2001;20:5302–5312.

29 Agami R, Blandino G, Oren M, Shaul Y: Interaction of c-Abl and p73alpha and their collaboration to induce apoptosis. Nature 1999;399:809–813.
30 Gong JG, Constanzo A, Yang HQ, Melino G, Kaelin WG, Levrero M, Wang JY: The tyrosine kinase c-Abl regulates p73 in apoptotic response to cisplatin-induced DNA damage. Nature 1999;399:806–809.
31 Yuan ZM, Shioya H, Ishiko T, Sun X, Gu J, Huang YY, Lu H, Kharbanda S, Weichselbaum R, Kufe D: p73 is regulated by tyrosine kinase c-abl in the apoptotic response to DNA damage. Nature 1999;399:814–817.
32 Gonzalez S, Prives C, Cordon-Cardo C: p73alpha regulation by chk1 in response to DNA-damage. Mol Cell Biol 2003;23:8161–8171.
33 Liefer KM, Koster MI, Wang XJ, Yang A, McKeon F, Roop DR: Down-regulation of p63 is required for epidermal UV-B-induced apoptosis. Cancer Res 2000;60:4016–4020.
34 Bier H, Hoffmann T, Eikelmann P, Hafner D: Chemosensitivity of head and neck squamous carcinoma cell lines is not primarily correlated with glutathione level but is modified by glutathione depletion. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 1996;122:653–658.
35 Hoffmann T, Hafner D, Balló H, Haas I, Bier H: Antitumor activity of anti-epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) monoclonal antibodies and cisplatin in ten human head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC) lines. Anticancer Res 1997;17:4419–4426.
36 Fritsche M, Haessler C, Brandner G: Induction of nuclear accumulation of the tumor-suppressor protein p53 by DNA-damaging agents. Oncogene 1993;8:307–318.
37 Choi H-G, Batsakis JG, Zhan F, Sturgis E, Luna MA, El-Naggar AK: Differential expression of p53 gene family members p63 and p73 in head and neck squamous tumorigenesis. Hum Pathol 2002;33:158–164.
38 Harmes DC, Bresnick E, Lubin EA, Watson JK, Heim KE, Curtin JC, Suskind AM, Lamb J, DiRenzo J: Positive and negative regulation of ΔN-p63 promoter activity by p53 and ΔN-p63α contributes to differential regulation of p53 target genes. Oncogene 2003;22:7607–7616.
39 Ishimoto O, Kawahara C, Enjo K, Obinata M, Nukiwa T, Ikawa S: Possible oncogenic potential of ΔNp73: A newly identified isoform of human p73. Cancer Res 2002;62:636–641.
40 Tschan MP, Grob TJ, Peters UR, De Laurenzi V, Huegli B, Kreuzer K-A, Schmidt CA, Melino G, Fey MF, Tobler A, Cajot J-F: Enhanced p73 expression during differentiation and complex p73 isoforms in myeloid leukemia. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 2000;277:62–65.
41 Zwahlen D, Tschan MP, Grob TJ, Peters UR, Fink D, Haenggi W, Altermatt HJ, Cajot J-F, Tobler A, Fey MF, Aebi S: Differential expression of p73 splice variants and protein in benign and malignant ovarian tumors. Int J Cancer 2000;88:66–70.
42 Waltermann A, Kartasheva NN, Dobbelstein M: Differential expression of p63 and p73 expression. Oncogene 2003;22:5686–5693.
43 Irwin MS, Kondo K, Marin MC, Cheng LS, Hahn WC, Kaelin WG: Chemosensitivity linked to p73 function. Cancer Cell 2003;3:403–410.
44 Hauser U, Balz V, Carey T, Grénman R, Scheckenbach K, Bier H: Reliable detection of p53 mutations in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck requires full length sequencing analysis. Head Neck 2002;24:868–873.

Vera Balz
Department of Otorhinolaryngology/Head and Neck Surgery
Heinrich Heine University Düsseldorf, Moorenstrasse 5, DE–40225 Düsseldorf (Germany)
Tel. +49 211 811 8687, Fax +49 211 811 9794, E-Mail balz@uni-duesseldorf.de

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 72–80

Expression of p16 Protein Is Associated with Human Papillomavirus Status in Tonsillar Carcinomas and Has Implications on Survival

Claus Wittekindt[a], *Elif Gültekin*[d], *Soenke J. Weissenborn*[b], *Hans P. Dienes*[c], *Herbert J. Pfister*[b], *Jens P. Klussmann*[a]

[a]Department of Oto-Rhino-Laryngology, Head and Neck Surgery, [b]Institute of Virology and [c]Department of Pathology, University of Cologne, Cologne, Germany; [d]Department of Oral Pathology, Faculty of Dentistry, Gazi University, Ankara, Turkey

Abstract

Our recent analysis of papillomavirus (HPV) DNA in different malignant head and neck tumors revealed that HPV infections occurred most frequently in tonsillar carcinomas (58%) and that 84% of positive cases contained the highly oncogenic HPV type 16. We could also present data in favor of the hypothesis that in view of their clinical behavior and the involved risk factors HPV-positive and HPV-negative tonsillar carcinomas may represent two separate tumor entities. Looking for a surrogate marker, which in further epidemiological studies could replace the laborious and expensive HPV detection/typing we analyzed p16 protein expression in 34 tonsillar carcinomas for their correlation with HPV status. p16 is an inhibitor of cyclin-dependent kinases 4 and 6 which activate the negative cell cycle regulator protein pRB which in turn downregulates p16 expression. It could be shown that in neoplastic cells of the cervix uteri E7 protein of the high-risk HPVs can interfere with this regulatory circuit by its virtue to inactivate pRB and thus lead to the overexpession of p16. We found 53% of the tested tonsillar carcinomas to be HPV positive. 56% of all tumors tested were immunohistochemically positive for the p16 protein. In 16 of 18 of the HPV-positive carcinomas diffuse p16 expression was observed. In contrast, only 1 of the HPV-negative carcinomas showed focal p16 staining ($p < 0.001$). Clinical outcome analysis revealed a significant correlation of p16 expression with increased disease-free survival ($p = 0.02$). These data indicate that p16 is a technically simple immunohistological marker, applicable for routine pathological histology, and its prognostic value for survival is fully equivalent to HPV DNA detection.

p16 is a cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor regulating the activity of CDK4 and CDK6. p16 is inactivated in many cancers by mutation, deletion or hypermethylation of the gene [1]. Loss of p16 protein leads to cell proliferation by indirectly suppressing hyperphosphorylation and functional inactivation of pRB [2, 3]. Cells with reduced or absent pRB proliferate even in the presence of very high levels of p16 [4]. In squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) of the cervix, mutations or homozygous deletions of p16 have been shown to be absent; however, immunohistochemical analysis revealed strong p16 overexpression in human-papillomavirus (HPV)-positive cervical carcinomas. Moreover, p16 was found to be a specific biomarker to identify dysplastic cervical keratinocytes in sections of cervical biopsy samples or cervical smears [5, 6]. These observations are in line with the hypothesis that the viral oncoprotein E7 blocks the RB protein [7].

For head and neck SCC (HNSCC), a high frequency of p16 inactivation has been reported. Abnormalities at the p16 gene locus on chromosome 9p21 were reported as early events in the development of HNSCC [8, 9]. Other reports favor transcriptional silencing of the p16 promoter by hypermethylation as dominant mechanism of inactivation of this tumor suppressor in HNSCC [10]. Loss of p16 expression determined by immunohistochemical analysis could be noted in 54% [11] to 82% [12] of the tumors and was associated with decreased survival [13].

Cancer of the oropharynx has emerged as the second type of mucosal neoplasia to be associated with HPV infection [14, 15]. We have recently reported on the prevalence of HPV DNA in a series of carefully stratified HNSCC [16]. These and prior results have shown that oncogenic HPVs (especially HPV-16) are present in about 20% of all HNSSCs and in nearly 60% of tonsillar cancers. We could demonstrate by laser-assisted microdissection and quantification of HPV-DNA that HPV DNA is consistently located in the tumor cells of tonsillar carcinomas and that HPV-16 loads are comparable to other HPV-associated SCCs [16]. First evaluations revealed the value to differentiate these tumors from the HPV-negative HNSCC as this has strong implications for prognosis [17] and risk factors [18]. It has been shown that the expression and function of cell cycle proteins in HPV-positive HNSCC is influenced by the HPV-related proteins [18–20]. There is accumulating evidence that HPV-positive tonsillar SCC may represent a separate tumor entity [21].

In the present study, we demonstrate the relationship between the expression of p16 and infection with HPV-16 in a series of tonsillar carcinomas. Moreover, our data suggest that p16/HPV-positive tumors have a favourable prognosis compared to the p16/HPV-negative cancers.

Materials and Methods

We investigated 34 patients with newly diagnosed SCC of the tonsils. Tumor specimens were obtained during surgery and were shock frozen in liquid nitrogen and stored at –80°C until further investigation. Tumor staging was performed according to the 2002 American Joint Committee on Cancer staging criteria [22]. After confirming integrity of DNA by β-globin gene PCR, HPV sequences were detected by nested PCR protocols with degenerate primers A10/A5-A6/A8 for group A (genital/mucosal) HPVs and CP62/70-CP65/69a for group B1 (cutaneous/EV) HPVs. PCR products were separated in 2% agarose gels and visualized by ethidium bromide staining. HPV typing was performed as previously described [16].

Five-micrometer sections of formalin-fixed and paraffin-embedded samples were dewaxed and rehydrated by a graded series of ethanol, followed by microwave treatment in 10 m*M* citrate buffer (pH 6.0). Endogenous peroxidase was inactivated by 3% H_2O_2 in phosphate-buffered saline (PBS, pH 7.4) for 10 min. After rinsing with PBS, nonspecific binding was blocked with 10% rabbit serum (Dako, Hamburg, Germany; 1:10 dilution) in PBS for 20 min. Sections were incubated at room temperature for 90 min with two different anti-p16 mouse monoclonal antibodies (16P04 and 16P07; NeoMarkers, Fremont, Calif., USA). After rinsing thoroughly with PBS, the slides were incubated with biotinylated goat antimouse antibody (Dako; 1:200 dilution) for 30 min. After washing with PBS, sections were incubated with avidin-biotin-peroxidase complex (Vectastain ABC Kit, Vector Laboratories, Burlingame, Calif., USA; 1:50) for 30 min. Visualization was performed with diaminobenzidine tetrahydrochloride (Vectastain ABC Kit, Vector Laboratories), and sections were counterstained with hematoxylin.

Strong nuclear staining as well as strong cytoplasmic staining were considered positive for p16 expression. Immunostaining was graded and scored on whole sections according to Klaes et al. [5] as follows: negative (<1% of the cells were positive), sporadic (isolated cells were positive, but <5%), focal (small cell clusters, but <25% of the cells were positive) and diffuse positive (>25% of the cells were stained). For survival analyses, immunoreacivity of more than 25% of the tumor cells were scored as p16 positive, less than 25% as p16 negative.

p16 and HPV status were analyzed using cross-tabulations and Fisher's exact test with the SPSS Base System, version 10.0.7 (SPSS, Chicago, Ill., USA). Disease-free survival and overall survival rates were estimated using the Kaplan-Meyer algorithm for incomplete observations. The disease-free survival was measured as the period of time between the date of diagnosis and the date of the last follow-up examination, where the patient was disease-free (censored) or the date of first recurrence independently if it was a local, regional or distant recurrence (uncensored). All patients were treated according to the same protocol and were included in disease-free survival analysis. The log rank test was used to test for differences between subgroups. All p values were considered statistically significant if less than or equal to 0.05.

Results

HPV sequences were detected in 18 out of 34 (53%) patients; 17/18 (94%) patients carried HPV-16 and 1 (6%) HPV-33 sequences. According to the criteria of Klaes et al. [5], 16/18 (89%) of the HPV-positive carcinomas showed diffuse p16 expression (table 1). In contrast, 15/16 (94%) of the HPV-negative cancers lacked any p16 immunoreactivity (table 1). The correlation of p16

Table 1. Distribution of p16 expression in relation to the HPV status

	Cases, n	Diffuse	Focal	Sporadic	Negative
HPV-positive	18	16 (89)	1 (6)	1 (6)	0 (0)
HPV-negative	16	0 (0)	1 (6)	0 (0)	15 (94)
Total	34	16 (47)	2 (6)	1 (3)	15 (44)

Figures in parentheses indicate percentages. Diffuse = More than 25% of the cells were stained; focal = less than 25% or small clusters were positive; sporadic = isolated cells, but less than 5% were positive; negative = less than 1% of the cells were positive, an overall percentage of more than 100 results from rounding.

expression and HPV status was highly significant ($p < 0.001$). Of the HPV-positive patients, 1 showed diffuse and 1 only sporadic p16 expression, respectively. However, these patients were shown to carry low amounts of viral DNA [19]. Notably, 1 single patient showed focal p16 expression, and no HPV DNA could be detected (table 1).

In sections graded as diffuse positive (table 1), p16 expression was seen in almost all neoplastic cells in the nuclei and also in the cytoplasm (fig. 1a). This pattern of p16 immunoreactivity could only be seen in neoplastic cells of HPV-positive tonsillar cancers. In general, surrounding stromal cells showed no p16 immunoreactivity. The pattern of p16 immunoreactivity of the HPV-positive tonsillar carcinomas was similar to that observed in HPV-positive cervical carcinomas, which were used as positive controls. In contrast, the HPV-negative tonsillar cancers showed by far no reactivity to p16 antibody (fig. 1b).

To determine the predictive value of the HPV status and p16 immunoreactivity for prognosis, we analyzed our 34 cases for disease-free survival. The median follow-up period was 33 months with a maximum of 57 months. The tumor stages of all cases in relation to HPV/p16 status and events are given in table 2. The distribution of tumor stages was similar between HPV/p16-positive and HPV/p16-negative cases. Nine of 34 (26%) of all patients died, and 15/34 patients (44%) had a tumor recurrence. Deaths were observed in equal proportions in the HPV/p16-positive and HPV/p16-negative groups. However, recurrences were observed significantly more frequently in HPV/p16-negative patients (3/16 patients) than in the HPV/p16-positive patients (10/16 patients; see table 2, $p = 0.028$, Fisher's exact test).

The 2 patients with HPV-positive/p16-negative tumors suffered from a tumor recurrence. Using the Kaplan-Meyer algorithm for the complete study sample, the 4-year disease-free survival was 33%. Using HPV/p16 positivity

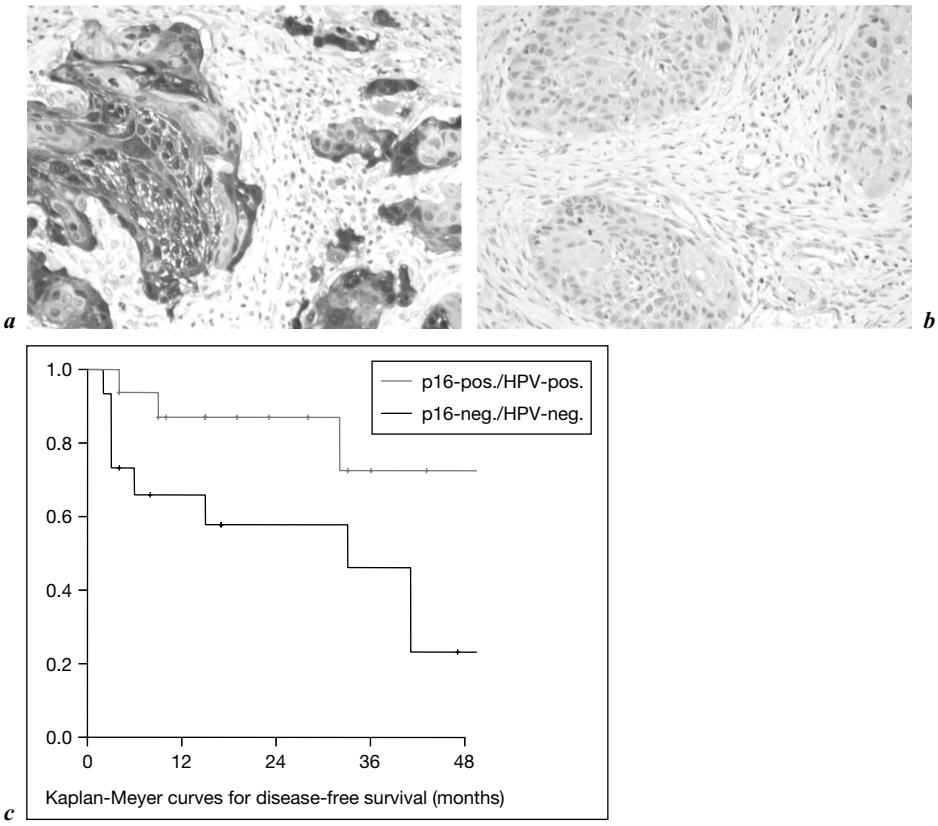


Fig. 1. ***a*** Immunohistochemical staining for p16. Positive staining for p16 is seen in nuclei and cytoplasm of tumor cells of an HPV-positive tonsillar carcinoma. ***b*** In an HPV-negative tonsillar carcinoma, all tumor cells are p16 negative. ***c*** Kaplan-Meyer curves for disease-free survival for p16-positive tonsillar carcinoma cases (gray) and p16-negative tonsillar carcinoma cases (black).

for stratification revealed a significant difference for disease-free survival curves between HPV/p16-positive and HPV/p16-negative patients (log rank test, $p = 0.02$, fig. 1c). The 4-year disease-free survival rates were 72% for HPV/p16-positive and 23% for HPV/p16-negative cases.

Discussion

The biological behavior and prognosis of HNSCC is very heterogeneous despite TMN staging [23]. Although many molecular predictors have been

Table 2. Tumor stage according to HPV/p16 status and events

Stage	HPV/p16-positive			HPV/p16-negative		
	total	R	D	total	R	D
	16 (100)	3/16 (19)	4/16 (25)	16 (100)	10/16 (63)	4/16 (25)
I	0 (0)	0	0	1 (6)	1	0
II	3 (19)	1	1	4 (25)	2	0
III	3 (19)	1	1	3 (19)	1	0
IVa	8 (50)	0	2	6 (38)	4	3
IVb	2 (13)	1	0	2 (13)	2	1

Figures in parentheses indicate percentages. R = Recurrence; D = deaths. There were no HPV-negative/p16-positive tumors. No patient had stage IVc disease. Immunoreactivity of more than 25% of the tumor cells was scored as p16 positive, less than 25% as p16 negative.

discussed to predict prognosis, no clear marker could be defined so far. Infection with oncogenic HPVs has recently been identified as risk factor for HNSCC [14, 16, 24, 25]. Patients with HPV-positive carcinomas tend to have significantly lower exposure to known risk factors for HNSCC [18]. Also serological studies have shown that HPV-16-seropositive subjects have an increased risk for the development of a tonsillar carcinoma [15, 26]. There is now increasing evidence that HPV-associated tonsillar carcinomas represent a different tumor entity [21], distinct from other HNSCCs in regard to risk factors and tumor biology [18]. Remarkably, improved survival of HPV-positive HNSCC patients has been shown [17], which might be the result of a higher tumor sensitivity to radiation therapy [27]. This is in accordance with the observation that HPV status and p53 mutations are inversely correlated [28, 29] since tumors with intact p53 are more susceptible to radiation-induced apoptosis [30].

For cancer of the cervix uteri it could be demonstrated that p16 is a specific biomarker to identify dysplastic cervical epithelia. These observations are in line with the hypothesis that the viral oncoprotein E7 blocks the RB protein [7] which leads to a loss of p16 inhibition by the RB protein. Using previously described grading criteria to evaluate p16 immunoreactivity [5] we were able to show a highly significant correlation of p16 and HPV DNA detection. Herewith we pointed out that p16 immunohistochemical staining of HNSCC may be used as a surrogate marker for HPV status also of carcinomas of tonsillar origin.

In this study, HPV/p16-positive tumors had a significantly lower recurrence rate than the HPV/p16-negative cases. In view of the rather small number of cases and the relatively short follow-up time, the true predictive power of

p16 immunostaining will have to be elucidated for larger cohorts of patients with a longer clinical follow-up.

In conclusion, p16 expression is highly correlated with HPV status in tonsillar cancers. p16 immunoreactivity is likely to result from transcriptionally active HPV infection, thus underlining the hypothesis that HPV-positive tonsillar carcinomas represent a biologically different tumor entity. The immunohistochemical detection of p16 expression might be a surrogate marker for transcriptionally active HPV infection. The analysis of tumor recurrence rates could depict a distinctly better prognosis for those patients showing p16 expression. If our results are confirmed in future studies, p16 could be a discriminator towards a better prognosis which will be easily applicable in routine pathology.

Acknowledgement

This work was supported by funding from the Jean Uhrmacher Foundation and from the Köln Fortune Program of the Faculty of Medicine, University of Cologne (No. 93/2001) to J.P.K.

References

1 Kamb A, Gruis NA, Weaver-Feldhaus J, Liu Q, Harshman K, Tavtigian SV, Stockert E, Day RS III, Johnson BE, Skolnick MH: A cell cycle regulator potentially involved in genesis of many tumor types. Science 1994;264:436–440.
2 Serrano M, Hannon GJ, Beach D: A new regulatory motif in cell-cycle control causing specific inhibition of cyclin D/CDK4. Nature 1993;366:704–707.
3 Nobori T, Miura K, Wu DJ, Lois A, Takabayashi K, Carson DA: Deletions of the cyclin-dependent kinase-4 inhibitor gene in multiple human cancers. Nature 1994;368:753–756.
4 Hara E, Smith R, Parry D, Tahara H, Stone S, Peters G: Regulation of p16CDKN2 expression and its implications for cell immortalization and senescence. Mol Cell Biol 1996;16:859–867.
5 Klaes R, Friedrich T, Spitkovsky D, Ridder R, Rudy W, Petry U, Dallenbach-Hellweg G, Schmidt D, von Knebel DM: Overexpression of p16(INK4A) as a specific marker for dysplastic and neoplastic epithelial cells of the cervix uteri. Int J Cancer 2001;92:276–284.
6 Sano T, Oyama T, Kashiwabara K, Fukuda T, Nakajima T: Immunohistochemical overexpression of p16 protein associated with intact retinoblastoma protein expression in cervical cancer and cervical intraepithelial neoplasia. Pathol Int 1998;48:580–585.
7 zur Hausen H: Papillomaviruses and cancer: From basic studies to clinical application. Nat Rev Cancer 2002;2:342–350.
8 Reed AL, Califano J, Cairns P, Westra WH, Jones RM, Koch W, Ahrendt S, Eby Y, Sewell D, Nawroz H, Bartek J, Sidransky D: High frequency of p16 (CDKN2/MTS-1/INK4A) inactivation in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Cancer Res 1996;56:3630–3633.
9 Poi MJ, Yen T, Li J, Song H, Lang JC, Schuller DE, Pearl DK, Casto BC, Tsai MD, Weghorst CM: Somatic INK4a-ARF locus mutations: A significant mechanism of gene inactivation in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck. Mol Carcinog 2001;30:26–36.
10 El Naggar AK, Lai S, Clayman G, Lee JK, Luna MA, Goepfert H, Batsakis JG: Methylation, a major mechanism of p16/CDKN2 gene inactivation in head and neck squamous carcinoma. Am J Pathol 1997;151:1767–1774.

11 Gruttgen A, Reichenzeller M, Junger M, Schlien S, Affolter A, Bosch FX: Detailed gene expression analysis but not microsatellite marker analysis of 9p21 reveals differential defects in the INK4a gene locus in the majority of head and neck cancers. J Pathol 2001;194:311–317.
12 Ambrosch P, Schlott T, Hilmes D, Ruschenburg I: p16 alterations and retinoblastoma protein expression in squamous cell carcinoma and neighboring dysplasia from the upper aerodigestive tract. Virchows Arch 2001;438:343–349.
13 Namazie A, Alavi S, Olopade OI, Pauletti G, Aghamohammadi N, Aghamohammadi M, Gornbein JA, Calcaterra TC, Slamon DJ, Wang MB, Srivatsan ES: Cyclin D_1 amplification and p16 (MTS1/CDK4I) deletion correlate with poor prognosis in head and neck tumors. Laryngoscope 2002; 112:472–481.
14 Gillison ML, Koch WM, Capone RB, Spafford M, Westra WH, Wu L, Zahurak ML, Daniel RW, Viglione M, Symer DE, Shah KV, Sidransky D: Evidence for a causal association between human papillomavirus and a subset of head and neck cancers. J Natl Cancer Inst 2000;92:709–720.
15 Mork J, Lie AK, Glattre E, Hallmans G, Jellum E, Koskela P, Moller B, Pukkala E, Schiller JT, Youngman L, Lehtinen M, Dillner J: Human papillomavirus infection as a risk factor for squamous-cell carcinoma of the head and neck. N Engl J Med 2001;344:1125–1131.
16 Klussmann JP, Weissenborn S, Wieland U, Dries V, Kolligs J, Jungehuelsing M, Eckel HE, Dienes HP, Pfister H, Fuchs P: Prevalence, distribution and viral load of human papillomavirus 16 DNA In tonsillar carcinomas. Cancer 2001;92:2875–2884.
17 Ritchie JM, Smith EM, Summersgill KF, Hoffman HT, Wang D, Klussmann JP, Turek LP, Haugen TH: Human papillomavirus infection as a prognostic factor in carcinomas of the oral cavity and oropharynx. Int J Cancer 2003;104:336–344.
18 Smith EM, Ritchie JM, Summersgill KF, Klussmann JP, Hoffman HT, Wang D, Haugen TH, Turek LP: Risks associated with human papillomavirus infection in oral cavity and oropharynx. Int J Cancer 2004;108:776–772.
19 Klussmann JP, Gultekin E, Weissenborn SJ, Wieland U, Dries V, Dienes HP, Eckel HE, Pfister HJ, Fuchs PG: Expression of p16 protein identifies a distinct entity of tonsillar carcinomas associated with human papillomavirus. Am J Pathol 2003;162:747–753.
20 Hafkamp HC, Speel EJ, Haesevoets A, Bot FJ, Dinjens WN, Ramaekers FC, Hopman AH, Manni JJ: A subset of head and neck squamous cell carcinomas exhibits integration of HPV 16/18 DNA and overexpression of p16INK4A and p53 in the absence of mutations in p53 exons 5–8. Int J Cancer 2003;107:394–400.
21 Klussmann JP, Weissenborn SJ, Wieland U, Dries V, Eckel HE, Pfister HJ, Fuchs PG: Human papillomavirus-positive tonsillar carcinomas: A different tumor entity? Med Microbiol Immunol (Berl) 2003;192:129–132.
22 Greene FL, Page DL, Fleming ID, Fritz AG, Blach CM, Haller DG, Morrow M: American Joint Committee on Cancer Staging Manual, ed 6. Berlin, Springer, 2002.
23 Forastiere A, Koch W, Trotti A, Sidransky D: Head and neck cancer. N Engl J Med 2001;345: 1890–1900.
24 Strome SE, Savva A, Brissett AE, Gostout BS, Lewis J, Clayton AC, McGovern R, Weaver AL, Persing D, Kasperbauer JL: Squamous cell carcinoma of the tonsils: A molecular analysis of HPV associations. Clin Cancer Res 2002;8:1093–1100.
25 Herrero R, Castellsague X, Pawlita M, Lissowska J, Kee F, Balaram P, Rajkumar T, Sridhar H, Rose B, Pintos J, Fernandez L, Idris A, Sanchez MJ, Nieto A, Talamini R, Tavani A, Bosch FX, Reidel U, Snijders PJ, Meijer CJ, Viscidi R, Munoz N, Franceschi S: Human papillomavirus and oral cancer: The International Agency for Research on Cancer multicenter study. J Natl Cancer Inst 2003;95:1772–1783.
26 Klussmann JP, Weissenborn S, Fuchs PG: Human papillomavirus infection as a risk factor for squamous-cell carcinoma of the head and neck. N Engl J Med 2001;345:376.
27 Lindel K, Beer KT, Laissue J, Greiner RH, Aebersold DM: Human papillomavirus positive squamous cell carcinoma of the oropharynx: A radiosensitive subgroup of head and neck carcinoma. Cancer 2001;92:805–813.
28 van Houten VM, Snijders PJ, van den Brekel MW, Kummer JA, Meijer CJ, van Leeuwen B, Denkers F, Smeele LE, Snow GB, Brakenhoff RH: Biological evidence that human papillomaviruses

are etiologically involved in a subgroup of head and neck squamous cell carcinomas. Int J Cancer 2001;93:232–235.
29 Balz V, Scheckenbach K, Gotte K, Bockmuhl U, Petersen I, Bier H: Is the p53 inactivation frequency in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck underestimated? Analysis of p53 exons 2–11 and human papillomavirus 16/18 E6 transcripts in 123 unselected tumor specimens. Cancer Res 2003;63:1188–1191.
30 Peltenburg LT: Radiosensitivity of tumor cells: Oncogenes and apoptosis. Q J Nucl Med 2000; 44:355–364.

Claus Wittekindt
Department of Oto-Rhino-Laryngology, Head and Neck Surgery
Joseph-Stelzmann-Strasse 9, DE–50924 Köln (Germany)
Tel. +49 221 478 4754, Fax +49 221 478 3581, E-Mail claus.Wittekindt@uni-koeln.de

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 81–91

EGFR-Antibody-Supplemented TPF Chemotherapy

Preclinical Investigations to a Novel Approach for Head and Neck Cancer Induction Treatment

Rainald Knecht[a], *Silke Peters*[a], *Markus Hambek*[a], *Christine Solbach*[b], *Mehran Baghi*[a], *Wolfgang Gstöttner*[a], *Markus Hambek*[a]

Departments of [a]Otorhinolaryngology and [b]Gynecology and Obstetrics, School of Medicine, J.W. Goethe University, Frankfurt, Germany

Abstract

Recent studies on polychemotherapy of head and neck cancer showed an improved remission rate on adding taxanes to the standard cytotoxic drugs cisplatin and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU). Moreover, for enhancing the response rate of chemotherapy today, a series of biological response modifiers are of interest, including modulators of the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR). Therefore we investigated whether the addition of monoclonal antibodies against the EGFR could enhance the response rate of cisplatin, 5-FU and docetaxel. Squamous cell cancer lines were transplanted into nude mice. After tumors had begun to grow, they were treated either with cisplatin, 5-FU or docetaxel alone or in combination with escalating doses of a humanized monoclonal anti-EGFR antibody.

Compared with controls, docetaxel alone as well as the combination of docetaxel, cisplatin and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) resulted in a significant tumor growth delay. The antibody alone also slowed down the tumor growth significantly at each concentration. Nevertheless, neither chemotherapy agents nor antibody alone yielded complete tumor remissions over an observation period of up to 6 weeks. Only the combination of cisplatin/5-FU/docetaxel (TPF) and the antibody resulted in highly significant complete tumor remissions. Therefore we can show for the first time that the effect of TPF, which is now used as novel phase II protocol for induction chemotherapy in head and neck cancer, could be

highly significantly enhanced by the addition of antibodies against epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR). Because we did not observe an increased toxicity in animal experiments, TPF/anti-EGFR therapy may define a new strategy in the induction treatment of head and neck carcinomas.

Patients with locally advanced squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (HNSCC) are usually treated by surgery and irradiation or by a combination of chemotherapy and radiotherapy. The latter therapeutic modality is especially used in patients with carcinoma of the larynx and hypopharynx who are treated for organ preservation. In this case, cisplatin/5-fluorouracil (PF)-based induction chemotherapy followed by radiation is highly active and can preserve the larynx in about 50% of patients and more [1].The original PF chemotherapy regimen results in major response rates of 69–90% and complete responses in the range of 20–50%. Recently published data show that the addition of taxanes to the PF regimen can raise the complete response up to 60% [2, 3]. More aggressive regimens adding leucovorin to the taxane/PF polychemotherapy result in a significantly higher toxicity [2]. Therefore physicians aspire to combine an effective and tolerable chemotherapy with a biological-response-modifying therapy with minor side effects.

Monoclonal antibodies against the EGFR have shown good tolerability in preclinical and clinical trials [4, 5]. However, as single agents they have not shown to date that effectiveness which we normally observe with standard therapies [6]. Therefore we combined, in a treatment protocol for nude mice, the most effective chemotherapeutic agents in head and neck cancer with EGFR antibodies. We wanted to elucidate if the additional application of the monoclonal antibody results in an altered tumor remission rate. Combining these therapies, we can demonstrate for the first time that the TPF combination with the anti-EGFR antibody EMD 72000 results not only in the normally observed tumor growth delay [4, 7], but in complete durable remissions. This may define a new strategy for induction chemotherapy of head and neck cancer.

Materials and Methods

Antibody

The murine antibody EMD 55900 and its humanized version EMD 72000 were generously provided by E. Merck KGaA (Darmstadt, Germany). The monoclonal antibody EMD 55900 was induced by immunization of BALB/c mice with cells of the human carcinoma cell line A431. Phase I clinical trials revealed that the immune systems of patients receiving EMD 55900 were inducing antibodies (human antimouse antibodies) against the drug because of its murine origin. For creating EMD 72000, mouse-complementary-determining regions were grafted from EMD 55900 into a human IgG1 framework. The monoclonal antibodies are highly specific for the human EGFR and recognize the deglycosylated region of

the EGFR Mr 110,000 EGF-binding domain, but not the other peptides of the EGFR. Binding of both antibodies correlates with the number of EGF-binding sites and is strongest with A431 carcinoma cell membranes. Scatchard's analyses of ^{125}I-labeled EMD 55900 binding to A431 membranes revealed the presence of 2 binding components: (a) a high-affinity, low-capacity component (K_d '10 p*M*, 5 3 108 sites/mg membrane protein) and (b) a relatively low-affinity, high-capacity component (K_d '1 n*M*, 2 3 1,010 sites/mg membrane protein). Plasma elimination half-lives of the murine (EMD 55900) and reshaped (EMD 72000) versions were similar: short in the *Cynomolgus* monkey (26 h for EMD 55900 and 31 h for EMD 72000) and long in rats (240 h for EMD 55900 and 225 h for EMD 72000). Biodistribution studies of ^{125}I-EMD 72000 in xenografted nude mice revealed a tumor:blood ratio of 1:2 on day 1 and 5:1 on day 18, respectively.

Chemotherapeutics

The chemotherapeutics were Taxotere (docetaxel) 20 mg (Aventis Pharma, Germany), Cisplatin 50 Hexal® PI and 5-FU Hexal 250 mg (Hexal AG, Germany). The dose of chemotherapeutics chosen for subcutaneous application in nude mice has been defined by the maximum tolerated dose (MTD) evaluated in prestudy investigations (docetaxel 20 mg/kg body weight, 5-FU 17 mg/kg body weight and cisplatin 6 mg/kg body weight).

Cell Lines, Culture Conditions, EGFR Western Blotting

The following cell lines were used for experiments: Detroit 562 (squamous cell carcinoma of the pharynx; American Type Culture Collection No. CRL-138), SCC 1623 (SCC of the tongue; American Type Culture Collection No. CRL-1623) and SCC 1624 (SCC of the tongue; American Type Culture Collection No. CRL-1624). The cell lines were cultured in Eagle's minimal essential medium (catalogue No. 4655, Sigma Aldrich). Cultures were maintained at 37 °C and 5% CO_2 in a humidified incubator.

Evaluation of the in vivo Antitumor Activity of Chemotherapeutics and Anti-EGFR Monoclonal Antibodies

For establishing cell lines as tumors on NMRI *nu/nu* mice (6–8 weeks of age), 2–3 × 10^7 cells of each cell line in 200 µl minimal essential medium were inoculated subcutaneously into both flanks of NMRI *nu/nu* mice (average body weight 25 g). After 7–14 days, when the tumors reached a size of 25 mm^2, the animals were randomly separated into 8 groups (10 animals per group) per experiment according to table 1.

Referring to the literature, dose escalation studies were undertaken for each chemotherapeutic drug to evaluate the LD_5/ED_{95} doses. Thereby the chemotherapeutic treatment schedule could be optimized to the MTD level. The dose for the antibody EMD 72000 was chosen according to our previous studies [7].

Treatment toxicity was evaluated by the number of animals who died during the observation period. Because with increasing tumor size animals in the control group die more and more from tumor burden, the experiments were closed on day 42 after treatment, and the animals were killed.

To determine the amount of proliferating cells in the transplanted tumors at the beginning of therapy, the Ki-67 index was determined in 2 tumors of each group by immunohistochemistry (Ki-67 antibody, catalogue No. 7187, Dako, diluted 1:25 in 5′ TBS buffer). In these tumors, also the EGFR content was measured by Western blotting to assure that EGFR density was not altered after transplantation.

Table 1. Treatment regimen of chemotherapeutics and EMD 72000 used in this investigation

After randomization	Treatment (i.p. on days 1 and 8)
Antibody dose 1	0.005 mg EMD 72000
Antibody dose 2	0.05 mg EMD 72000
Antibody dose 3	0.5 mg EMD 72000
Cisplatinum	6 mg/kg body weight
5-FU	17 mg/kg body weight
Docetaxel	20 mg/kg body weight
Antibody 1/CIS	0.005 mg EMD 72000 + 6 mg/kg body weight cisplatin
Antibody 2/CIS	0.05 mg EMD 72000 + 6 mg/kg body weight cisplatin
Antibody 3/CIS	0.5 mg EMD 72000 + 6 mg/kg body weight cisplatin
Antibody 1/5-FU	0.005 mg EMD 72000 + 17 mg/kg body weight 5-FU
Antibody 2/5-FU	0.05 mg EMD 72000 + 17 mg/kg body weight 5-FU
Antibody 3/5-FU	0.5 mg EMD 72000 + 17 mg/kg body weight 5-FU
Antibody 1/docetaxel	0.005 mg EMD 72000 + 2 mg/kg body weight
Antibody 2/docetaxel	0.05 mg EMD 72000 + 20 mg/kg body weight
Antibody 3/docetaxel	0.5 mg EMD 72000 + 20 mg/kg body weight
TPF	20 mg/kg body weight docetaxel + 6 mg/kg body weight cisplatin + 17 mg/kg body weight 5-FU
Antibody 1/TPF	0.005 mg EMD 72000 + TPF dose
Antibody 2/TPF	0.05 mg EMD 72000 + TPF dose
Antibody 3/TPF	0.5 mg EMD 72000 + TPF dose

All TPF drugs were administered subcutaneously.

The animals' condition and tumor development were registered daily according to a fixed schedule. Tumor sizes were measured with Vernier calipers as the product of the 2 longest right-angled diameters.

Statistics

Statistical analysis was performed using the SPSS 10.1 software. For statistical analysis, the Kruskal-Wallis test for *k*-independent samples as well as the Mann-Whitney U test were used because of nonparametric data; p values were considered to be significant at <0.05.

Results

EGFR Concentration of Tumors

EGFR concentrations of the cell lines were 115.6 fmol/mg (Detroit 562), 87.8 fmol/mg (SCC 1623) and 362.46 fmol/mg (SCC 1624). These concentrations are representative of HNSCC. After transplantation, measurements of EGFR concentrations in the developing tumors showed values within the normal variability of each cell line. Thus, transplantation did not alter the EGFR content of the tumors at the start of treatment.

Tumor Growth Rate at the Start of Treatment

At the start of treatment, tumors had a Ki-67 estimated median growth fraction of 69% with a range from 25 to 82%. But the majority were not in an exponential growth phase, which reflects the normal growth situation at treatment start in patients.

Tumor Growth Inhibition with EMD 72000 Is Dose Dependent

Dose escalation studies showed that tumor growth delay is dependent on the antibody concentration. Whereas a concentration of 0.005 mg/g body weight has only a slight, nonsignificant effect on tumor development, a concentration of 0.5 mg/g body weight leads to a highly significant growth delay. Tumor sizes of control versus treated groups 7 weeks after treatment were 300 and 50 mm^2 (fig. 1–3). Within this dose range we did not observe a treatment-related death quite in contrast to doses >1 mg antibody. Therefore we did not increase the antibody dose. These observations were made in all experiments.

Tumor Growth Inhibition by Chemotherapy Is Most Effective with a Combination of Docetaxel, Cisplatin and 5-FU

Monotherapy with docetaxel, cisplatin and 5-FU at the MTD did not yield a significant tumor growth retardation during the observation period of 7 weeks. In contrast, the combination of the drugs, TPF, led to a significant growth delay at the MTD (fig. 4). These results could be verified with all 3 transplanted cell lines. Moreover complete tumor eradication was only observed in the TPF-treated animals (fig. 5).

Antibody-Supplemented Polychemotherapy Results

When EMD 72000 treatment was combined with single chemotherapeutic agents, we observed, mainly at dose levels of 0.05 and 0.5 mg/g, a significant tumor growth retardation throughout, which is in the range of the EMD 72000 effect alone (fig. 1–3). In contrast, only EMD 72000 in combination with TPF polychemotherapy resulted in a significant additional growth inhibition up to a complete tumor eradication in the high-dose group (0.5 mg/g; fig. 4).

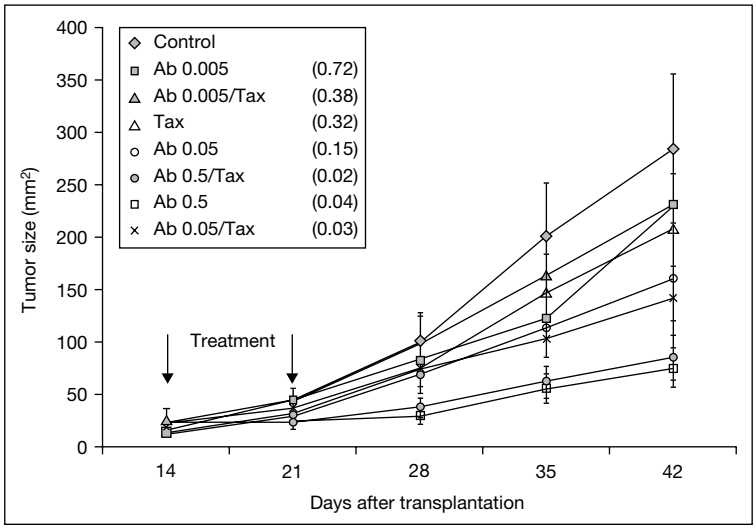


Fig. 1. The effect of EMD 72000 (Ab) in combination with docetaxel (Tax) on the growth of a human tumor xenograft (Detroit 562) with high EGFR concentration (300 fmol/mg). Tumors of 2 mm in diameter were transplanted subcutaneously into nude mice (n = 10/treatment group). Treatment was started when tumors reached a mean size of 25 mm^2. EMD 72000 was given intraperitoneally at 3 dose levels (0.5, 0.05, 0.005 mg). Docetaxel was given at an MTD level (see text). The figure shows tumor growth of each treatment group over 42 days after transplantation. The p values for differences between control and treatment groups are listed in parentheses. Control mice received the vehicle. The data represent the mean tumor size ± SE.

The effects of antibody-combined polychemotherapy in the tumors derived from different cell lines are illustrated in figure 5. It shows that a complete tumor response according to the WHO criteria was mainly observed in the EMD 72000/TPF treatment groups.

MTD Is Not Reduced when EMD 72000 Is Added to TPF

Comparing death rates of animals in the TPF group versus TPF/antibody group, we did not observe a significantly higher mortality in the latter. The death rate was at maximum 2 animals in each group.

Discussion

While surgery and/or radiotherapy remain cornerstones in the treatment of head and neck cancer, induction chemotherapy and chemoradiotherapy are now

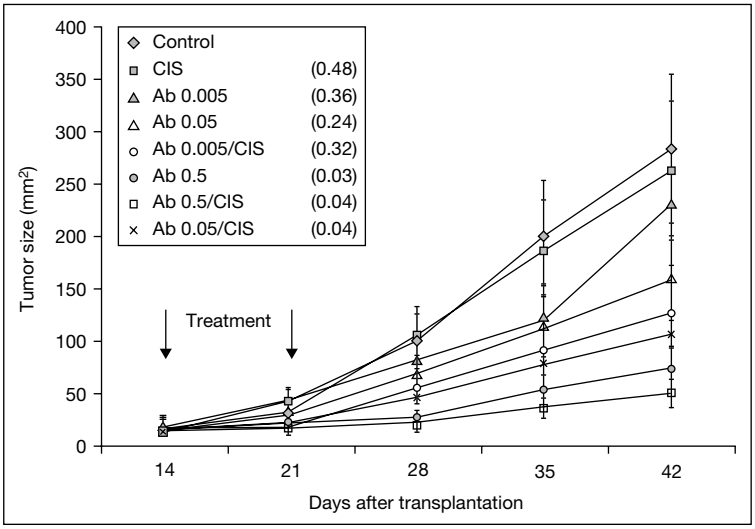


Fig. 2. The effect of EMD 72000 (Ab) in combination with cisplatin (CIS) on the growth of a human tumor xenograft (Detroit 562) with high EGFR concentration (300 fmol/mg). Tumors of 2 mm in diameter were transplanted subcutaneously into nude mice (n = 10/treatment group). Treatment was started when tumors reached a mean size of 25 mm^2. EMD 72000 was given intraperitoneally at 3 dose levels (0.5, 0.05, 0.005 mg). Cisplatin was given at an MTD level (see text). The figure shows tumor growth of each treatment group over 42 days after transplantation. The p values for differences between control and treatment groups are listed in parentheses. Control mice received the vehicle. The data represent the mean tumor size ± SE.

firmly integrated in the treatment plans. Induction chemotherapy is mainly used in organ preservation protocols for locally advanced HNSCC [8] normally followed by radiotherapy. Cisplatin and 5-FU (PF regimen) are the standard therapeutics for induction therapy yielding up to 40% complete and up to 85% overall responses in chemonaive advanced cancer [9]. Recently taxanes have been added to the cisplatin/5-FU regimen (TPF) in phase II protocols resulting in an improved rate of complete responses and overall response rates over 90% [10]. Regarding the excellent 3-year survival rates in combination with radiotherapy, some authors suggest that TPF-based regimens could lead to an improvement over PF regimens [2]. However, as with PF induction therapy, locoregional failure remains the major problem [11]. The need for further improvements in HNSCC care has stimulated intensive investigations into new agents with potential in induction chemotherapy and chemoradiotherapy regimens. New agents modifying EGFR signaling are of interest because EGFR plays a key role in the development of head and neck cancer and is overexpressed

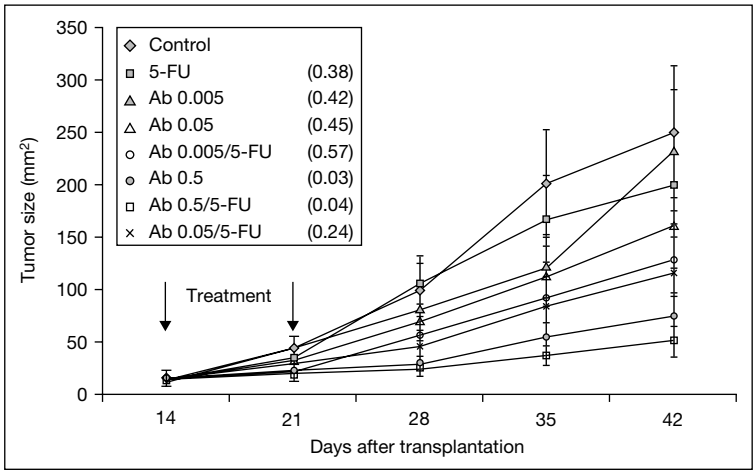


Fig. 3. The effect of EMD 72000 (Ab) in combination with 5-FU on the growth of a human tumor xenograft (Detroit 562) with high EGFR concentration (300 fmol/mg). Tumors of 2 mm in diameter were transplanted subcutaneously into nude mice (n = 10/treatment group). Treatment was started when tumors reached a mean size of 25 mm^2. EMD 72000 was given intraperitoneally at 3 dose levels (0.5, 0.05, 0.005 mg). 5-FU was given at an MTD level (see text). The figure shows tumor growth of each treatment group over 42 days after transplantation. The p values for differences between control and treatment groups are listed in parentheses. Control mice received the vehicle. The data represent the mean tumor size ± SE.

over a long time in the tumor evolution. There have been preclinical studies showing that targeting the overexpressed EGFR with monoclonal antibodies leads to a reduction of tumor growth in vivo [7, 12–17]. Moreover, a few phase I/II clinical studies in head and neck cancer have been completed or are under way, which demonstrate tumor remissions during anti-EGFR therapy [5, 18]. Because anti-EGFR treatment is thereby mostly conducted in the form of a second- or third-line therapy and not as part of an induction treatment protocol, the full potential in therapy-naive tumors cannot be evaluated. Moreover combinations of chemotherapy and anti-EGFR therapy in preclinical and clinical studies were mainly conducted with single-agent chemotherapeutics [19, 20]. Therefore the aim of our study was to combine a highly effective poly-chemotherapy with an EGFR antibody therapy in chemonaive tumors.

We chose cell lines with representative EGFR concentrations for head and neck cancer which are stable after transplantation. The doses of the chemotherapeutics and the monoclonal antibody were adapted to the tolerability observed in nude mice and cannot be transferred to the human system. Nevertheless, the

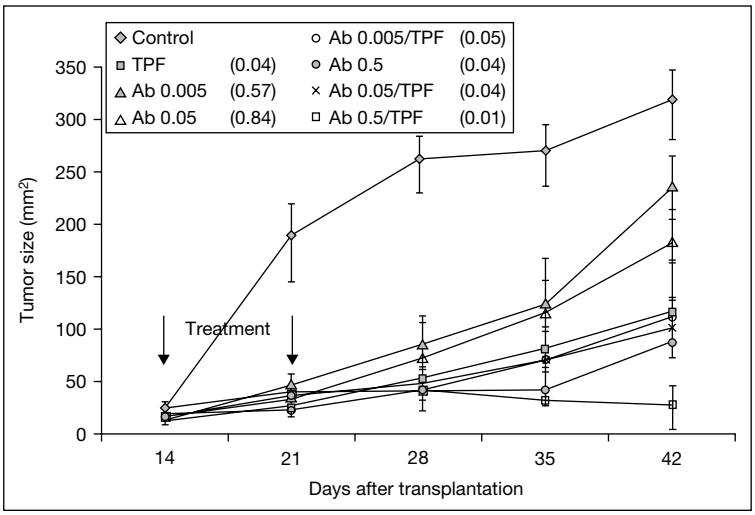


Fig. 4. The effect of treatment with EMD 72000 (Ab) added to chemotherapy (TPF) on the growth of a human tumor xenograft (Detroit 562) with high EGFR concentration (300 fmol/mg). Tumors of 2 mm in diameter were transplanted subcutaneously into nude mice (n = 10/treatment group). Treatment was started when tumors reached a mean size of 25 mm^2. EMD 72000 was given intraperitoneally at 3 dose levels (0.5, 0.05, 0.005 mg). TPF was given at an MTD level (see text). The figure shows tumor growth of each treatment group over 42 days after transplantation. The p values for differences between control and treatment groups are listed in parentheses. Control mice received the vehicle. The data represent the mean tumor size ± SE.

MTDs were given and distributed on a 2-day schedule (day 1 and day 8), which is more tolerable than a single-day schedule. In comparison with the human system, these schedules are the equivalent of one cycle of chemotherapy at the MTD level. We did not repeat the cycles during the observation period because the intention of the study was that of a proof of principle. Moreover, the sample (animals) size in each group must be greatly increased to repeat cycles because of the dropout rate of this species under repeated cytotoxic or cytostatic therapies. This choice of only one treatment cycle may be the reason for the seldom seen complete tumor eradication under single chemotherapy, polychemotherapy (TPF) or antibody therapy alone. But the combination of TPF polychemotherapy with the EMD 72000 antibody therapy clearly demonstrates that one treatment cycle can result in a complete tumor eradication in a large number of animals without a significant elevation of life-threatening toxicities. Translating these results to the human system, we therefore expect that the addition of EMD 72000 to the TPF schedule used in phase II studies further

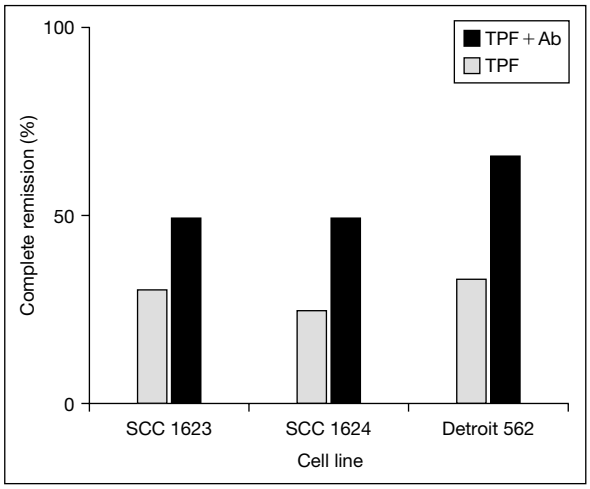


Fig. 5. The effect of additional treatment with EMD 72000 (Ab) on the response rate of 3 different human tumor xenografts with high EGFR concentration. Tumors of 2 mm in diameter were transplanted subcutaneously into nude mice (n = 10/treatment group). Treatment was started when tumors reached a mean size of 25 mm^2. EMD 72000 was given intraperitoneally at 3 dose levels (0.5, 0.05, 0.005 mg). TPF chemotherapy was given at an MTD level (see text). Control mice received the vehicle. The data represent percentages of mice having complete remissions.

enhances the high response rate in chemonaive tumors. For this reason, we propose this EGFR antibody-supplemented TPF polychemotherapy as the basis for the development of a new induction treatment protocol in head and neck cancer.

References

1 De Andres L, Brunet J, Lopez-Pousa A, et al: Randomized trial of neoadjuvant cisplatin and fluorouracil versus carboplatin and fluorouracil in patients with stage IV-M_0 head and neck cancer. J Clin Oncol 1995;13:1493–1500.

2 Haddad R, Tishler RB, Norris CM, Mahadevan A, Busse P, Wirth L, Goguen LA, Sullivan CA, Costello R, Case MA, Posner MR: Docetaxel, cisplatin, 5-fluorouracil (TPF)-based induction chemotherapy for head and neck cancer and the case for sequential, combined-modality treatment. Oncologist 2003;8:35–44.

3 Knecht R, Baghi M, Hambek M, Tesch H, Gstoettner W: Response rate and outcome of a novel induction chemotherapy regimen (TPF) in the first-line therapy of advanced head and neck carcinomas (SCCHN). Proc ASCO 2003;22:50.

4 Fan Z, Baselga J, Masui H, Mendelsohn J: Antitumor effect of anti-epidermal growth factor receptor monoclonal antibodies plus *cis*-diamminedichloroplatinum on well-established A431 cell xenografts. Cancer Res 1993;53:4637–4642.

5 Bier H, Hoffmann T, Hauser U, Wink M, Ochler M, Kovar A, Muser M, Knecht R: Clinical trial with escalating doses of the antiepidermal growth factor receptor humanized monoclonal antibody EMD 72000 in patients with advanced squamous cell carcinoma of the larynx and hypopharynx. Cancer Chemother Pharmacol 2001;47:519–524.
6 Ford AC, Grandis JR: Targeting epidermal growth factor receptor in head and neck cancer. Head Neck 2003;25:67–73.
7 Hambek M, Solbach C, Schnuerch HG, Roller M, Stegmueller M, Sterner-Kock A, Kiefer J, Knecht R: Tumor necrosis factor alpha sensitizes low epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR)-expressing carcinomas for anti-EGFR therapy. Cancer Res 2001;61:1045–1049.
8 Veterans Affairs Laryngeal Cancer Study Group: Induction chemotherapy plus radiation compared with surgery plus radiation in patients with advanced laryngeal cancer. N Engl J Med 1991;324:1685–1690.
9 Kraus DH, Pfister DG, Harrison LB, Shah JP, Spiro RH, Armstrong JG, Fass DE, Zelefsky M, Schantz SP, Weiss MH, et al: Larynx preservation with combined chemotherapy and radiation therapy in advanced hypopharynx cancer. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 1994;111:31–37.
10 Lefebvre JL, Chevalier D, Luboinski B, et al: Larynx preservation in pyriform sinus cancer: Preliminary results of a European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer phase III trial. J Natl Cancer Inst 1996;88:890–898.
11 Posner MR, Lefebvre JL: Docetaxel induction therapy in locally advanced squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. Br J Cancer 2003;88:11–17.
12 Schmiegel W, Schmielau J, Henne-Bruns D, Juhl H, Roeder C, Buggisch P, Onur A, Kremer B, Kalthoff H, Jensen EV: Cytokine-mediated enhancement of epidermal growth factor receptor expression provides an immunological approach to the therapy of pancreatic cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1997;94:12622–12626.
13 Yang X-D, Jia X-C, Corvalan JRF, Wang P, Davis CG, Jakabovits A: Eradication of established tumors by a fully human monoclonal antibody to the epidermal growth factor receptor without concomitant chemotherapy. Cancer Res 1999;59:1236–1243.
14 Baselga J, Norton L, Albanell J, Kim Y-M, Mendelsohn J: Recombinant humanized anti-HER2 antibody (Herceptin) enhances the antitumor activity of paclitaxel and doxorubicin against HER2/*neu* overexpressing human breast cancer xenografts. Cancer Res 1998;58:2825–2831.
15 Modjtahedi H, Affleck K, Stubberfield C, Dean C: EGFR blockade by tyrosine kinase inhibitor or monoclonal antibody inhibits growth, directs terminal differentiation and induces apoptosis in the human squamous cell carcinoma HN5. Int J Oncol 1998;13:335–342.
16 Modjtahedi H, Eccles SA, Box G, Styles J, Dean CJ: Antitumor activity of combinations of antibodies directed against different epitopes on the extracellular domain of the human EGFR receptor. Cell Biophys 1993;22:129–146.
17 Mujoo K, Donato NJ, Lapushin R, Rosenblum MG, Murray JL: Tumor necrosis factor α and γ-interferon enhancement of anti-epidermal growth factor receptor monoclonal antibody binding to human melanoma cells. J Immunother 1993;13:166–174.
18 Baselga J, Trigo JM, Bourhis J, Tortochaux J, Cortes-Funes H, Hitt R, Gascon P, Muesser M, Harstrick A, Eckardt A: Cetuximab (C225) plus cisplatin/carboplatin is active in patients with recurrent/metastatic squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (SCCHN) progressing on a same dose and schedule platinum-based regimen. Proc ASCO 2002;21:900.
19 Sirotnak FM, Zakowski MF, Miller VA, Scher HI, Kris MG: Efficacy of cytotoxic agents against human tumor xenografts is markedly enhanced by coadministration of ZD1839 (Iressa), an inhibitor of EGFR tyrosine kinase. Clin Cancer Res 2000;6:4885–4892.
20 Mendelsohn J: The epidermal growth factor receptor as a target for cancer therapy. Endocr Relat Cancer 2001;8:3–9.

Rainald Knecht, MD
ENT Center of the University Clinic
Theodor-Stern-Kai 7, DE–60590 Frankfurt/Main (Germany)
Tel. +49 69 6301 6788, Fax +49 69 6301 7710, E-Mail knecht@em.uni-frankfurt.de

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 92–102

Nuclear Factor-κB as a Common Target and Activator of Oncogenes in Head and Neck Squamous Cell Carcinoma

Angela A. Chang[a], *Carter Van Waes*[b]

[a]National Institutes of Health Clinical Research Training Program and [b]Head and Neck Surgery Branch, National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders, Bethesda, Md., USA

Abstract

Head and neck squamous cell carcinomas exhibit alterations in cell proliferation, survival (apoptosis), migration, angiogenesis and inflammation. The transcription factor nuclear factor-κB integrates multiple signals and regulates expression of multiple genes invovled in these phenotypic responses, suggesting the hypothesis that nuclear factor-κB is an important molecular switch for development of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Nuclear factor-κB has been found to be constitutively activated, and a common target and activator of oncogenes in cancer. Because of its important role, activation of nuclear factor-κB by the proteasome and other signal molecules may provide targets for molecular therapy of squamous cell carcinoma and other cancers.

Head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC) is the sixth most common cancer in the world and accounts for 90% of cancers arising in the upper aerodigestive tract. Approximately 363,000 new cases of oral and pharyngeal cancer are diagnosed annually worldwide, and almost 200,000 deaths occur each year [1]. Despite progress in refining surgical, radio- and chemotherapeutic approaches, long-term survival rates in patients with HNSCC have not improved over the past 25 years [2].

The transcription factor nuclear factor κB (NF-κB) is well recognized as a regulator of genes encoding cytokines, chemokines and cell adhesion molecules important in immune and inflammatory responses [3], as well as genes critical in the control of cellular proliferation and apoptosis [4]. Identification of multiple molecules related to NF-κB in HNSCC led to the discovery that NF-κB is a

common target and activator of oncogenes important in the development and progression of HNSCC. Activation of NF-κB has been associated with several aspects of oncogenesis, including the control of apoptosis, the cell cycle, differentiation and cell migration [4]. NF-κB activation in tumor cells by chemotherapy or radiation has been shown to blunt the ability of cancer therapy to induce cell death [5].

Understanding the molecular mechanisms involved in tumor development and progression has enabled the design of new biological approaches that may help diversify the standard treatments of cancer. Potential therapeutic agents are now being developed that target NF-κB and its downstream genes. Such agents include the proteasome inhibitor bortezomib (Velcade™; formerly PS-341), which is currently being studied in a phase I clinical trial for patients with recurrent and/or metastatic HNSCC.

NF-κB and Oncogenesis

NF-κB was originally identified as a nuclear factor that activated transcription of antibody κ-chain genes in B lymphocytes, but has since been found to be expressed in all cells, where it plays an essential role in coordinating cellular and host defenses. NF-κB was first implicated in oncogenesis when a retrovirus that causes avian lymphoid malignancies was found to encode a transforming NF-κB-related gene, designated v-Rel [6]. Aberrant activation of NF-κB has now been found in a variety of malignancies, including HNSCC [7], pancreatic cancer [8], colon cancer [9], breast cancer [10, 11], T cell leukemia [12] and Hodgkin's and B cell lymphomas [13, 14].

The common activation of NF-κB in cancer is likely to be related to its central role in integrating protective responses to molecular damage by injury and pathogens (fig. 1). The NF-κB family of transcription factors in mammalian cells is comprised of 5 members: p50/p105 (NF-κB1), p52/p100 (NF-κB2), c-Rel, c-RelB and p65 (RelA), which are assembled into homo- and heterodimers. The p50/p65 heterodimer has been found to play an important role in cellular responses. In normal cells, NF-κB complexes are chiefly cytoplasmic and are transcriptionally inactive until a cell receives an appropriate stimulus. NF-κB may be activated by the molecular signatures of a variety of pathogens, including bacterial lipopolysaccharides, fungi and viruses, and may be directly activated by genes encoded by Epstein-Barr virus and human immunodeficiency virus. It may also be activated as a result of damage to the cell or DNA by trauma, chemical toxins or radiation. In addition, NF-κB activation may be elicited adjacent or distant to the inciting injury by proinflammatory cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor α (TNF-α) and interleukin 1 (IL-1) as well as growth factors including epidermal growth factor (EGF).

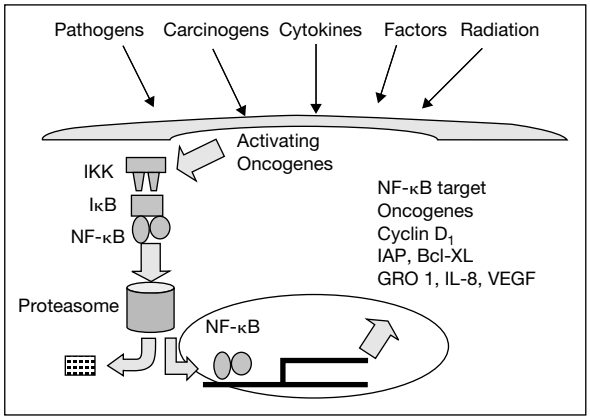


Fig. 1. NF-κB in response to injury and as a target and activator of oncogenes in cancer. NF-κB may be stimulated by pathogens, carcinogens and chemical toxins, cytokines, growth factors and radiation. It may be activated constitutively by stimulating oncogenes expressed in transformed cells. NF-κB activation results from signals involving inhibitor-κB kinase (IKK), which phosphorylates inhibitor-κB (IκB), marking it for ubiquitination and degradation by the proteasome. IκB degradation liberates NF-κB to localize to the nucleus, resulting in the transcription of a variety of target genes or oncogenes involved in proliferation (cyclin D_1), decreased cell death (IAP, Bcl-XL), inflammation and angiogenesis (GRO-1, IL-8, VEGF).

Among these stimuli, Epstein-Barr virus, IL-1 and EGF have been linked to the oncogenesis and activation of NF-κB in HNSCC [15–17]. Thus, a variety of viruses, chemicals, cytokines and growth factors are implicated in NF-κB activation and the development of HNSCC and other cancers.

The activation of NF-κB as classically described is illustrated in figure 1. The various signals converge on and activate the inhibitor-κB kinase (IKK) complex, consisting of IKKα, IKKβ, IKKγ and IKK-complex-associated protein. Inhibitor-κB (IκB), which binds with and inhibits NF-κB nuclear localization and DNA binding, is phosphorylated by IKK, thereby resulting in rapid ubiquitination and subsequent proteolysis by the 26S proteasome. Proteasome-dependent degradation of the IκB proteins results in the liberation of NF-κB and its accumulation in the nucleus where it binds DNA and activates the promoter of specific genes involved in cell growth control, apoptosis and immune and inflammatory responses.

NF-κB promotes the expression of over 150 target genes, the majority of which are involved in growth control, cell survival and resistance, and the host immune response [18] (table 1). It acts in cell cycle control, which is critical in determining the degree of cellular proliferation in response to injury or in

Table 1. Genes regulated by NF-κB

Category	Gene	Function
Cell cycle and apoptosis	*Cyclin* D_1 *IAP1* and *IAP2* *TRAF1* and *TRAF2* *Bcl-2* family *Bcl-2* *Bcl-XL* *Bfl-1/A1*	Cellular proliferation and apoptosis
Proinflammatory and proangiogenic cytokines and growth factors	*TNF-α* *IL-1*, *-2*, *-3*, *-6*, *-8*, *-12* *VEGF* *GRO-1*	Inflammation and angiogenesis
Adhesion molecules and proteases	*ICAM-1* *MMP* *Plasminogen activator* *Heparanase*	Cell adhesion and migration

VEGF = Vascular endothelial growth factor; GRO-1 = growth-regulated oncogene 1; ICAM-1 = intercellular adhesion molecule 1; MMP = matrix metalloproteinase.

carcinogenesis. NF-κB activates the expression of cyclin D_1 – a positive regulator of G_1-to-S phase progression, by directly binding to multiple sites in its promoter. Inhibitors of NF-κB activation decrease cyclin D_1 protein and subsequent phosphorylation of the retinoblastoma (Rb) protein, thereby resulting in delayed cell cycle progression [19]. Importantly, CGNDS D_1 is commonly overexpressed and plays a significant role as an oncogene in HNSCC, as well as other cancers [20].

NF-κB is also an essential regulator of genes involved in the control of cellular death (apoptosis), another important feature that is altered in HNSCC and other cancers. Antiapoptotic genes that are directly activated by NF-κB include the cellular inhibitors of apoptosis (*c-IAP1*, *c-IAP2*, *IXAP*), the TNF-receptor-associated factors (*TRAF1* and *TRAF2*), the *Bcl-2* homologues *A1*/*Bfl-1*, *IEX-IL* and *Bcl-XL*. *Bcl-XL* and *IAP1* have been shown to be expressed by human HNSCC and murine squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) [21, 22]. One of the best-studied mechanisms in which NF-κB can inhibit apoptosis involves NF-κB activation following TNF-α treatment in cells. Treatment with TNF-α induces NF-κB and *TRAF1*, *TRAF2*, *c-IAP1* and *c-IAP2* expression. Upregulating these proteins can protect NF-κB-deficient cells, which are highly sensitive to TNF-α-induced apoptosis, from cell death. These antiapoptotic proteins inhibit activation of caspase 8, an initiator protease involved in mediating apoptosis [23–26].

Moreover, NF-κB activity may provide additional selective benefits in locally advanced and metastatic tumors through expression of several NF-κB-dependent cytokines and angiogenic factors. Cytokines that are stimulated by NF-κB, such as IL-1β and TNF-α, can also directly activate the NF-κB pathway, thereby promoting a positive autoregulatory loop that can amplify NF-κB activation. Extensive angiogenesis, which ensures an adequate supply of nutrients and growth stimuli to tumor cells, is crucial to invasive tumors and metastases. Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), a dominant regulator of angiogenesis, is partially regulated by NF-κB [27]. Likewise, IL-8 and growth-regulated oncogene 1 (GRO-1), which promote angiogenesis and metastasis, are also regulated by NF-κB [28, 29].

Invasion and metastasis in advanced tumors are also promoted by NF-κB through the activation of matrix metalloproteinases, plasminogen activator and heparanase [30]. Additionally, NF-κB-induced secreted factors, including cytokines, may facilitate stimulation of prometastatic proteases in surrounding tumor stroma [31]. Adhesion molecules also mediate local and distant invasiveness and participate in transducing growth and proliferation signals. NF-κB controls numerous adhesion molecules, among them intercellular adhesion molecule 1, which is overexpressed in some tumors and linked with poor prognosis [32].

Role of NF-κB in Malignant Behavior and Gene Expression by HNSCC

HNSCCs have been noted to induce strong host inflammatory and angiogenic responses, which are important in tumorigenesis and metastasis. Investigation of the molecular factors expressed by SCC that promote inflammation and angiogenesis resulted in the identification of a repertoire of proinflammatory cytokines and angiogenic factors secreted and detected in the serum and tumor specimens of patients [33, 34]. These include the proinflammatory cytokines IL-1α, IL-6, IL-8 and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF) and proangiogenic cytokines VEGF and basic fibroblast growth factor. In a murine model of SCC, tumors which expressed IL-1α, IL-6, the IL-8 homologue GRO-1 and GM-CSF at increased levels exhibited more aggressive growth and metastasis in vivo [35, 36]. GRO-1 was shown to be an important factor in the promotion of tumor growth and the development of metastases in vivo [37]. A search for a common regulatory mechanism to explain the coexpression of these factors revealed that expression of several of these factors is regulated by NF-κB p50/p65 RelA [7].

The 5′ promoter regions of the *IL-1α*, *IL-6*, *IL-8*, *GRO-1* and *GM-CSF* genes expressed by HNSCC contain binding sites for the NF-κB family of transcription factors, and autonomous expression of these cytokines in HNSCC and murine SCC was found to correlate with constitutive activation of NF-κB p50/p65 [7, 38]. Blockade of NF-κB activation by transfection of phosphorylation and ubiquitination site mutants of IκB resulted in inhibition of cytokine expression and tumorigenesis [39].

In a murine SCC model that shows many similarities in behavior and expression of cytokines to human HNSCC, broader profiling of gene expression by microarray revealed that up to 40% of genes expressed with metastatic tumor progression are related to the NF-κB pathway [40]. These included the proliferative and antiapoptotic genes *cyclin* D_1 and *IAP1*, and angiogenic and inflammatory factors such as *GRO-1*.

Consistent with its role in cell survival, most HNSCC cells transfected with a dominant-negative inhibitor of NF-κB showed a 70–90% reduction in cell viability, providing evidence for the role of NF-κB in proliferation and antiapoptotic activity in HNSCC [39]. Constitutive NF-κB activity was also found to have influence on the sensitivity of HNSCC to TNF-α and radioresistance of HNSCC cell lines. TNF-α resistance of HNSCC cell lines was attenuated by NF-κB inhibition [39], and radiation resistance of in vitro HNSCC cell lines correlated with increased constitutive activation of NF-κB [41]. Moreover, HNSCC could be sensitized to radiation by the dominant-negative inhibitor of NF-κB [41]. Didelot et al. [42] also showed that inhibition of NF-κB activity by dexamethasone led to a significant increase in radiosensitivity in HNSCC cell lines. These results provide evidence that NF-κB may be an important target for therapy of HNSCC.

Although the exact mechanism by which HNSCC cells acquire constitutive NF-κB activity has yet to be completely delineated, autocrine expression of IL-1 and EGF receptor have been shown to contribute to activation of NF-κB in HNSCC [16, 17]. Several laboratories have also reported that SCC of the oral cavity express higher levels of the NF-κB p65 subunit and its upstream kinase IKKα when compared to that of normal squamous epithelia and epithelial dysplasia [43, 44]. Moreover, the invasiveness and metastasis of SCC were observed to correlate with the degree of immunohistochemical staining of these molecules, suggesting that high expression of NF-κB and IKKα may contribute to the malignant behavior and antiapoptotic activity of SCC [43]. Others have also shown that HNSCC cell lines have significantly higher NF-κB binding activity and IKK activity compared to normal oral epithelial and salivary gland cells, implying that enhanced NF-κB activity could be a result of increased IKK activity [44]. As a result of their central role in NF-κB activation, the proteasome and IKK complex have been initial targets of drug discovery efforts for therapeutics directed at NF-κB in cancer and inflammation.

NF-κB as a Therapeutic Target in Cancer and HNSCC

The breadth of NF-κB activity has led to intense interest in the potential role of NF-κB in tumorigenesis, metastasis, drug and radiation resistance, and as a therapeutic target. The activation of NF-κB can lead to resistance to cell death ordinarily induced by radiation and a variety of chemotherapeutic agents. Increased understanding of the mechanism of NF-κB activation has led to several trials using gene therapy, peptides, small molecules and proteasome inhibitors. Several antioxidants, natural products, salicylates and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs have been shown to inhibit NF-κB [45].

One approach to blocking NF-κB activation is through proteasome inhibition. Proteasome inhibitors are known to inhibit degradation of IκB, halt cell cycle progression and induce apoptosis. In addition to its effects on NF-κB, these inhibitors are also likely to exert additional effects via stabilizing cell-cycle-inhibitory proteins like cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors and p53 [46]. The proteasome inhibitor bortezomib is a novel dipeptide boronic acid small molecule that has shown antitumor activity in preclinical studies and is the first such agent to have progressed to clinical trials. In a study of HNSCC, bortezomib inhibited the activation of NF-κB DNA binding and functional reporter activity at concentrations between 10^{-8} and 10^{-7} *M* in vitro. Bortezomib inhibited tumor growth of murine SCC and human HNSCC xenografts in mice at doses of 1–2 mg/kg administered 3 times per week for 25 days. Bortezomib also exhibited antiangiogenic properties: tumor growth inhibition was correlated with decreased blood vessel density, and the proangiogenic cytokines GRO-1 and VEGF were decreased in a dose-dependent manner [47]. Moreover, exposure to bortezomib can induce cytotoxicity and further sensitize HNSCC to cytotoxic effects of radiation in vitro in association with cell cycle block in the G_2/M phase and inhibition of the NF-κB prosurvival pathway [48]. Based on these cytotoxic, antiangiogenic and radiation-sensitizing activities, there is currently a phase I trial under way using bortezomib with concurrent radiation therapy in patients with recurrent and/or metastatic HNSCC.

Conclusion

NF-κB is an extensively studied transcription factor shown to be constitutively activated in HNSCC. Traditional therapies for advanced HNSCC currently include surgery, radiation and combined chemoradiotherapy, with little improvement in the outcome over the last few decades. Emerging evidence

demonstrates that inhibition of the NF-κB pathway and its downstream gene expression may offer new therapeutic options. In addition, inhibitors of NF-κB may be synergistic with chemotherapy and/or radiation. As NF-κB inhibition significantly increases cancer cell death in response to cytotoxic drugs and radiation, this may allow for a reduction in the current recommended dosages, thus potentially providing for more effective, less toxic therapies. Further, the ability to suppress NF-κB activity could render tumors sensitive to nontoxic agents, leading to the development and use of new drugs against cancer. Additional studies are required to determine the role of NF-κB targeting in the treatment of HNSCC. Finally, a better understanding of the regulation of the NF-κB signaling pathway may provide opportunities for the development of new chemopreventive approaches to inhibit prolonged activation of this pathway.

Acknowledgement

This work was supported by the NIDCD intramural research project Z01–DC–00016.

References

1 Parkin DM, Pisani P, Ferlay J: Global cancer statistics. CA Cancer J Clin 1999;49:33–64.
2 Jemal A, Murray T, Samuels A, Ghafoor A, Ward E, Thun MJ: Cancer statistics, 2003. CA Cancer J Clin 2003;53:5–26.
3 Ghosh S, May M, Kopp E: NF-κB and Rel proteins: Evolutionarily conserved mediators of immune response. Annu Rev Immunol 1998;16:225–260.
4 Wang CY, Mayo MW, Korneluk RG, Goeddel DV, Baldwin AS Jr: NF-kappaB antiapoptosis: Induction of TRAF1 and TRAF2 and c-IAP1 and c-IAP2 to suppress caspase-8 activation. Science 1998;281:1680–1683.
5 Wang CY, Cusack JC Jr, Liu R, Baldwin AS Jr: Control of inducible chemoresistance: Enhanced anti-tumor therapy through increased apoptosis by inhibition of NF-kappaB. Nat Med 1999;5:412–417.
6 Gilmore TD, Koedood M, Piffat KA, White DW: Rel/NF-kappaB/IkappaB proteins and cancer. Oncogene 1996;13:1367–1378.
7 Ondrey FG, Dong G, Sunwoo J, Chen Z, Wolf JS, Crowl-Bancroft CV, Mukaida N, Van Waes C: Constitutive activation of transcription factors NF-(kappa)B, AP-1, and NF-IL6 in human head and neck squamous cell carcinoma cell lines that express pro-inflammatory and pro-angiogenic cytokines. Mol Carcinog 1999;26:119–129.
8 Wang W, Abbruzzese JL, Evans DB, Larry L, Cleary KR, Chiao PJ: The nuclear factor-kappa B RelA transcription factor is constitutively activated in human pancreatic adenocarcinoma cells. Clin Cancer Res 1999;5:119–127.
9 Bours V, Dejardin E, Goujon-Letawe F, Merville MP, Castronovo V: The NF-kappa B transcription factor and cancer: High expression of NF-kappa B- and I kappa B-related proteins in tumor cell lines. Biochem Pharmacol 1994;47:145–149.
10 Nakshatri H, Bhat-Nakshatri P, Martin DA, Goulet RJ Jr, Sledge GW Jr: Constitutive activation of NF-kappaB during progression of breast cancer to hormone-independent growth. Mol Cell Biol 1997;17:3629–3639.

11 Sovak MA, Bellas RE, Kim DW, Zanieski GJ, Rogers AE, Traish AM, Sonenshein GE: Aberrant nuclear factor-kappaB/Rel expression and the pathogenesis of breast cancer. J Clin Invest 1997; 100:2952–2960.
12 Mori N, Fujii M, Ikeda S, Yamada Y, Tomonaga M, Ballard DW, Yamamoto N: Constitutive activation of NF-kappaB in primary adult T-cell leukemia cells. Blood 1999;93:2360–2368.
13 Bargou RC, Emmerich F, Krappmann D, Bommert K, Mapara MY, Arnold W, Royer HD, Grinstein E, Greiner A, Scheidereit C, Dorken B: Constitutive nuclear factor-kappaB-RelA activation is required for proliferation and survival of Hodgkin's disease tumor cells. J Clin Invest 1997;100:2961–2969.
14 Davis RE, Brown KD, Siebenlist U, Staudt LM: Constitutive nuclear factor kappaB activity is required for survival of activated B cell-like diffuse large B cell lymphoma cells. J Exp Med 2001; 194:1861–1874.
15 Yoshizaki T, Horikawa T, Qing-Chun R, Wakisaka N, Takeshita H, Sheen TS, Lee SY, Sato H, Furukawa M: Induction of interleukin-8 by Epstein-Barr virus latent membrane protein-1 and its correlation to angiogenesis in nasopharyngeal carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 2001;7:1946–1951.
16 Wolf JS, Chen Z, Dong G, Sunwoo JB, Bancroft CC, Capo DE, Yeh NT, Mukaida N, Van Waes C: IL (interleukin)-1alpha promotes nuclear factor-kappaB and AP-1-induced IL-8 expression, cell survival, and proliferation in head and neck squamous cell carcinomas. Clin Cancer Res 2001; 7:1812–1820.
17 Bancroft CC, Chen Z, Yeh J, Sunwoo JB, Yeh NT, Jackson S, Jackson C, Van Waes C: Effects of pharmacologic antagonists of epidermal growth factor receptor, PI3K and MEK signal kinases on NF-kappaB and AP-1 activation and IL-8 and VEGF expression in human head and neck squamous cell carcinoma lines. Int J Cancer 2002;99:538–548.
18 Pahl HL: Activators and target genes of Rel/NF-kappaB transcription factors. Oncogene 1999; 18:6853–6866.
19 Guttridge DC, Albanese C, Reuther JY, Pestell RG, Baldwin AS Jr: NF-kappaB controls cell growth and differentiation through transcriptional regulation of cyclin D_1. Mol Cell Biol 1999; 19:5785–5799.
20 Nakashima T, Clayman GL: Antisense inhibition of cyclin D_1 in human head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 2000;126:957–961.
21 Dong G, Loukinova E, Chen Z, Gangi L, Chanturita TI, Liu ET, Van Waes C: Molecular profiling of transformed and metastatic murine squamous carcinoma cells by differential display and cDNA microarray reveals altered expression of multiple genes related to growth, apoptosis, angiogenesis, and the NF-kappaB signal pathway. Cancer Res 2001;61:4797–4808.
22 Trask DK, Wolf GT, Bradford CR, Fisher SG, Devaney K, Johnson M, Singleton T, Wicha M: Expression of Bcl-2 family proteins in advanced laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma: Correlation with response to chemotherapy and organ preservation. Laryngoscope 2002;112:638–644.
23 Rothe M, Sarma V, Dixit VM, Goeddel DV: TRAF2-mediated activation of NF-kappa B by TNF receptor 2 and CD40. Science 1995;269:1424–1427.
24 Hsu H, Shu HB, Pan MG, Goeddel DV: TRADD-TRAF2 and TRADD-FADD interactions define two distinct TNF receptor 1 signal transduction pathways. Cell 1996;84:299–308.
25 Hsu H, Xiong J, Goeddel DV: The TNF receptor 1-associated protein TRADD signals cell death and NF-kappa B activation. Cell 1995;81:495–504.
26 Chinnaiyan AM, O'Rourke K, Tewari M, Dixit VM: FADD, a novel death domain-containing protein, interacts with the death domain of Fas and initiates apoptosis. Cell 1995;81:505–512.
27 Chilov D, Kukk E, Taira S, Jeltsch M, Kaukonen J, Palotie A: Genomic organization of human and mouse genes for vascular endothelial growth factor C. J Biol Chem 1997;272:25176–25183.
28 Huang S, Robinson JB, Deguzman A, Bucana CD, Fidler IJ: Blockade of nuclear factor-kappaB signaling inhibits angiogenesis and tumorigenicity of human ovarian cancer cells by suppressing expression of vascular endothelial growth factor and interleukin 8. Cancer Res 2000;60: 5334–5339.
29 Devalaraja MN, Wang DZ, Ballard DW, Richmond A: Elevated constitutive IkappaB kinase activity and IkappaB-alpha phosphorylation in Hs294T melanoma cells lead to increased basal MGSA/GRO-alpha transcription. Cancer Res 1999;59:1372–1377.

30 Andela VB, Schwarz EM, Puzas JE, O'Keefe RJ, Rosier RN: Tumor metastasis and the reciprocal regulation of prometastatic and antimetastatic factors by nuclear factor kappaB. Cancer Res 2000;60:6557–6562.
31 Bhat-Nakshatri P, Newton TR, Goulet R Jr, Nakshatri H: NF-kappaB activation and interleukin 6 production in fibroblasts by estrogen receptor-negative breast cancer cell-derived interleukin 1 alpha. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1998;95:6971–6976.
32 Johnson JP: Cell adhesion molecules in the development and progression of malignant melanoma. Cancer Metastasis Rev 1999;18:345–357.
33 Chen Z, Colon I, Ortiz N, Callister M, Dong G, Pegram MY, Arosarena O, Strome S, Nicholson JC, Van Waes C: Effects of interleukin-1alpha, interleukin-1 receptor antagonist, and neutralizing antibody on proinflammatory cytokine expression by human squamous cell carcinoma lines. Cancer Res 1998;58:3668–3676.
34 Chen Z, Malhotra PS, Thomas GR, Ondrey FG, Duffey DC, Smith CW, Enamorado I, Yeh NT, Kroog GS, Rudy S, McCullagh L, Mousa S, Quezado M, Herscher LL, Van Waes C: Expression of proinflammatory and proangiogenic cytokines in patients with head and neck cancer. Clin Cancer Res 1999;5:1369–1379.
35 Chen Z, Smith CW, Kiel D, Van Waes C: Metastatic variants derived following in vivo tumor progression of an in vitro transformed squamous cell carcinoma line acquire a differential growth advantage requiring tumor-host interaction. Clin Exp Metastasis 1997;15:527–537.
36 Thomas GR, Chen Z, Leukinova E, Van Waes C, Wen J: Cytokines IL-1 alpha, IL-6, and GM-CSF constitutively secreted by oral squamous carcinoma induce down-regulation of CD80 costimulatory molecule expression: Restoration by interferon gamma. Cancer Immunol Immunother 2004;53:33–40.
37 Loukinova E, Dong G, Enamorado-Ayalya I, Thomas G, Chen Z, Van Waes C: Growth regulated oncogene-alpha expression by murine squamous cell carcinoma promotes tumor growth, metastasis, leukocyte infiltration and angiogenesis by a host CXC receptor-2 dependent mechanism. Oncogene 2000;19:3477–3486.
38 Dong G, Chen Z, Kato T, Van Waes C: The host environment promotes the constitutive activation of nuclear factor-kappaB and proinflammatory cytokine expression during metastatic tumor progression of murine squamous cell carcinoma. Cancer Res 1999;59:3495–3504.
39 Duffey DC, Chen Z, Dong G, Ondrey FG, Wolf JS, Brown K, Siebenlist U, Van Waes C: Expression of a dominant-negative mutant inhibitor-kappaBalpha of nuclear factor-kappaB in human head and neck squamous cell carcinoma inhibits survival, proinflammatory cytokine expression, and tumor growth in vivo. Cancer Res 1999;59:3468–3474.
40 Dong G, Loukinova E, Chen Z, Gangi L, Chanturita TI, Liu ET, Van Waes C: Molecular profiling of transformed and metastatic murine squamous carcinoma cells by differential display and cDNA microarray reveals altered expression of multiple genes related to growth, apoptosis, angiogenesis, and the NF-kappaB signal pathway. Cancer Res 2001;61:4797–4808.
41 Kato T, Duffey DC, Ondrey FG, Dong G, Chen Z, Cook JA, Mitchell JB, Van Waes C: Cisplatin and radiation sensitivity in human head and neck squamous carcinomas are independently modulated by glutathione and transcription factor NF-kappaB. Head Neck 2000;22:748–759.
42 Didelot C, Barberi-Heyob M, Bianchi A, Becuwe P, Mirjolet JF Dauca M, Merlin JL: Constitutive NF-kappaB activity influences basal apoptosis and radiosensitivity of head-and-neck carcinoma cell lines. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2001;51:1354–1360.
43 Nakayama H, Ikebe T, Beppu M, Shirasuna K: High expression levels of nuclear factor kappaB, IkappaB kinase alpha and Akt kinase in squamous cell carcinoma of the oral cavity. Cancer 2001;92:3037–3044.
44 Tamatani T, Azuma M, Aota K, Yamashita T, Bando T, Sato M: Enhanced IkappaB kinase activity is responsible for the augmented activity of NF-kappaB in human head and neck carcinoma cells. Cancer Lett 2001;171:165–172.
45 Epinat JC, Gilmore TD: Diverse agents act at multiple levels to inhibit the Rel/NF-kappaB signal transduction pathway. Oncogene 1999;18:6896–6909.
46 Teicher BA, Ara G, Herbst R, Palombella VJ, Adams J: The proteasome inhibitor PS-341 in cancer therapy. Clin Cancer Res 1999;5:2638–2645.

47 Sunwoo JB, Chen Z, Dong G, Yeh N, Crowl-Bancroft C, Sausville E, Adams J, Elliott P, Van Waes C: Novel proteasome inhibitor PS-341 inhibits activation of nuclear factor-kappa B, cell survival, tumor growth, and angiogenesis in squamous cell carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 2001;7:1419–1428.
48 Van Waes C, Sunwoo JB, DeGraff W, Mitchell JB: Cancer Drug Discovery and Development: Proteasome Inhibitors in Cancer Therapy. Totowa, Humana Press, in press, chapt 10: Radiosensitization and proteasome inhibition.

Dr. Carter Van Waes
Head and Neck Surgery Branch
National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders
Building 10, Room 5D55, MSC-1419, Bethesda, MD 20892 (USA)
E-Mail vanwaesc@nidcd.nih.gov

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 103–120

Antiangiogenic Therapy of Head and Neck Squamous Cell Carcinoma by Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor Antisense Therapy

Frank Riedel[a], *Karl Götte*[a], *Karl Hörmann*[a], *Jennifer Rubin Grandis*[b]

[a]Department of Otolaryngology, Head and Neck Surgery, University Hospital Mannheim, Mannheim, Germany; [b]University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh Pa., USA

Abstract

Angiogenesis is increased in various human cancers, including head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC), and correlates with tumor progression and metastasis. Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) has been shown to be a key regulator of angiogenesis. We determined whether VEGF antisense oligonucleotide treatment can decrease the angiogenic activity of HNSCC cell lines in vitro and of HNSCC xenografts in vivo. Established human HNSCC cell lines were screened for VEGF expression at both mRNA and protein levels. By using a 21-mer antisense phosphorothioate oligonucleotide targeting the translation start site of human VEGF mRNA, we examined the modulation of VEGF expression in cell line supernatants by capture ELISA and in cell lysates by Western blotting. Human endothelial cells were grown in conditioned medium produced from the treated tumor cells. Endothelial cell proliferation was determined by cell count, and endothelial cell migration was measured using a modified Boyden chamber. Mice with HNSCC xenografts were treated with PBS, VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides (10 mg/kg i.p. injection, 3 times/week), respectively, and tumor volumes were measured for 5 weeks. VEGF antisense oligonucleotide treatment resulted in a significant reduction of VEGF protein expression compared to treatment with the sense control. Although the growth rate of the tumor cell lines was not affected, the addition of conditioned medium from VEGF antisense-treated tumor cells resulted in decreased endothelial cell proliferation and migration. VEGF antisense oligonucleotide treatment of HNSCC xenografts resulted in a significant tumor growth suppression. These results suggest that downmodulation of VEGF using antisense oligonucleotides may be a potential therapy for the inhibition of angiogenesis in HNSCC.

Head and neck squamous cell carcinoma (HNSCC) is an aggressive epithelial malignancy that is the most common neoplasm arising in the upper aerodigestive tract. At current rates, approximately 50,000 new cases of HNSCC are reported annually in the USA, and more than 500,000 cases worldwide are diagnosed every year [1]. The prevalence of HNSCC is increasing worldwide [2]. Improved techniques in surgery, radiation and chemotherapy have increased the local control of HNSCC, but the overall survival rates have not changed significantly in 25 years [3]. Despite optimal therapy, the overall survival rate is poor, with a 40% 5-year survival for those with resectable and a 20% survival rate for patients whose tumors are not amenable to excision [3]. More than two thirds of the patients with HNSCC present with advanced disease (stage III and stage IV) where half of those patients will go on to develop local recurrences and 30% or more will develop distant metastasis [4]. Chemotherapy is generally employed in advanced cases, but the response rates average only 25–40% with overall survival being measured in months [3]. Thus, it is imperative that new treatment modalities are developed to increase the long-term survival of patients with HNSCC.

Angiogenesis, the process leading to the formation of new blood vessels from preexisting ones, plays a key role in the survival of cancer cells, in local tumor growth and in the development of distant metastasis [5]. Angiogenesis enables tumors to grow larger than 1–2 mm in diameter, invade surrounding tissue and travel to distant sites in the body [5]. The intensity of angiogenesis, as assessed by counting of microvessels in neoplastic tissue, acts as a prognostic factor for many solid tumors. Indeed, the intensity of angiogenesis has been shown to be increased in various human tumors, including HNSCC [6]. A malignant tumor can rely on a variety of molecular weapons that promote the switch to the angiogenic phenotype. These include an array of angiogenic growth factors, among others the vascular endothelial growth factor family (VEGF, VEGF-B. VEGF-C, VEGF-D), acidic and basic fibroblast growth factors, hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor, transforming growth factors α and β, tumor necrosis factor α, interleukin 8 and angiogenin. The induction of tumor vascularization is regulated by the release of these angiogenic peptides from tumor cells, macrophages and extracellular matrix [7]. These factors are required for endothelial cell migration and proliferation and capillary tubule formation [8]. Among the angiogenic factors mentioned, VEGF is thought to be the most important [9]. VEGF is a potent endothelial mitogen that activates the angiogenic switch in vivo and enhances vascular permeability [10]. VEGF has been shown to increase tumor growth and angiogenesis in vivo in a nude mouse model [11]. Enhanced expression of VEGF has been detected in a large variety of malignant human tumors including HNSCC [12–14]. We have previously demonstrated extended VEGF serum concentration in HNSCC patients compared with healthy controls

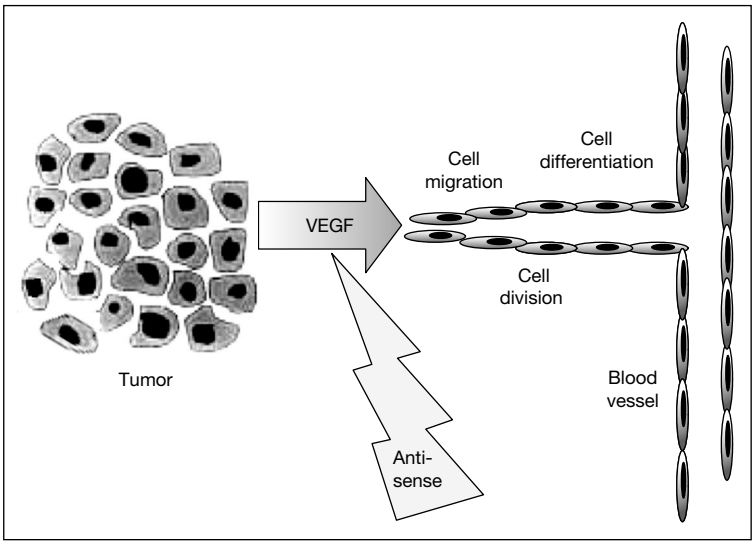


Fig. 1. Basic principle of this study: decrease in VEGF expression in head and neck cancer cells by VEGF antisense treatment may affect endothelial cell proliferation and migration in vitro and HNSCC tumor progression in vivo.

[15]. VEGF expression in HNSCC tumors strongly correlated with angiogenesis [16] and was inversely correlated with apoptosis [17]. The recognized importance of tumor-induced angiogenesis has stimulated the development of agents able to interfere with the molecules involved in this process [5]. The role of VEGF as a potential target for antineoplastic therapy has been demonstrated in several studies in which neutralizing antibodies against VEGF inhibited tumor growth and vascularization in vivo [18].

In this study, we sought to determine whether decreased VEGF expression in head and neck cancer cell lines may affect endothelial cell proliferation and migration in vitro and HNSCC tumor progression in vivo (fig. 1).

Material and Methods

Cell Culture

The different UMSCC cell lines are well-described human HNSCC cell lines obtained from T. Carey (University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, Mich., USA). The human carcinoma cell line MDA1483 is also a well-described HNSCC cell line derived from a tumor of the retromolar trigone region of the oropharynx (University of Texas, M.D. Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, Tex., USA). Cell cultures were carried out in Falcon Petri dishes at 37°C in a 5% CO_2 fully humidified atmosphere using Dulbecco's modified minimum essential medium

(DMEM; Fisher Scientific Co., Pittsburgh, Pa., USA) supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum (FCS) and antibiotics (Life Technologies Inc., Gibco BRL, Gainthersburg, Md., USA). For antisense treatment, the medium from the cultures was aspirated and replaced with DMEM containing 5% FCS and antibiotics followed by the addition of oligodeoxynucleotides. Human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVEC-p, PromoCell, Heidelberg, Germany) and human microvascular endothelial cells (HMVEC, PromoCell) were used for in vitro angiogenesis analysis. Cells were grown in Endothel Cell Growth Medium (PromoCell) supplemented with 2% fetal bovine serum.

Oligodeoxynucleotides

Phosphorothioated 21-mer oligodeoxynucleotides were synthesized on an Applied Biosystem 394 DNA synthesizer my means of B-cyanothylphosphoramidite chemistry to minimize degradation by endogenous nucleases. The antisense oligonucleotide (5′-CAGAAAGTTCATGGTTTCGGA-3′) was directed against the translation start site (AUG codon) and surrounding nucleotides of the human VEGF cDNA. The corresponding sense oligonucleotide was 5′-TCCGAAACCATGAACTTTCTG-3′. All experiments were performed with 12.5 μM oligodeoxynucleotides, unless otherwise stated.

Characterization of the Cell Lines

VEGF expression by the HNSCC cell lines was demonstrated immunohistochemically by anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody (VEGF, monoclonal mouse antihuman antibody, Calbiochem, Hamburg, Germany). Secreted VEGF was measured in the supernatant of the cell lines using an ELISA technique (R&D Systems, Wiesbaden, Germany) as described below. The VEGF mRNA level was measured in 7 HNSCC cell lines using RT-PCR (VEGF-CytoXpress Multiplex PCR Kit, BioSource).

Flow Cytometry

For uptake analysis, cells were grown in 6-well plates in DMEM. Confluent cultures were incubated in oligo medium with or without fluorescein-isothiocyanate-labeled oligodeoxynucleotides (FITC-ODN) for 24 h. Cells were trypsinized, washed with phosphate-buffered saline (PBS) and fixed in 0.5% paraformaldehyde. Analysis was carried out using a flow cytometer (Becton Dickinson), gating on live cells. Fluorescence was monitored at 488 nm with a 525-nm band pass filter.

Fluorescence Microscopy

For nucleus uptake analysis, cells were grown in 6-well plates in DMEM. Confluent cultures were incubated in oligo medium with or without FITC-ODN for 24 h. Cells were trypsinized, washed with PBS and incubated in Hoechst dye for 15 min. After washing with PBS, cells were fixed in 0.5% paraformaldehyde. Fluorescence staining was analyzed using a fluorescence microscope.

Human VEGF ELISA

Cell culture supernatants were collected in sterile test tubes and stored at –20°C until used. Then, VEGF concentrations were determined by an ELISA technique (R&D Systems). The system used a solid-phase monoclonal antibody and an enzyme-linked polyclonal antibody raised against recombinant VEGF165. The specificities of antihuman VEGF antibodies

used in the ELISA kit were examined by sodium dodecylsulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis followed by Western blotting [15]. According to the manufacturer's directions, each ELISA assay measured 100 μl of supernatant. All analyses and calibrations were carried out in duplicate. The calibrations on each microtiter plate included recombinant human VEGF standards provided in the kit. Optical density was determined using a microplate reader at a wavelength of 450 nm. Wavelength correction was set to 540 nm, and concentrations were reported as picograms per milliliter. The coefficient of variation of interassay determinations reported by the manufacturer varied from 6.2 to 8.8% when VEGF concentrations ranged between 50 and 1,000 pg/ml.

Cell Counts

To determine the effect of oligonucleotides on cell growth rates of tumor cells, HNSCC cell lines were plated in DMEM at a density of 10^5 cells/microtiter well in 24-well polystrene plates (Falcon). After 24 h, the cells were rinsed twice with medium, and then fresh oligo medium containing sense or antisense oligodeoxynucleotides was added. To determine the effect of oligonucleotide treatment of tumor cells on cell growth rates of endothelial cells, UMSCC22b cells were plated in Endothel Cell Growth Medium (PromoCell) followed by the addition of oligodeoxynucleotides and incubated for 48 h. Endothelial cells (HUVEC) were then incubated in this conditioned medium transferred from the UMSCC culture. Cell counts were determined using a hemocytometer in duplicate samples at each time point. Viability of the cells was analyzed by trypan blue exclusion.

Migration Assay

Human endothelial cells were grown on gelatin-coated dishes until confluence in Endothel Cell Growth Medium (PromoCell) supplemented with 2% fetal bovine serum. Migration assays were performed in transwell chambers (Corning-Costar Corp., Cambridge, Mass., USA). Conditioned medium from the tumor cell lines was placed in the lower chambers, which were covered with polycarbonate filters (8 μm pore size). Then, 0.5 ml of 1×10^5 cells/ml of endothelial cells were placed in the upper chamber. After 4 h of incubation at 37°C, medium in the upper chamber was aspirated, and cells on the upper surface of the filter were removed with a cotton swab. Cells on the lower surface were fixed, stained with Diff Quick (Dade International Inc., Miami, Fla., USA), placed on a microscope slide and covered with a coverslip as previously described [19]. The number of stained nuclei were counted in 5 high-power fields per each chamber.

In vivo Tumor Xenograft Studies

The animal experiments were approved by the Regierungspräsidium, Karlsruhe, Germany. The MDA1483 cell line reportedly grows well as xenografts in nude mice [20]. Cells in log phase were harvested by trypsination, resuspended in DMEM media supplemented with 10% FCS, centrifuged at 1,000 rpm for 10 min and resuspended in culture media at a concentration of 1×10^7 cells/ml prior to subcutaneous implantation into mice. Female athymic nude *nu/nu* mice (4–6 weeks old) were acclimated to the University animal facility for 2 weeks prior to injection of cancer cells. Mice were implanted with 1×10^6 cells into the right flank with a 26-gauge needle/1-ml tuberculin syringe. Approximately 10 days later when the tumor nodules were palpable, mice were randomly assigned to treatment groups of 8 mice each. PBS, VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides (10 mg/kg;

3 times/week) were injected intraperitoneally, respectively. Tumors were measured with calipers, and tumor volumes were calculated (tumor volume = length × width^2 × 0.52). Student's t test was used to calculate p values. Mice were sacrificed when tumors became ulcerated or reached a maximum diameter of 2 cm.

Results

Characterization of the Cell Lines

Immunohistochemical investigation using an anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody demonstrated expression of VEGF protein in all carcinoma cell lines. Representative examples of VEGF staining are shown in figure 2. VEGF protein was also detectable in the supernatant of all carcinoma cell lines. These results are summarized in figure 3a. Values are reported as the means and standard deviation per 10^6 cells of duplicate experiments. Accordingly, RT-PCR for VEGF mRNA exhibited VEGF expression in all 7 HNSCC cell lines (fig. 3b). Among the head and neck cancer cell lines, a relatively high level was noted in UMSCC22b cells (2,532 ± 265 pg/ml/10^6 cells). This cell line was chosen for further study. The human endothelial cell lines showed strong expression of von Willebrand factor and VEGF receptor Flt-1. VEGF receptor Flk-1 was weakly expressed in HUVEC (fig. 4). This cell line showed a dose-dependent growth rate depending on the concentration of VEGF supplemented in the endothelial cell medium (data not shown).

Oligonucleotide Uptake Analysis

To determine the uptake of oligonucleotides into UMSCC22b cells, we performed flow cytometry using FITC-ODN after 8 h of incubation. Figure 5a shows the logarithmic fluorescence for untreated cells and cells treated with FITC-ODN. More than 90% of the cells incorporated the oligonucleotides. Fluorescence microscopy exhibited the uptake of FITC-ODN into the nucleus of UMSCC22b cells. A representative result is shown in figure 5b.

Effect of Antisense Oligonucleotides on HNSCC Cell Lines

To quantitate VEGF secretion to the supernatant of HNSCC cell lines treated with medium (control) or medium containing VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides, ELISA was performed after 48 h. VEGF levels were significantly decreased by antisense VEGF oligonucleotide treatment in all HNSCC cell lines tested (fig. 6a). Endogenous VEGF expression in UMSCC22b cells treated with medium (control) or medium containing VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides for 48 h was measured by Western blot analysis. The VEGF level is significantly decreased by VEGF antisense

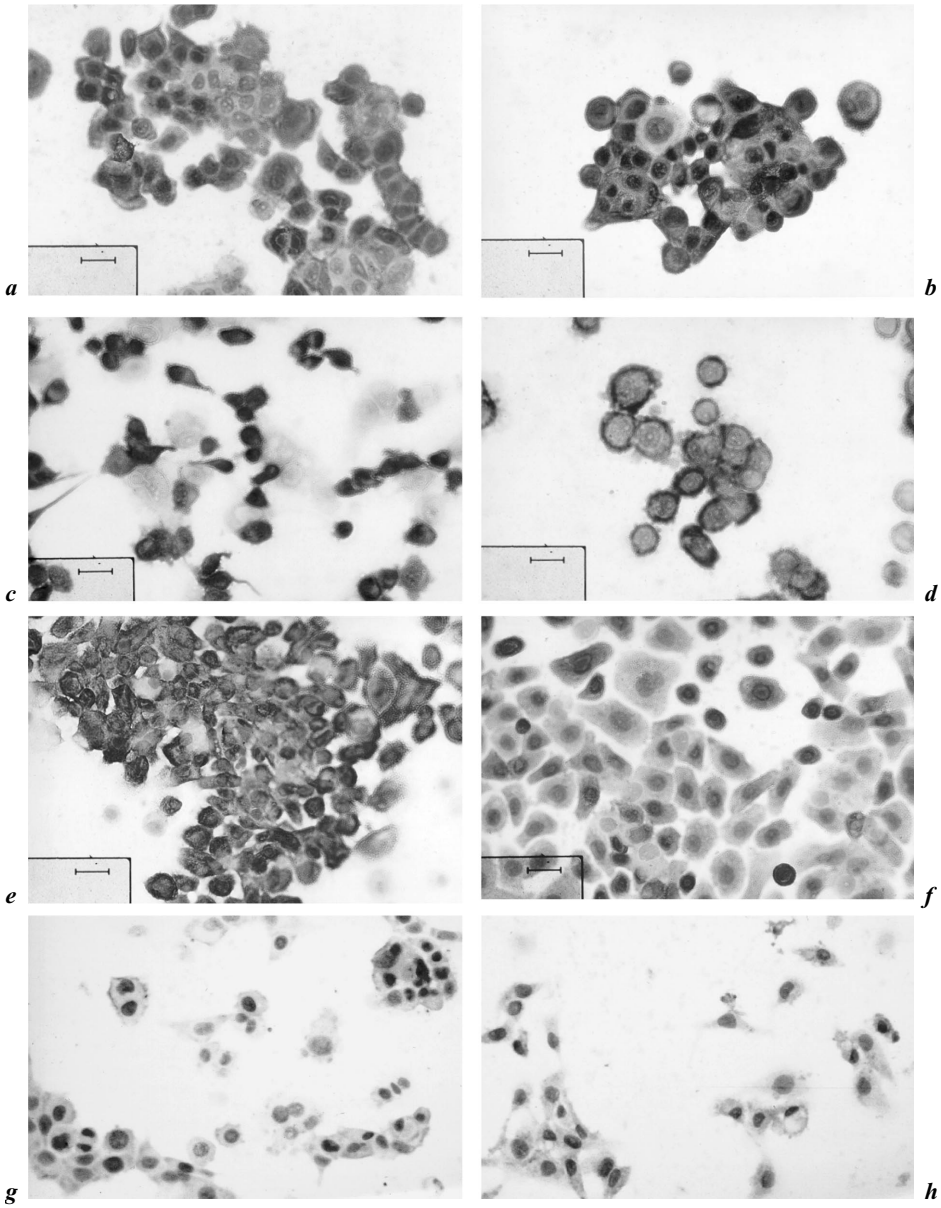


Fig. 2. Representative examples of VEGF immunostaining in HNSCC cell lines. Magnification ×400. ***a*** UMSCC22b. ***b*** UMSCC11b. ***c*** UMSCC74b. ***d*** UMSCC10a. ***e*** UMSCC17a. ***f*** UMSCC14c. ***g*** MDA1483. ***h*** A431.

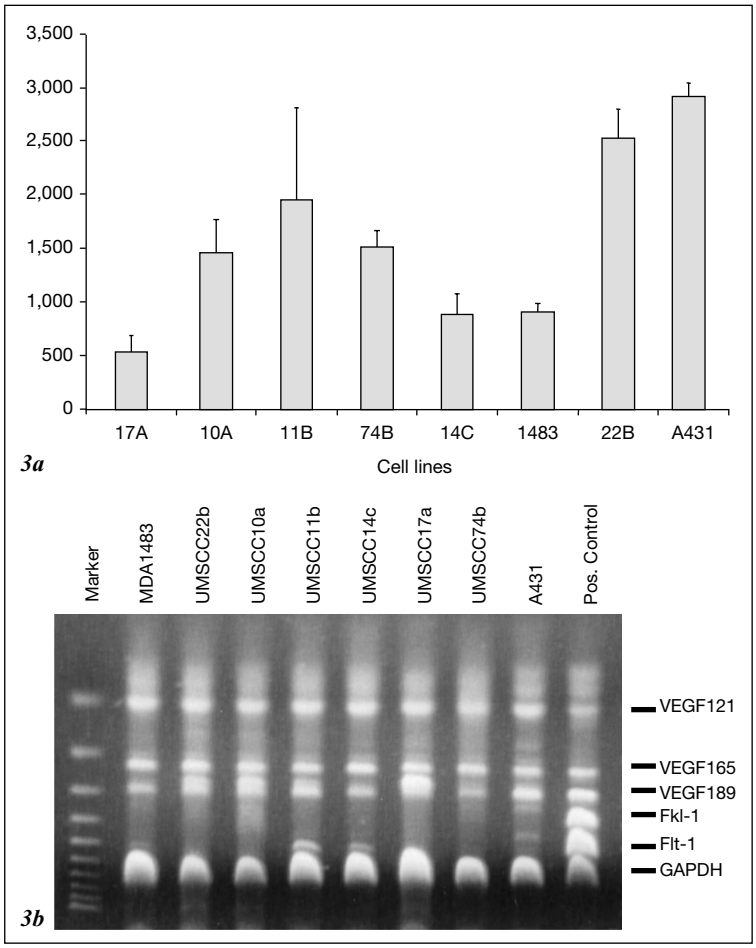
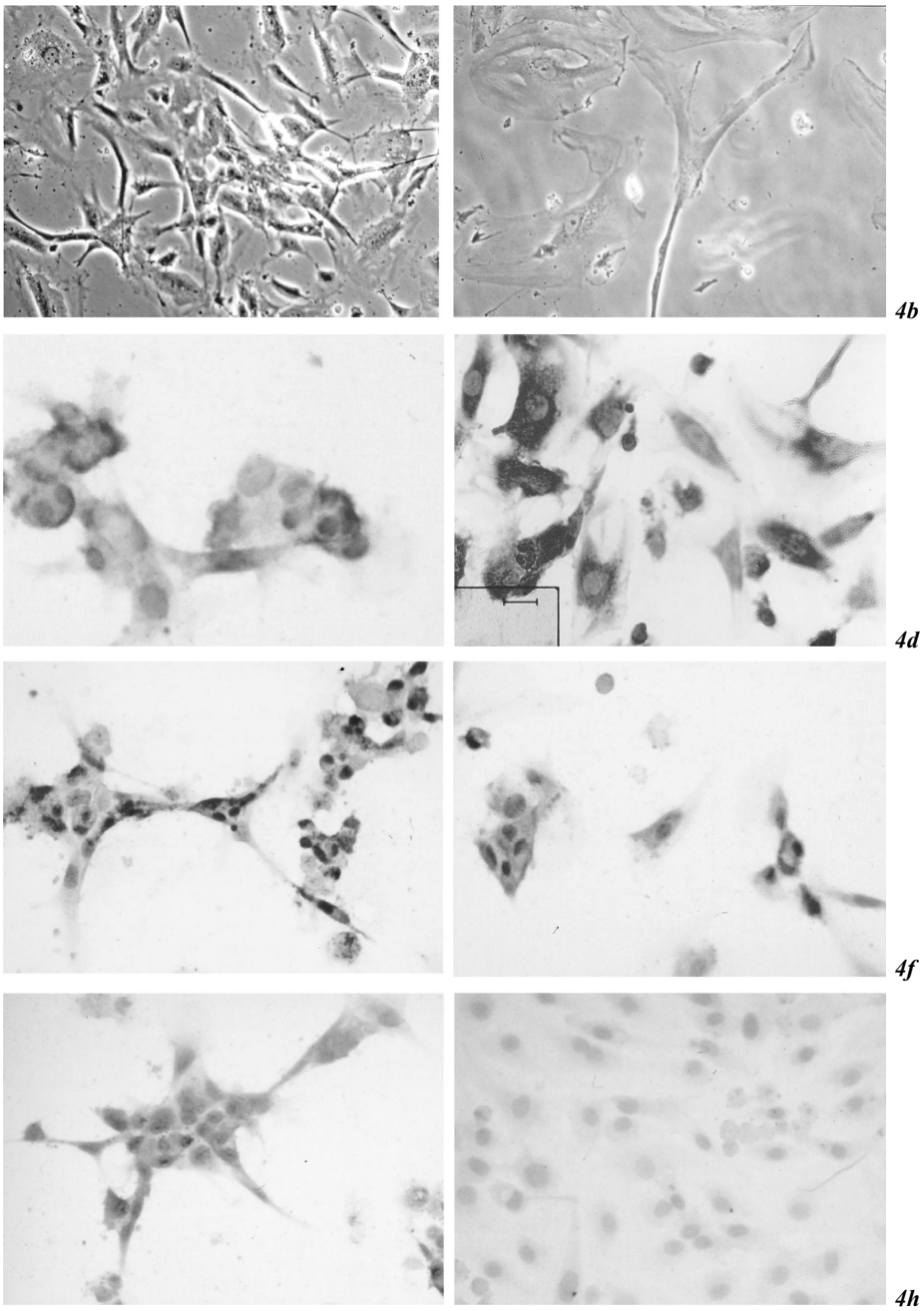


Fig. 3. ***a*** VEGF production by 7 HNSCC cell lines measured in the supernatant by ELISA after the cells had been cultured for 48 h. ***b*** VEGF mRNA in 7 HNSCC cell lines measured using an mRNA analysis kit (VEGF-CytoXpress Multiplex PCR Kit, BioSource). Secreted VEGF forms (VEGF121 and VEGF165) are detectable in all cell lines.

Fig. 4. Representative examples of immunostaining in the two different endothelial cell lines (HUVEC left; human microvascular endothelial cells, HMVEC, right). Magnification ×400. ***a, b*** Light microscopy. ***c, d*** Von Willebrand factor. ***e, f*** Flt-1. ***g, h*** Flk-1.

oligonucleotide treatment (fig. 6b). Although VEGF protein secretion was decreased in tumor cells treated wit h antisense VEGF oligonucleotides, we did not observe any reduction of the growth rate of the tumor cells as demonstrated (fig. 7).


4a
4b
4c
4d
4e
4f
4g
4h
HUVEC
HMVEC

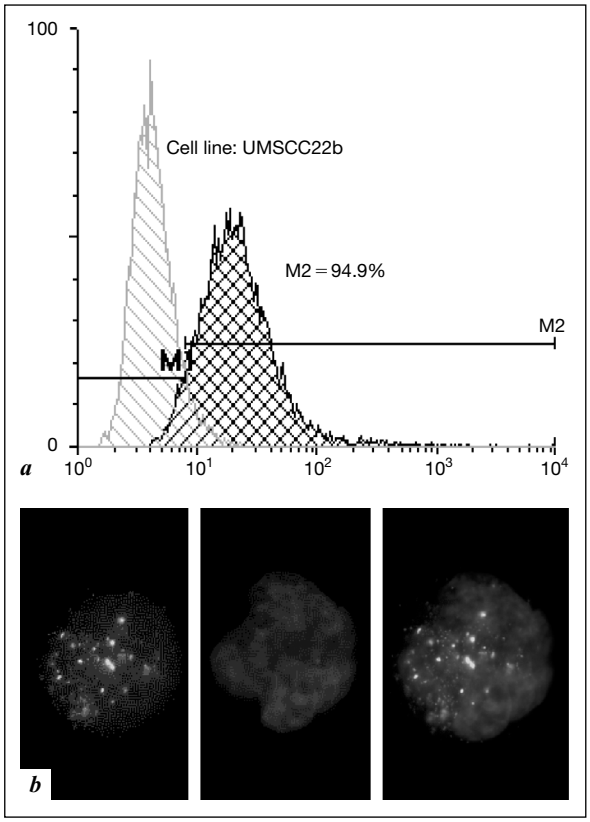


Fig. 5. ***a*** Uptake of FITC-ODN into UMSCC22b cells after 8 h of incubation. More than 90% of the cells incorporate the oligonucleotides. Values shown represent the mean of logarithmic fluorescence values in the count versus logarithmic channel histogram. ***b*** Uptake of FITC-ODN (green) into the nucleus (blue) of UMSCC22b cells after 8 h of incubation.

Effect on Endothelial Cells

The growth pattern of endothelial cells in response to conditioned medium from UMSCC22b cells treated with VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides was significantly affected showing a decrease in tubule formation in the presence of conditioned medium taken from the VEGF antisense-treated tumor cells (fig. 8). The growth rate of human endothelial cells (HUVEC) growing in conditioned medium from UMSCC22b cells treated with VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides was measured via cell counts. Endothelial cell growth was significantly decreased in the presence of conditioned medium taken from the VEGF antisense-treated tumor cells, as shown in figure 9a. The effect of antisense VEGF oligonucleotides on endothelial cell migration was examined using

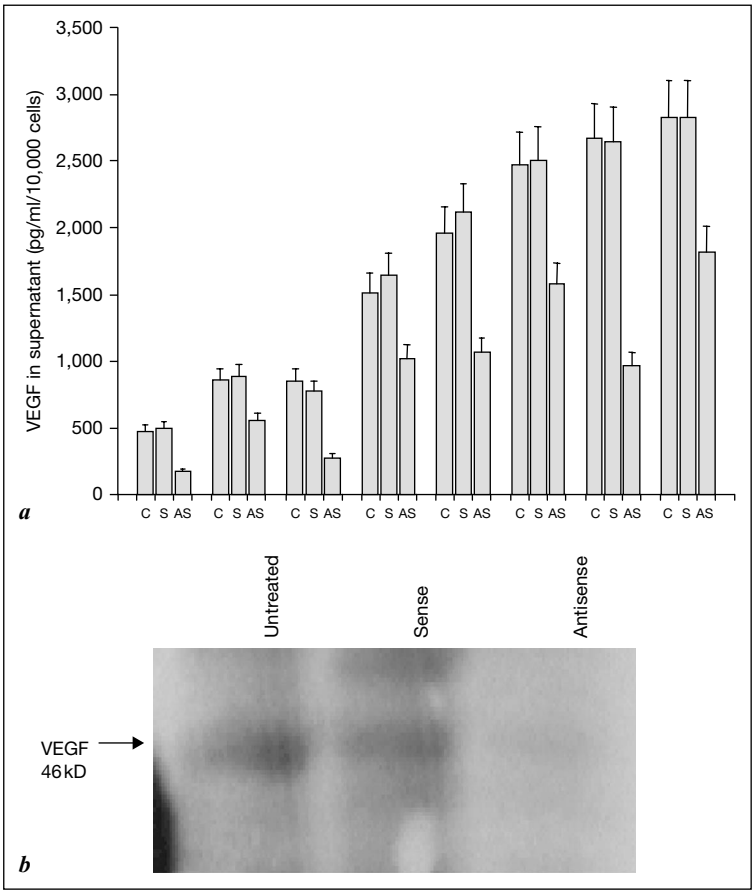


Fig. 6. ***a*** VEGF concentration in the supernatant of different HNSCC cell lines treated with medium (C = control) or medium containing VEGF antisense (AS) or sense (S) oligonucleotides for 48 h, measured by ELISA. ***b*** VEGF expression in UMSCC22b cells treated with medium (control) or medium containing VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides for 48 h, measured by Western blot.

transwell chambers. The addition of nonconcentrated conditioned medium from UMSCC22b cells treated with VEGF antisense oligonucleotides resulted in a significant decrease in HUVEC migration compared with the effect of conditioned medium of the untreated or sense-oligonucleotide-treated cells (fig. 9b).

Effect on HNSCC Xenografts

One million of MDA1483 cells were inoculated into each nude mouse. PBS, VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides (10 mg/kg; 3 times/week) were

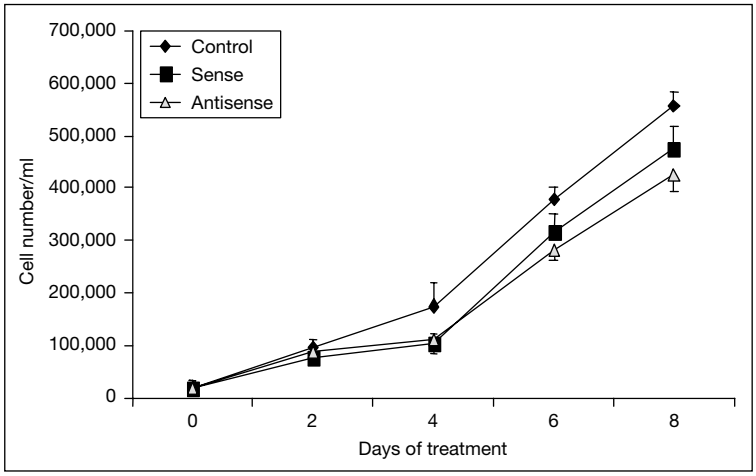


Fig. 7. Treatment of UMSCC22b cells with medium (control) or medium containing VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides shows no reduction of growth rate.

injected intraperitoneally, respectively. Eight mice were used per group. Student's t test was used to calculate p values. For the last 2 time points (32nd and 34th days), the differences between VEGF antisense and PBS control were significant ($p < 0.01$). The results are demonstrated in figure 10. It is also of note that VEGF sense treatment did not alter the growth behavior of the MDA1483 xenografted tumors, indicating that the VEGF antisense therapy was specifically directed against VEGF activity.

Discussion

The inhibition of angiogenesis of malignant tumors has become an important strategy to be considered in novel approaches to cancer therapy. It is widely accepted that an increase in the tumor cell population must be preceded by an increase in microvessels supplying the neoplasm [5, 7]. It was demonstrated that the supernatant from HNSCC cell lines induced an angiogenic response in vivo [21]. Dray et al. [22] demonstrated a strong correlation between high microvessel counts and recurrent or metastatic disease in HNSCC. Their data also suggested that microvessel counts were associated not only with an increased incidence of early recurrence or metastasis, but also with more aggressive forms of recurrent or metastatic disease [22]. One of the angiogenic stimulators is the VEGF, a directly acting endothelial cell mitogen. A significant body of evidence is accumulating that favors the notion that VEGF plays an important role in the

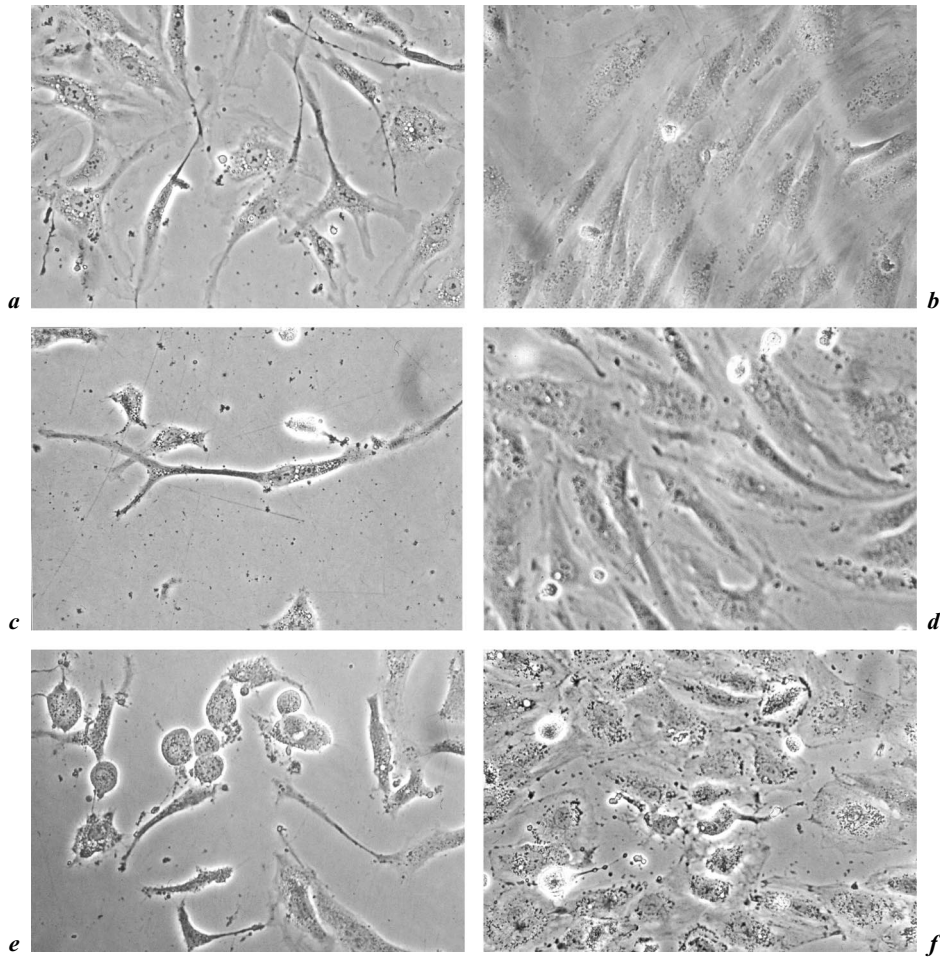


Fig. 8. Endothelial cell tubule formation in response to conditioned medium from UMSCC22b cells treated with medium (control; ***a, b***) or medium containing VEGF sense (***c, d***) or antisense (***e, f***) oligonucleotides.

development of solid tumors, such as head and neck cancer [10]. VEGF expression has been detected in a large number of malignant human tumors including HNSCC [12–14]. This prompted us to investigate the effect of VEGF antisense oligonucleotides. The objective of antisense treatment is to specifically inhibit expression of a particular gene product. The possible mechanism of action of antisense oligonucleotides includes inhibition of transcription or translation and mRNA degradation through an RNase H cleavage mechanism [23]. This study

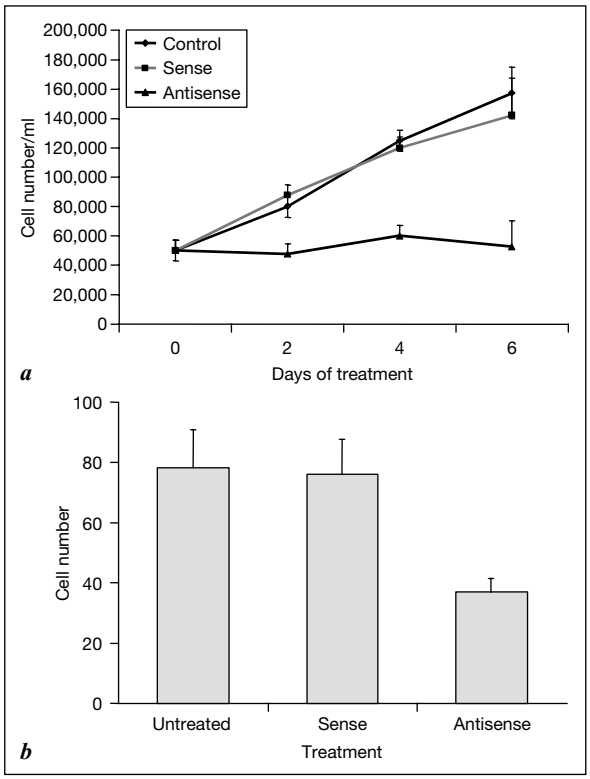


Fig. 9. ***a*** Growth rate of HUVEC growing in conditioned medium from UMSCC22b cells treated with VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides. ***b*** Endothelial cell migration assay in response to conditioned medium from UMSCC22b cells treated with VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides. In vitro migration was measured in Boyden chambers.

demonstrated that the treatment of HNSCC cells with VEGF antisense oligonucleotides in vitro efficiently downregulated VEGF expression. The cell growth rate of the tumor cells themselves was not affected by the VEGF antisense oligonucleotides. However, human endothelial cells grown in conditioned medium from the VEGF antisense-treated tumor cells exhibited a significant reduction of capillary tubule formation as well as cell proliferation and migration. Our results are in line with other recent in vitro studies showing downregulation of VEGF expression by VEGF antisense oligonucleotides in normal human keratinocytes [24] and in human glioma cells [25]. Accordingly, antisense oligonucleotide treatment of HNSCC xenografts resulted in a significant tumor growth suppression.

Our report suggests that antisense VEGF oligonucleotides may have a potential therapeutic role in the treatment of head and neck cancer. Antisense

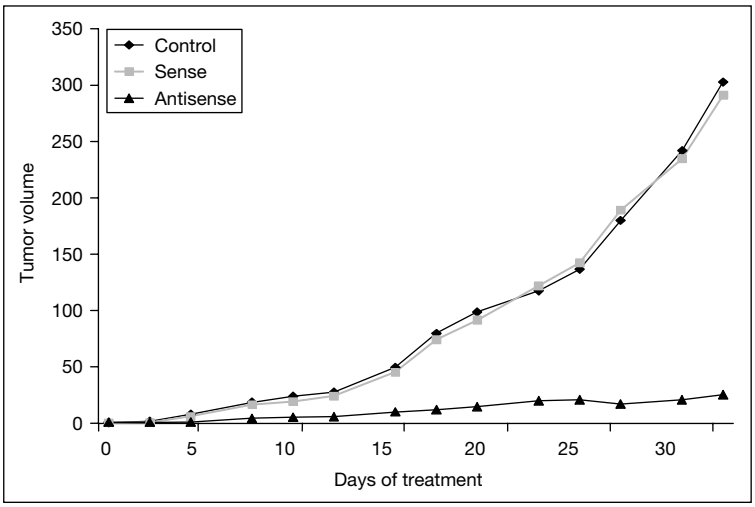


Fig. 10. Effect of VEGF antisense oligonucleotides on MDA1483 human HNSCC xenograft in nude mice. One million cells were inoculated into each nude mouse. PBS, VEGF antisense or sense oligonucleotides (10 mg/kg; 3 times/week) was injected intraperitoneally, respectively. Tumor volumes are presented as mean and plotted against the number of days of treatment. Eight mice were used per group. Student's t test was used to calculate p values. For the last 2 time points (32nd and 34th days), the differences between VEGF antisense and PBS control were significant ($p < 0.01$).

therapeutics have already been suggested for many clinical applications such as viral infections (human immunodeficiency virus, human papillomavirus, hepatitis C virus and human cytomegalovirus) and acute myelogenous leukemia or myelodysplastic syndrome [26]. In recent studies, antisense oligonucleotides have been tested for toxicity and clinical activity in a phase I evaluation in patients with advanced cancer [27].

Several other approaches have been proposed for blocking VEGF-induced endothelial cell proliferation and subsequent tumor angiogenesis. An anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody that inhibits the growth of a variety of human cancer xenografts in nude mice has been generated [18]. This monoclonal antibody has recently been humanized and is under clinical development [28]. Another promising approach is the development of selective inhibitors of the VEGF-specific Flk-1/KDR receptor tyrosine kinase [29]. In addition, experimental evidence has been provided for the potential therapeutic effect of blocking VEGF production by expression vectors containing VEGF antisense mRNA sequences [30, 31]. It has been demonstrated that antisense VEGF transfection effectively downregulated VEGF secretion from HNSCC cells and reduced endothelial cell migration [19]. Accordingly, VEGF downregulation in human colon carcinoma

Table 1. Angiogenesis inhibitors in clinical trials for cancer therapy

Drug	Mechanism
Phase I	
EMD121974	Small-molecule integrin antagonist
Combretastatin A-4 prodrug	Apoptosis in proliferating endothelium
PTK787/ZK2284	Blocks VEGF receptor signaling
Endostatin	Induces endothelial cell apoptosis in vivo
BMS-275291	Synthetic MMP inhibitor
SU6668	Blocks VEGF, FGF and PDGF receptor
Phase II	
CAI	Inhibitor of calcium influx
Squalamine	Inhibits Na/H exchanger
COL-3	Synthetic MMP inhibitor
CGS-27023A	Synthetic MMP inhibitor
TNP-470	Fumagilin analogue, inhibits endothelial
Vitaxin	Antibody to integrin on endothelial sur- face
Interleukin 12	Induces interferon γ and IP-10
Anti-VEGF antibody	Monoclonal antibody to VEGF
Phase III	
SU5416	Blocks VEGF receptor signaling
Thalidomide	Unknown
Marimastat	Synthetic MMP inhibitor
AG3340	Synthetic MMP inhibitor
Neovastat	Natural MMP inhibitor
Interferon α	Inhibition of bFGF and VEGF production
IM862	Unknown

From Carmeliet and Jain [34] and the NCI database (http://www.cancer.gov/clinical_trials/). MMP = Matrix metalloproteinase; FGF = fibroblast growth factor; PDGF = platelet-derived growth factor; bFGF = basic fibroblast growth factor.

cell lines by antisense transfection decreased endothelial cell proliferation [32]. In addition, ribozymes designed to target the VEGF sequence downregulated VEGF expression [33]. Tumors of glioma cells, transfected with a eukaryotic vector expressing VEGF in an antisense orientation, demonstrated a reduced number of microvessels, a higher degree of necrosis and inhibited growth rates [31]. Adenovirus vector transfer of an antisense VEGF sequence into glioma cells in an animal model resulted in inhibition of tumor growth [30].

Antiangiogenic therapy is an attractive modality for treating malignant neoplasms. Based on successful preclinical data, several antiangiogenic agents

alone or in combination with conventional therapies are now in clinical trials as demonstrated in table 1 [34]. We have demonstrated that antisense VEGF oligonucleotide treatment downregulates VEGF secretion and biological activity in vitro. Moreover, our results represent the first demonstration that abrogation of VEGF suppressed the growth of HNSCC tumors in vivo. Therefore, antisense oligonucleotide technology may be a potential therapy for the inhibition of angiogenesis in head and neck cancer.

Acknowledgement

The authors like to thank Petra Prohaska, Department of Otolaryngology Mannheim, and Stephanie Drenning, University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute, for their excellent technical assistance. This work was supported by the Research Fund of the Faculty of Medicine Mannheim, University of Heidelberg, Germany.

References

1 Lingen MW: Angiogenesis in the development of head and neck cancer and its inhibition by chemopreventive agents. Crit Rev Oral Biol Med 1999;10:153–164.
2 Mashberg A: Head and neck cancer. N Engl J Med 1993;328:1783–1784.
3 Dimery IW, Hong WK: Overview of combined modality therapies for head and neck cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 1993;85:95–111.
4 Hong WK, Bromer RH, Amato DA, Shapshay S, Vincent M, Vaughan C, Willett B, Katz A, Welch J, Fofonoff S, et al: Patterns of relapse in locally advanced head and neck cancer patients who achieved complete remission after combined modality therapy. Cancer 1985;56:1242–1245.
5 Folkman J: Angiogenesis in cancer, vascular, rheumatoid and other disease. Nat Med 1995;1:27–31.
6 Kuehn R, Rojas W, Riedel F, Bergler W, Hörmann K: Tumour angiogenesis in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Br J Cancer 1998;77(suppl 1):27.
7 Risau W: Mechanisms of angiogenesis. Nature 1997;386:671–674.
8 Folkman J, Klagsbrun M: Angiogenetic factors. Science 1987;235:442–447.
9 Dvorak HF, Brown LF, Detmar M, Dvorak HM: Vascular permeability factor/vascular endothelial growth factor, microvascular hyperpermeability and angiogenesis. Am J Pathol 1995;146:1029–1039.
10 Ferrara N: The role of vascular endothelial growth factor in pathological angiogenesis. Breast Cancer Res Treat 1995;36:127–137.
11 Zhang HT, Craft P, Scott PA, Ziche M, Weich HA, Harris AL, Bicknell R: Enhancement of tumor growth and vascular density by transfection of vascular endothelial cell growth factor into MCF-7 human breast carcinoma cells. J Nat Cancer Inst 1995;87:213–219.
12 Eisma RJ, Spiro JD, Kreutzer DL: Vascular endothelial growth factor expression in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Am J Surg 1997;174:513–517.
13 Mineta H, Miura K, Ogino T, Takebayashi S, Misawa K, Ueda Y, Suzuki I, Dictor M, Borg A, Wennerberg J: Prognostic value of vascular endothelial growth factor in head and neck squamous cell carcinomas. Br J Cancer 2000;83:775–781.
14 Salven P, Heikkilä P, Anttonen A, Kajanti M, Joensuu H: Vascular endothelial growth factor in squamous cell head and neck carcinoma: Expression and prognostic significance. Modern Pathol 1997;10:1128–1133.
15 Riedel F, Götte K, Schwalb J, Wirtz H, Bergler W, Hörmann K: Serum levels of vascular endothelial growth factor in patients with head and neck cancer. Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol 2000;257:332–336.

16 Riedel F, Götte K, Schwalb J, Schäfer C, Hörmann K: Expression of vascular endothelial growth factor correlates with angiogenesis and p53 mutations in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Acta Otolaryngol 2000;120:105–111.
17 Riedel F, Götte K; Bergler W, Hörmann K: Inverse correlation of angiogenic and apoptotic markers in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck. Oncol Rep 2001;8:471–476.
18 Kim KJ, Li B, Winer J, Armanini M, Gillet N, Phillips HS, Ferrara N: Inhibition of vascular endothelial growth factor induced angiogenesis suppresses tumour growth in vivo. Nature 1993;362:841–844.
19 Nakashima T, Hudson JM, Clayman GL: Antisense inhibition of vascular endothelial growth factor in human head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Head Neck 2000;22:483–488.
20 Li M, Ye C, Feng C, Riedel F, Liu X, Zeng Q, Grandis JR: Enhanced antiangiogenic therapy of squamous cell carcinoma by combined endostatin and epidermal growth factor receptor-antisense therapy. Clin Cancer Res 2002;8:3570–3578.
21 Petruzelli GJ, Snyderman CH, Johnson JT, Myers EN: Angiogenesis induced by head and neck squamous cell carcinoma xenografts in the chick embryo chorioallantioc membrane model. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol 1993;102:212–221.
22 Dray TG, Hardin NJ, Sofferman RA: Angiogenesis as a prognostic marker in early head and neck cancer. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol 1995;104:724–729.
23 Mirabelli CK, Bennett CF, Anderson K, Crooke ST: In vitro and in vivo pharmacologic activities of antisense oligonucleotides. Anticancer Drug Des 1991;6:647–661.
24 Smyth AP, Rook SL, Detmar M, Robinson GS: Antisense oligonucleotides inhibit vascular endothelial growth factor/vascular permeability factor expression in normal human epidermal keratinocytes. J Invest Dermatol 1997;108:523–526.
25 Zheng SX, Zhou LJ, Zhu XZ, Jin YX: Antisense oligodeoxynucleotide inhibits vascular endothelial growth factor in human glioma cells. Acta Pharmacol Sin 2000;21:211–214.
26 Field AK, Goodchild J: Antisense oligonucleotides: Rational drug design for genetic pharmacology. Exp Opin Invest Drugs 1995;4:799–821.
27 Nemunaitis J, Holmlund JT, Kraynak M, Richards D, Bruce J, Ognoskie N, Kwoh TJ, Geary R, Dorr A, Von Hoff D, Eckhardt SG: Phase I evaluation of ISIS 3521, an antisense oligodeoxynucleotide to protein kinase C-alpha, in patients with advanced cancer. J Clin Oncol 1999;17: 3586–3595.
28 Presta LG, Chen H, O'Connor SJ, Chisholm V, Meng YG, Krummen L, Winkler M, Ferrara N: Humanization of an anti-vascular endothelial growth factor monoclonal antibody for the therapy of solid tumors and other disorders. Cancer Res 1997;57:4593–4599.
29 Laird AD, Vajkoczy P, Shawver LK, Thurnher A, Liang C, Mohammadi M, Schlessinger J, Ullrich A, Hubbard SR, Blake RA, Fong TA, Strawn LM, Sun L, Tang C, Hawtin R, Tang F, Shenoy N, Hirth KP, McMahon G, Cherrington JM: SU6668 is a potent antiangiogenic and antitumor agent that induces regression of established tumors. Cancer Res 2000;60:4152–4160.
30 Im SA, Gomez-Manzano C, Fueyo J, Liu TJ, Ke LD, Kim JS, Lee HY, Steck PA, Kyritsis AP, Yung WK: Anti-angiogenesis treatment for gliomas: Transfer of antisense-vascular endothelial growth factor inhibits tumor growth in vivo. Cancer Res 1999;59:895–900.
31 Saleh M, Stacker SA, Wilks AF: Inhibition of growth of C6 glioma cells in vivo by expression of antisense vascular endothelial growth factor sequence. Cancer Res 1996;56:393.
32 Ellis LM, Liu W, Wilson M: Down-regulation of vascular endothelial growth factor in human colon carcinoma cell lines by antisense transfection decreases endothelial cell proliferation. Surgery 1996;120:871–878.
33 Ke LD, Fueyo J, Chen X, Steck PA, Shi YX, Im SA, Yung WK: A novel approach to glioma gene therapy: Down-regulation of the vascular endothelial growth factor in glioma cells using ribozymes. Int J Oncol 1998;12:1391–1396.
34 Carmeliet P, Jain RK: Angiogenesis in cancer and other diseases. Nature 2000;407:249–257.

PD Dr. Frank Riedel
Universitäts-HNO-Klinik, Klinikum
Theodor-Kutzer-Ufer, DE–68135 Mannheim (Germany)
Tel. +49 621 383 1600, Fax +49 621 383 3827, E-Mail frank.riedel@hno.ma.uni-heidelberg.de

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 121–133

Chemokine Receptors 6 and 7 Identify a Metastatic Expression Pattern in Squamous Cell Carcinoma of the Head and Neck

Jun Wang[a], *Liqiang Xi*[b,c], *William Gooding*[d], *Tony E. Godfrey*[b,c], *Robert L. Ferris*[a,c]

[a]Departments of Otolaryngology and Immunology, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, Hillman Cancer Center, [b]Department of Surgery, Cancer Institute, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, [c]University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute and [d]Department of Biostatistics, University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute, Pittsburgh, Pa., USA

Abstract

Squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (HNSCC) metastasizes predictably to locoregional, cervical lymph nodes. Tumor cells can express various receptors that facilitate metastatic spread to lymph nodes and other nonlymphoid organs. Chemokine receptors (CCRs), normally expressed on lymphocytes, control immune and inflammatory cell migration, providing a link between innate and adaptive immunity. CCR expression was evaluated in HNSCC, and we showed a consistent pattern of CCR6 downregulation and upregulation of CCR7 in metastatic cells and tissues. Functional assays indicate that these surface receptors were functional on metastatic tumor cells. CCR6 downregulation is consistent with its decreased expression in cells emigrating from peripheral mucosal sites, while CCR7, important for homing of immune cells to secondary lymphoid organs, was significantly upregulated. Thus, CCR6, CCR7 and their ligands, normally important in controlling immune cell trafficking in response to inflammatory stimuli, may have an important role in determining the metastasis of HNSCC cells in vivo. Our data indicate that inhibition of CCR signaling may provide a targeted molecular therapy to prevent HNSCC metastasis.

Head and neck cancer is the 6th most common tumor in the USA, with 45,000 new cases annually and 500,000 new cases worldwide [1]. The 5-year survival is only 30–40%, mainly due to the frequent presence of invasive spread

and metastasis at diagnosis, and the pattern of regional cervical metastasis (as opposed to distant organs) in this disease is remarkably consistent [2]. Because tumor invasion and metastasis are the best predictors of prognosis, an urgent goal in head and neck oncology is to develop improved therapeutic agents for clinical use. A better understanding of these processes is necessary to enable the development of therapies designed to prevent tumor dissemination.

Selection of aggressive variants in malignant tumors may facilitate loss of attachment and subsequent emigration of cells to tissues via lymphatics and/or blood vessels. Both tumor angiogenesis and expression of stromal degradative enzymes, such as metalloproteinases, by tumor cells are known to play a role in their vascular dissemination. The predilection of metastases for specific organs may depend on a variety of factors, and three theories have been put forward [1]. According to the first theory, all migrating tumor cells can enter any tissue, but form a metastasis only if all requirements for their growth are met. The second suggests that tissue-specific adhesion molecules on endothelial cells select migrating cells able to attach and form a premetastatic nucleus of cells. The most recent theory proposes that chemoattractants, produced by stromal or immune cells, lead invasive cancer cells to the tissue of their potential secondary growth [2].

Chemokine Receptor and Ligand Interactions Mediate Inflammatory and Immunologic Functions

Chemokines are small molecules involved in lymphocyte migration, trafficking and homing throughout the lymphatic system. These molecules constitute a superfamily of inducible, secreted, proinflammatory proteins involved in a variety of immune responses, acting primarily as chemoattractants and activators of specific types of leukocytes. Four classes of chemokines have been defined based on the spatial arrangement of the conserved cysteine (C) residues in the mature protein sequences (fig. 1): the CXC chemokines that have 1 amino acid (aa) residue separating the first 2 conserved cysteine residues; the CC chemokines in which the first 2 conserved cysteine residues are adjacent; the C chemokines that lack 2 (the first and third) of the 4 conserved cysteine residues, and the CX_3C chemokines which have 3 intervening aa residues between the first 2 conserved cysteine residues [2–5].

Control of lymphocyte migration through chemokine receptor (CCR) expression enables the immune system to respond to peripheral sites of inflammation by ingress of cells responsible for surveillance and antigen uptake, while subsequent maturation programs lead to altered expression of CCRs in these cells, enabling their exit from the periphery to secondary lymphoid organs,

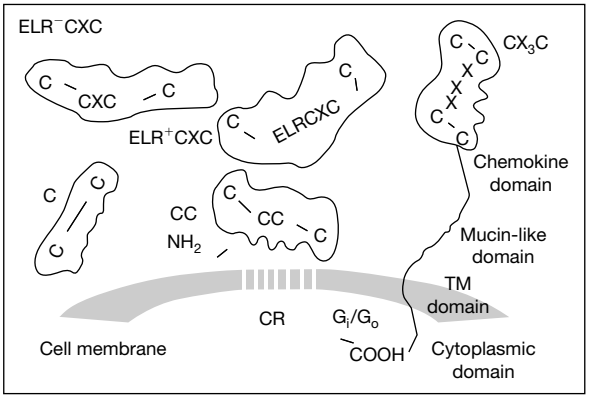


Fig. 1. Chemokine receptors are a G-protein-linked family of molecules.

where antigen-specific immunity may be initiated. Thus, normally chemokines and their receptors link innate and adaptive immune responses (fig. 2).

6Ckine/Exodus-2/SLC is constitutively expressed at high levels in lymphoid tissues such as lymph nodes, spleen and appendix. In the mouse, high levels of 6Ckine mRNA are also detected in the lung. The gene for human 6Ckine has been localized at human chromosome 9p13 rather than chromosome 17, where the genes of many human CC chemokines are clustered. The 6Ckine gene location is within a region of about 100 kb as the gene for MIP-3β/ELC, another recently identified CC chemokine. MIP-3β is constitutively expressed at high levels in the thymus, lymph nodes, appendix and tonsil. In addition, MIP-3β mRNA is also expressed by activated monocytes but not by dendritic cells (DCs) or peripheral blood mononuclear cells. The expression of MIP-3β is downregulated by the anti-inflammatory cytokine interleukin 10. Recombinant MIP-3β has been shown in vitro to be chemotactic for cultured human lymphocytes expanded with or without interleukin 2. Similar to 6Ckine, MIP-3β is not chemotactic for monocytes. MIP-3β has been shown to be a unique functional ligand for CCR7.

CCR6 is a β-chemokine-specific receptor for the chemokine ligand (CCL) 20 (MIP-3α/LARC/Exodus). In addition to having only 1 highly specific ligand, other features make CCR6 an interesting receptor. Human CCR6 is expressed in immature DCs derived in vitro from CD34+ precursors, and is downregulated as DCs mature; it is also expressed in memory T cells, cells positive for cutaneous lymphocyte-associated antigen and B cells. Similar CCR6 expression patterns are reported in the mouse, in which CCR6 is expressed in the myeloid but not in the lymphoid DC subpopulation, B cells and CD4+ T cells. Like its receptor, MIP-3/CCL20 has a restricted pattern of expression in vivo. MIP-3/CCL20 is constitutively expressed by keratinocytes in the basal and suprabasal layers of the

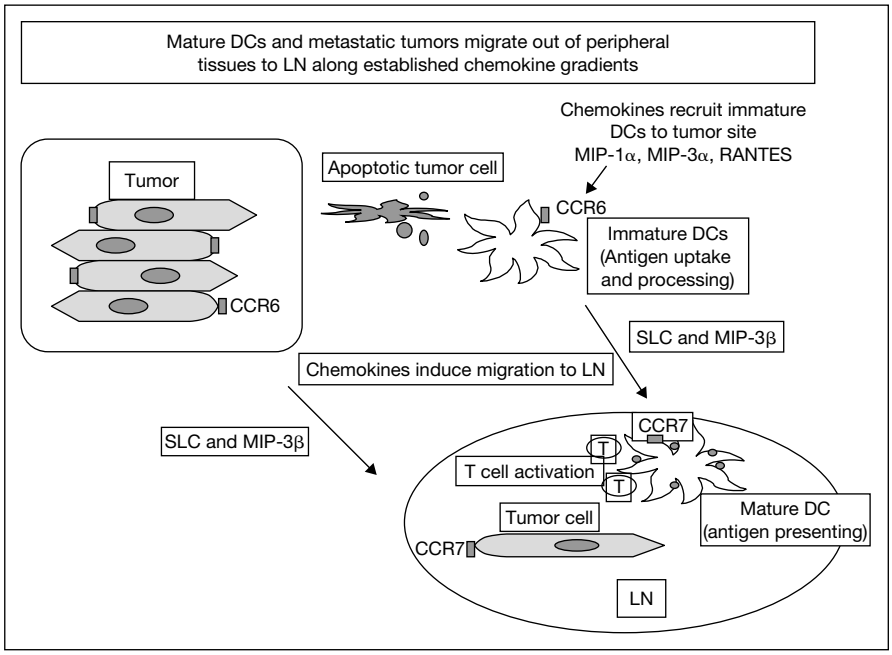


Fig. 2. Migration and invasion of HNSCC may occur in response to chemotactic gradients established for immune cell trafficking to secondary lymphoid organs.

epidermis and venular endothelial cells in skin. Likely involved in transendothelial migration and constitutive trafficking of Langerhans' cell precursors into the epidermis, MIP-3/CCL20 gene expression in peripheral blood mononuclear cells is strongly induced by inflammatory stimuli such as tumor necrosis factor α, lipopolysaccharide and phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate, and it is a selective chemotactic factor for lymphocytes. Poorly expressed in the absence of inflammatory stimuli, MIP-3/CCL20 mRNA was found to be abundant in inflamed epithelial crypts of palatine tonsils and intestinal epithelial cells, especially those lying immediately over Peyer's patches and in other mucosal lymphoid structures, including the follicle-associated epithelium.

Mechanisms of Cancer Metastasis

Role of Chemokines in Tumor Metastasis

Several malignant cell types have been shown to express CCRs, which are expressed in these invasive cells in a nonrandom pattern [6–11]. Although these

receptors transduce signals, a thorough understanding of their true function in the tumor setting is still emerging. Chemokines and their receptors are likely to be involved in morphogenetic movements during organogenesis. It is possible that malignant transformation, and de-differentiation, may result in the reappearance of some receptors that had been involved in this process earlier in ontogeny. In the tumor microenvironment, it is likely that an extracellular growth factor-chemokine network represents a general mechanism connecting tumorigenesis and inflammation.

Recent studies have shown the involvement of CCRs in cancer metastasis, including HNSCC [12]. Metastatic tumor cells from breast [6], liver, prostate [11], ovarian [13] and gastric cancer [9] develop particular CCR expression, and this correlates significantly with CCLs produced within distant organs and lymphatic sites to which these cells metastasize. We have recently identified a unique, coordinate pattern of CCR expression on metastatic HNSCC [12]. CCR6 was nearly universally downregulated and CCR7 significantly upregulated (mean 50-fold by quantitative reverse-transcription polymerase chain reaction, qRT-PCR, and confirmed by flow cytometry and immunohistochemistry), in autologous metastases derived from primary HNSCC tumors. Thus, as selective CCR inhibitors are developed, this area of research may be translated into clinical benefit by effectively preventing this distal recruitment of metastatic tumor cells.

Chemokine Receptor Signaling Mechanisms

Due to the potential importance of chemokines in tumor growth and metastasis, recent work has focused on the expression of CCRs on tumor cells as they attempt to spread through lymphatic channels. Other analyses have also discovered that CCLs are secreted by tumor cells, paradoxically inviting lymphocytes to infiltrate peritumoral tissues. Interesting questions regarding local immunosuppressive effects of tumor cells on infiltrating lymphocytes are raised by such findings. Knowledge gained from these studies has enabled the development of vaccines that employ the strategy of CCL insertion into tumor cells and thus enhance tumor cell rejection by the recruited immune cells. These data also suggest that interference with downstream messenger molecules or direct receptor inhibition may prevent growth and/or metastasis of primary tumor cells.

Although CCR signaling has not been studied extensively in human cancers, analogy to lymphocyte CCR signaling may be drawn. Also, other G-protein-coupled receptors expressed by HNSCC cells appear to act in association with pathways dependent on epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR),

Table 1. Clinical and demographic data of cell lines obtained from HNSCC patients in this study

Cell lines	Age	Sex	Primary site	Stage	Grade
PCI-4	51	male	larynx	$T_3N_1M_0$	moderately well
PCI-15	69	male	pyriform sinus	$T_2N_1M_0$	poor
PCI-37	62	male	larynx	$T_3N_2M_0$	moderate

Grade refers to degree of differentiation.

often through transactivation. For this reason, we have investigated whether phosphatidylinositol-3-kinase plays an important role in CCR7-dependent metastatic functions, including migration and invasion. Furthermore, we wished to clarify whether these functions, and downstream CCR7-dependent signals, are mediated through an EGFR-dependent mechanism, which has been shown previously to function in HNSCC. In preliminary studies, we have found that CCR7-mediated signals appear to act through a separate, EGFR-independent pathway, which may represent a novel target for therapeutic intervention against HNSCC metastasis [Wang J. and Ferris R.L., unpubl. data].

Unique Chemokine Receptor Expression Pattern of CCR6 and CCR7 Is Correlated with Head and Neck Cancer Metastasis

Differential Chemokine Receptor Expression in Primary and Metastatic Tumor Cells

Comparing the semiquantitative RT-PCR results of CCR expression in each pair of cells (table 1), a consistent pattern of CCR6 downregulation compared to metastases and robust CCR7 expression was found in metastatic tumor cell lines [12]. Importantly, the same pattern of CCR6 downregulation and CCR7 upregulation in metastatic as compared to primary tumor tissues was confirmed by standard RT-PCR analysis in 14 sets of paired primary and metastatic biopsy specimens, obtained from the same patients. CCR7 mRNA was detected in both primary and metastatic tumor lines and fresh specimens by RT-PCR analysis [12], raising the question as to whether levels of expression were similar between primary and metastatic tumor cells. Therefore, using real-time qRT-PCR, we determined the relative CCR7 expression between primary tumors and metastases, in paired cell lines and fresh tumor tissues. We carefully dissected tumor from the surrounding nodal architecture to remove contaminating immune cells. Since CCR6 expression was not detected in

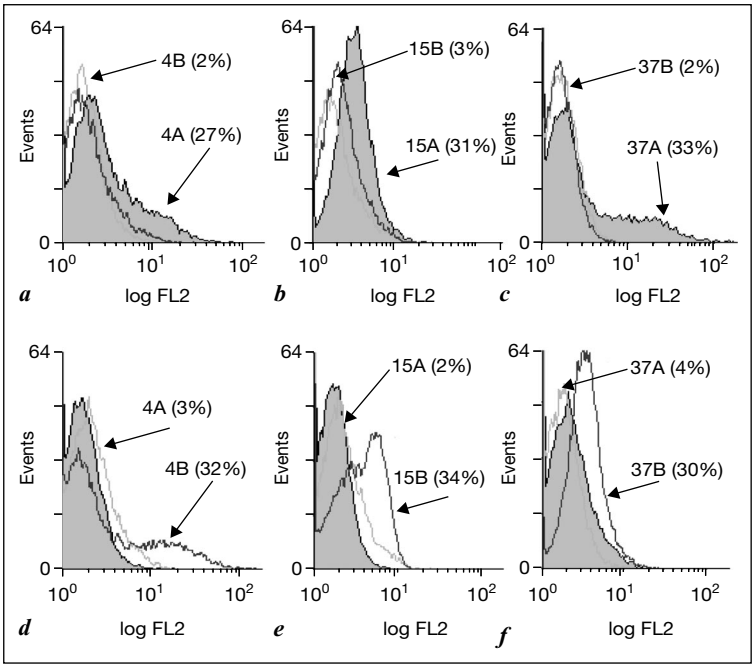


Fig. 3. Surface staining of CCR6 and CCR7 by flow cytometry in metastatic HNSCC cell lines. A = Tumor cell lines; B = metastatic cell lines. ***a–c*** Primary tumor. ***d–f*** Lymph node metastasis. Original magnification was ×200. ***a*** and ***d*** Anti-CCR6. ***b*** and ***e*** Anti-CCR7. ***c*** and ***f*** Isotype control mAb.

metastases, it was not analyzed using qRT-PCR. These experiments showed up to 50-fold higher expression levels ($p < 0.001$) of CCR7 in metastases than in primary tumors [12]. We have also confirmed this expression pattern by flow cytometry (fig. 3).

Immunohistochemical Staining of CCR6 and CCR7 in Fresh Tumor Biopsies Shows that a Novel Metastatic Expression Pattern Is Present in vivo

To study CCR expression in vivo, paraffin tumor blocks were stained for CCR6 and CCR7 [12]. Using immunohistochemistry, differential CCR6 and CCR7 expression in primary versus metastatic head and neck tumors (n = 4 patients) was confirmed from patients' tumors studied using qRT-PCR. Flow cytometry on autologous primary and metastatic cell lines (fig. 3) confirmed the presence of mature protein expression. Functional effects were initially indicated by receptor desensitization (downregulation only in response to the appropriate CCL treatment; data not shown).

Immunostained tissue sections indicated that, in vivo, primary tumors expressed high levels of CCR6, but metastatic tumors expressed high levels of CCR7. These results rule out the possibility that high CCR7 expression in metastatic tumors was due to lymphoid cells in tumor-metastatic lymph node specimens and is consistent with the retention of different migratory responses of primary and metastatic tumor cell lines, even after culture in vitro for months.

Tumor Cell Chemokine Receptors Mediate Chemotaxis in Response to Selective Chemokines

We next analyzed the capability of paired primary/metastatic cells to migrate in vitro in response to the respective ligands. Transwell migration assays followed by blocking of the receptors with receptor-specific monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) showed that both CCR6 (on primary cells) and CCR7 (on metastatic cells) surface receptors are functionally active. Media-pulsed and isotype-matched mAb-pulsed wells (data not shown) were used to control for CCR specificity of the blocking effect. An increase in expression of CCR6 in primary tumor cells was also observed in all 3 cell lines examined in response to MIP-3α. CCR7 upregulation in metastatic cells was observed in 3 of 3 cell lines tested suggesting their enhanced responsiveness to both CCR7 ligands, MIP-3β and SLC (fig. 4). This CCR-dependent migration was blocked using an mAb specific for the appropriate receptor, indicating the clinical potential of such inhibition pharmacologically (fig. 5).

Matrigel invasion assays using 686LN (poorly metastatic) cells and 686LN-M3a2 (highly metastatic derivative) as described previously [14] indicated a correlation between increased CCR7 expression detected by qRT-PCR in 686LN-M3a2 cells, with invasive potential.

Implications of these Findings

The overall 5-year survival rate for HNSCC has remained poor [15], largely because of the tendency of HNSCC tumors to disseminate to the regional lymph nodes, although they rarely metastasize to distant organs. In these patients, survival is decreased by one half as compared to patients without nodal metastasis [16]. A more aggressive or novel treatment of such cancers at the greatest risk of dissemination is likely to improve long-term survival. Hence, there is an urgent need to understand the mechanism(s) of metastatic spread of tumor cells to lymph nodes and eventually to other sites. Our aim in this study was to assess the role of CCRs in metastasis of HNSCC to regional lymph nodes.

Molecules regulating metastatic tumor dissemination to specific anatomical sites have to be constitutively expressed on these cells, and to have the ability

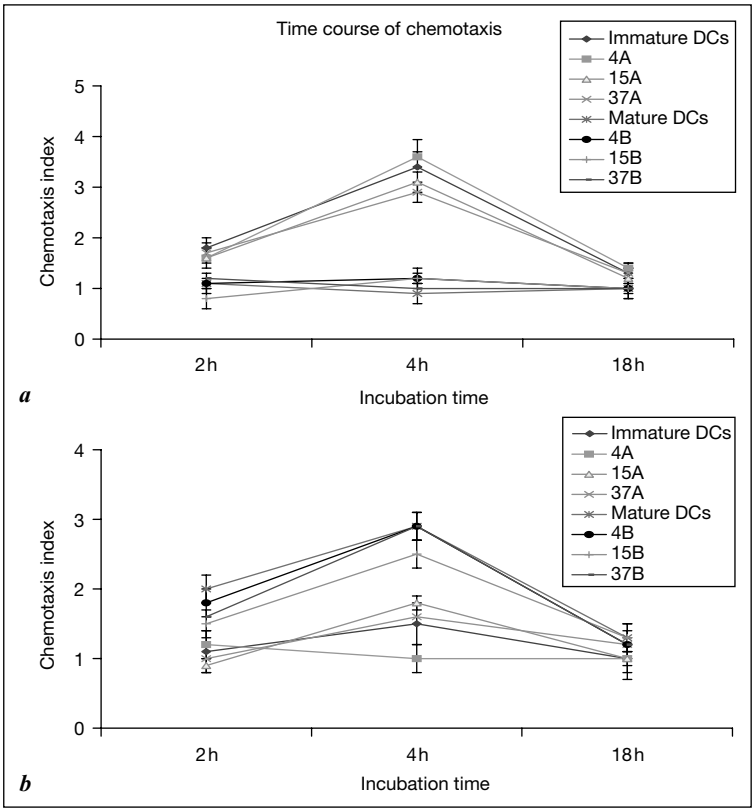


Fig. 4. Migration assay of HNSCC cells in response to chemokines in vitro. A = Primary cells; B = metastatic cells. Chemotaxis of 3 sets of paired HNSCC cell lines was measured in 96-well chemotaxis chambers at the concentrations previously determined to give optimal migration (500 ng/ml), after 2, 4 or 18 h of incubation with CCL. Immature and mature DCs were used as controls. CCR6 ligand (MIP-3α; ***a***) and CCR7 ligand (MIP-3β and 6Ckine/SLC; ***b***) were used as chemoattractants in this assay. Mean ± SD, n = 6.

to mediate tumor cell invasion into tissues that are needed to provide supportive microenvironments for tumor growth. Such a process requires the expression of a distinct receptor repertoire by the target cells. Chemokines perfectly fulfill these criteria [17, 18]. Indeed metastatic sites have been correlated with CCR expression in the metastatic tumor cells [8, 9], although our report is novel in indicating a role for loss of expression of the inflammatory CCR6 during the metastatic process. Whether metastasis takes place via hematogenous (similar to memory T lymphocytes) or lymphatic channels (such as DCs) is not presently clear from our findings (fig. 2), although certainly both mechanisms may be

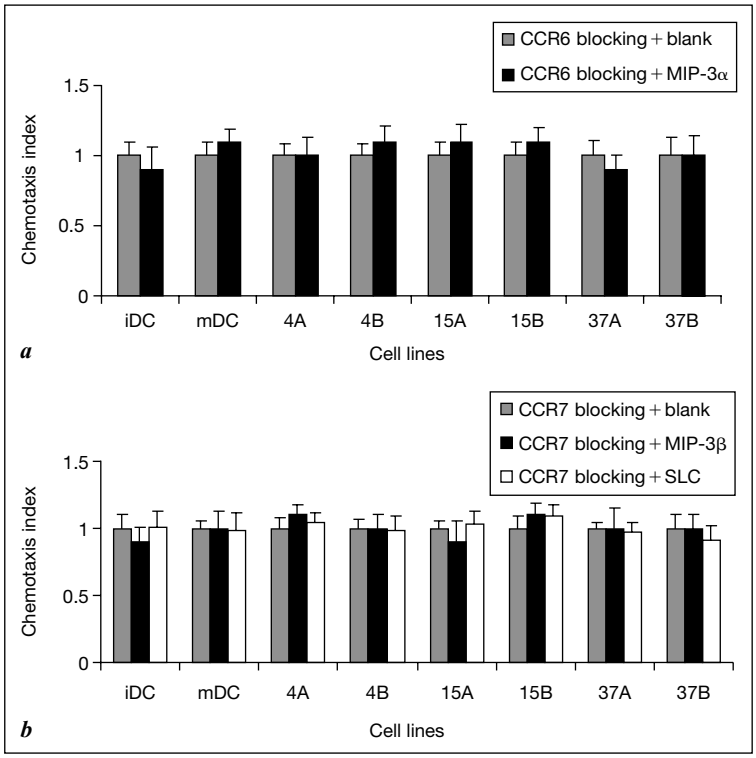


Fig. 5. Abrogation of CCR-induced migration in vitro by preincubation of metastatic HNSCC cell lines with blocking anti-CCR6 (***a***) and anti-CCR7 (***b***) mAbs. iDC = Immature DC; mDC = mature DC; A = primary cell line; B = metastatic cell line.

imported depending on angiolymphatic structures invaded in proximity of CCR7-expressing tumor cells.

By screening for CCR expression in HNSCC primary tumors and metastatic cells, we found a consistent pattern of the CCR6 downregulation and upregulation of CCR7 in selected metastatic cell lines and tissues. No other pattern was seen reliably in metastatic tumor specimens. On the other hand, our data indicate a remarkably consistent pattern of CCR6 and CCR7 expression in primary versus metastatic tumor cells, with rare exceptions in our analyses. While others have suggested that CCR7 upregulation in tumor cells might facilitate their emigration from tissues, the consistent loss of expression of CCR6 in our system is novel and reminiscent of the response of immune cells to inflammatory stimuli (fig. 4). For example, after antigen uptake or other stimuli that activate their progression to mature DCs, CCR6 expression is lost, while CCR7 is

significantly upregulated. Emigration from peripheral sites and trafficking to regional lymph nodes usually leads to interaction with other immune cells. While CCR7 is also used by circulating naïve and memory T cells, we would expect that metastatic HNSCC cells are likely to access cervical lymph nodes using afferent lymphatics, similar to DCs. However, it is important to note that our data do not currently distinguish between vascular pathways used for this phenomenon, as our studies only used DCs as controls in qRT-PCR and migration studies [12] (fig. 3 and 4). Lymphangiogenesis is not well understood currently, including the ligand-mediated signals related to embolism and implantation into regional lymph nodes. Growth of lymphatic channels and blood vessels may predispose tumors with metastatic potential, through CCR7 upregulation, to access lymph nodes by one of these routes. This mechanism points to the ability of more aggressive tumor cells to cooperate functional characteristics of normal leukocytes (fig. 2), and our CCR blocking studies suggest novel antimetastatic therapies for patients with early tumors (fig. 5), perhaps enabling less aggressive or more successful surgical therapy.

The abundant expression of the homeostatic chemokine SLC (a ligand of CCR7) in lymph nodes makes it a likely candidate to attract CCR7+ tumor cells [19], as suggested previously for dissemination of melanoma [10] and adult T cell leukemias [20]. On the other hand, CCR6 downregulation in metastatic tumor cells indicates that the coordinate expression of CCR6 and CCR7 may be important in orchestrating HNSCC metastasis. Remarkably, our observations in fresh tumor specimens were maintained in cell lines cultured in vitro for months at a time. This also helps rule out that, in fresh metastatic tumor biopsies, CCR7 upregulation was simply the result of immune cell contamination of our tumor RNA. In addition, the pattern of this coordinate CCR expression in metastases indicates that the upregulation of CCR7 in these tumor cells is not due to the lymph node microenvironment in fresh tissues, since even in metastatic tumor cell lines, this effect is maintained over long periods in culture. The finding that increasingly metastatic tumor derivatives in a metastatic mouse model showed quantitatively increased CCR7 expression demonstrates the in vivo importance of this phenomenon, in a completely separate experimental system.

We also show that CCR7 is functional and appears to lead to expected signals after ligand binding [12]. The normal response to ligand occupancy of cytokine and chemokine receptors is ‘desensitization’ or downregulation [21]. Using paired autologous HNSCC primary/metastatic cell line pairs, we studied CCR6 and CCR7 responses after treatment with their ligands, MIP-3α and MIP-3β, respectively, at a concentration of 500 ng/ml for 4 h by flow cytometry. Figure 5 shows that primary tumor cells downregulate (internalize) CCR6 in response to MIP-3α treatment, while metastatic cells manifest this effect after

treatment with the CCR7 ligand (MIP-3β). Treatment of each cell line (primary tumor cells with MIP-3β and metastatic cells with MIP-3α) did not result in receptor downregulation.

Thus, a specific and differential expression pattern of CCR6, CCR7 and their ligands appears to play an important role in determining the metastatic potential of HNSCC cells. This program is manifested by tumor cells, as their migration appears to be regulated by the loss of CCR6 expression, acting as the brake, and gain of expression of CCR7, acting as the accelerator, leading to migration of tumor cells to proximal lymphoid tissues. Although the organ predilection of metastatic cells might ultimately depend on multiple CCR-CCL interactions as we encountered here, rather than a single interaction, our data suggest that inhibition of CCR7 signaling could be a clinically useful target for therapy in the prevention of HNSCC metastasis. Further work is under way to determine metastatic pathways responsible for tumor cell CCR-associated metastasis, in proinflammatory, nuclear-factor-κB-mediated signaling pathways [22, 23]. Preventing such a poor prognostic feature in this disease would likely enable more successful locoregional tumor control and improve survival, even with the current surgical and/or chemoradiotherapeutic modalities.

Acknowledgements

This work was supported by the American Head and Neck Society/American Academy of Otolaryngology-Head and Neck Surgery, the University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute and Eye and Ear Foundation, and the Stout Family Fund for Head and Neck Cancer Research.

References

1 Fidler IJ, Hart IR: Biological diversity in metastatic neoplasms: Origins and implications. Science 1982;217:998–1003.
2 Liotta LA: An attractive force in metastasis. Nature 2001;410:24–25.
3 Liotta LA, Saidel MG, Kleinerman J: The significance of hematogenous tumor cell clumps in the metastatic process. Cancer Res 1976;36:889–894.
4 Nicolson GL: Molecular mechanisms of cancer metastasis: Tumor and host properties and the role of oncogenes and suppressor genes. Curr Opin Oncol 1991;3:75–92.
5 Chambers AF, Groom AC, MacDonald IC: Dissemination and growth of cancer cells in metastatic sites. Nat Rev Cancer 2002;2:563–572.
6 Muller A, Homey B, Soto H, et al: Involvement of chemokine receptors in breast cancer metastasis. Nature 2001;410:50–56.
7 Strieter RM: Chemokines: Not just leukocyte chemoattractants in the promotion of cancer. Nat Immunol 2001;2:285–286.
8 Dellacasagrande J, Schreurs OJ, Hofgaard PO, et al: Liver metastasis of cancer facilitated by chemokine receptor CCR6. Scand J Immunol 2003;57:534–544.
9 Mashino K, Sadanaga N, Yamaguchi H, et al: Expression of chemokine receptor CCR7 is associated with lymph node metastasis of gastric carcinoma. Cancer Res 2002;62:2937–2941.

10 Wiley HE, Gonzalez EB, Maki W, et al: Expression of CC chemokine receptor-7 and regional lymph node metastasis of B16 murine melanoma. J Natl Cancer Inst 2001;93:1638–1643.
11 Taichman RS, Cooper C, Keller ET, et al: Use of the stromal cell-derived factor-1/CXCR4 pathway in prostate cancer metastasis to bone. Cancer Res 2002;62:1832–1837.
12 Wang J, Xi L, Hunt JL, et al: Expression pattern of chemokine receptor 6 (CCR6) and CCR7 in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck identifies a novel metastatic phenotype. Cancer Res 2004;64:1861–1866.
13 Scotton CJ, Wilson JL, Milliken D, et al: Epithelial cancer cell migration: A role for chemokine receptors? Cancer Res 2001;61:4961–4965.
14 Zhang X, Liu Y, Gilcrease MZ, et al: A lymph node metastatic mouse model reveals alterations of metastasis-related gene expression in metastatic human oral carcinoma sublines selected from a poorly metastatic parental cell line. Cancer 2002;95:1663–1672.
15 Greenlee RT, Hill-Harmon MB, Murray T, et al: Cancer statistics 2001. CA Cancer J Clin 2001; 51:15–36.
16 Genden EM, Ferlito A, Bradley PJ, et al: Neck disease and distant metastases. Oral Oncol 2003; 39:207–212.
17 Hedrick JA, Zlotnik A: Identification and characterization of a novel beta chemokine containing six conserved cysteines. J Immunol 1997;159:1589–1593.
18 Campbell JJ, Hedrick J, Zlotnik A, et al: Chemokines and the arrest of lymphocytes rolling under flow conditions. Science 1998;279:381–384.
19 Gunn MD, Tangemann K, Tam C, et al: A chemokine expressed in lymphoid high endothelial venules promotes the adhesion and chemotaxis of naive T lymphocytes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1998;95:258–263.
20 Hasegawa H, Nomura T, Kohno M, et al: Increased chemokine receptor CCR7/EBI1 expression enhances the infiltration of lymphoid organs by adult T-cell leukemia cells. Blood 2000;95:30–38.
21 Vila-Coro AJ, Mellado M, Martin de Ana A, et al: Characterization of RANTES- and aminooxypentane-RANTES-triggered desensitization signals reveals differences in recruitment of the G protein-coupled receptor complex. J Immunol 1999;163:3037–3044.
22 Chandrasekar B, Melby PC, Sarau HM, et al: Chemokine-cytokine cross-talk: The ELR+ CXC chemokine LIX (CXCL5) amplifies a proinflammatory cytokine response via a phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase-NF-kappa B pathway. J Biol Chem 2003;278:4675–4686.
23 Schwarz M, Murphy PM: Kaposi's sarcoma-associated herpesvirus G protein-coupled receptor constitutively activates NF-kappa B and induces proinflammatory cytokine and chemokine production via a C-terminal signaling determinant. J Immunol 2001;167:505–513.

Robert L. Ferris, MD, PhD
Departments of Otolaryngology and Immunology
University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute
Hillman Cancer Center – Research Wing, Room 1.19d
5117 Centre Avenue, Pittsburgh, PA 15213 (USA)
Tel. +1 412 623 7738, Fax +1 412 623 1415, E-Mail ferrisrl@upmc.edu

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 134–150

p53-Based Immunotherapy of Cancer

Albert B. De Leo

University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute, Division of Basic Research and Department of Pathology, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, Pittsburgh, Pa., USA

Abstract

Genetic alterations in *p53* are common to a wide range of human tumors, including squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck. Given the need for novel adjuvant therapies for this disease and the renewed interest in immunotherapy as an adjuvant therapy, p53 has become an attractive candidate for vaccines to treat patients. Although *p53* is frequently mutated, the remainder of the molecule keeps its wild-type sequence (wt). As a consequence, several nonmutated peptides can be processed from the altered p53 molecules and presented by tumor cells for T cell recognition. Thus, the targeting of wt p53 peptides represents an approach to developing broadly applicable cancer vaccines. Like most things, however, targeting p53 seems more difficult than originally thought. Whether these difficulties can be circumvented remains to be determined. The development of p53-based vaccines over the past decade is reviewed together with the promising initial findings of their clinical introduction.

The potential of augmenting the immune system of patients with cancer to eradicate their tumors, which has been facilitated by advances in molecular immunology, is attracting greater attention now than at any previous time. As the survival of patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (HNSCC) has not improved significantly in over 30 years, novel adjuvant therapies are being sought for the treatment of this disease [1]. Preclinical and clinical evidence strongly indicates that host defense against progressive tumor growth is dependent on T-cell-mediated antitumor immune responses [2]. Whereas CD8+ cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) are considered the critical effectors for eradication, CD4+ T lymphocytes or T helper (Th) cells have been found to be critical for the maintenance of antitumor immunity [3–5].

Both of these T cell subsets recognize short peptides or 'epitopes' derived from proteins present in cells that presented on the cell surface in association with class I or II major histocompatibility complex allelic molecules [6, 7]. In humans, these molecules are termed human lymphocyte antigens or HLA. The development and clinical introduction of melanoma vaccines for inducing and/or enhancing T-cell-mediated antitumor immune responses have created an opportunity for developing comparable vaccines for carcinomas, including HNSCC.

Nearly all the human tumor antigens being used in developing cancer vaccines are tumor-associated determinants. They represent nonmutated peptides derived from 3 distinct groups of proteins [8]. These groups can be distinguished by their patterns of expression in tumors and normal adult cells. One determinant group is derived from tissue-specific or differentiation antigens that are overexpressed in tumors relative to normal cells. They are 'self' epitopes. The second group is derived from proteins expressed in the testes, but not normal cells. Epigenetic and/or genetic events result in activation of genes encoding these 'cancer-testes' or 'cancer-germline' proteins. Their lack of expression on normal cells and inappropriate expression in a wide range of tumors makes them immunologically 'nonself' in nature and enhances their potential for use in cancer vaccines. The third determinant group is derived from a variety of gene products involved in cell cycle regulation. Loss of their functional activities is a critical event in transformation. Many of these proteins are products of oncogenes or tumor suppressor genes; p53 is a prime example of the latter group of gene products.

Immune Targeting of p53

p53 was initially identified as a transformation-related antigen using antibodies present in the sera of mice hyperimmunized against chemically induced sarcomas [9]. In these studies, p53 expression was detected at elevated levels in cells transformed by a variety of agents. A subsequent study by Crawford et al. [10] identified anti-p53 IgG antibodies in the sera of some patients with cancer and, thereby, established the immunogenicity of p53 in humans and the concomitant presence of anti-p53 T cell as well as B cell responses in these individuals. In nearly all cases, the tumors of p53-seropositive patients have been found to express elevated levels of p53 [11–14].

A key function of p53 is to prevent DNA replication following DNA damage due to a variety of causes, such as radiation [15]. It does so by blocking replication until DNA repair has occurred. Following the identification of p53 as a tumor antigen, alterations in *p53* have been shown to be the most

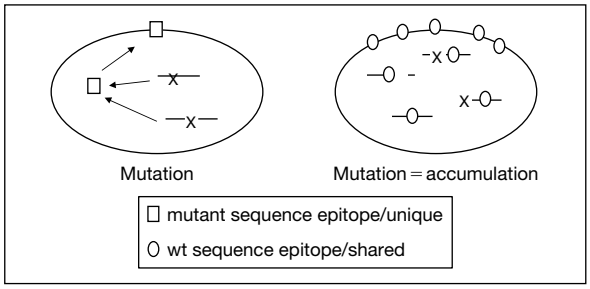


Fig. 1. Classes of CTL-defined p53 tumor antigens.

frequently occurring genetic event associated with human cancer [16–18]. At least 50% of all human tumors analyzed contain genetic alterations in *p53.* For the most part, the frequency of *p53* genetic alterations is based on sequence analysis of *p53* exons 5–8, which encode the DNA binding region of the molecule. When all the *p53* exons (exons 2–11) as well as intron/exon junctions are analyzed, as has recently been done for a group of HNSCC tumors [19, 20], the incidence of genetic defects in *p53* approached 80%.

In normal cells, wild-type (wt) p53 molecules are sequestered in the nucleus and have a relatively short half-life. Missense mutation of *p53*, however, is frequently associated with stabilization (increased half-life) of mutated p53 molecules in the cytosol of tumors, termed 'accumulation or overexpression'. As the accumulation of mutated p53 in tumors resembles the overexpression phenotype associated with many shared tumor-associated antigens being targeted for use in cancer vaccines, one can presume that enhanced processing of the accumulating mutant p53 molecules in the tumor cytosol could also occur. In contrast to most other tumor-associated antigens, however, 2 classes of p53 peptides can be presented: epitopes containing the missense mutation(s) and nonmutated, wt sequence epitopes (fig. 1). The former would be 'nonself' epitopes, whereas the latter are 'self'. In contrast to the missense mutation, which could generate a single mutant epitope, an array of wt p53 peptides can be derived from the remainder of the mutated protein. Since the constraints of antigen processing and presentation would limit the presentation of mutant p53 peptides to tumors of only a few individuals, vaccines targeting these determinants would essentially need to be 'custom made' and of limited applicability. Quite the opposite applies to wt p53 epitopes, which would have greater probabilities of being presented by many tumors for T cell recognition. They represent 'shared' tumor-associated antigens, and vaccines targeting them would be broadly applicable [21, 22]. The development and clinical introduction of p53-based vaccines, however, need to surmount many of the difficulties

that face cancer immunotherapy [2, 23–25], as well as several issues and concerns that are specific to targeting p53 and evolve from the genetic events leading to loss of its function, which is a key event in oncogenesis.

Critical Issues in the Development of p53-Based Cancer Vaccines

When the target of an immunization is a 'self' tumor antigen, rather than an infectious agent, concerns and issues involving immunological tolerance and its impact of host responsiveness to 'self' tumor antigens need to be considered [26, 27]. This is in addition to the variety of mechanisms that can contribute to 'tumor escape', including immunoselection or immunoediting [28, 29]. All of these concerns and issues impact on any effort to develop effective cancer vaccines. In addition, the options that are available for preparing cancer vaccines need to be evaluated. The relative merits of employing intact recombinant proteins, protein fragments or peptides need to be evaluated as well as various chemical, viral and cellular vehicles for their delivery. In many respects, the development of p53-based immunotherapy has greatly benefited from the knowledge and insights gained from preclinical studies using p53-based vaccines in murine tumor model systems [22, 26, 27, 30, 31].

CTL-Defined wt p53 Peptides

Unlike most of the CTL-defined human tumor peptides identified, no HLA-class-I-restricted CTL-defined wt p53 peptides have been identified using antitumor effectors derived from peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) obtained from patients with cancer. Instead, they have been identified by 'reverse immunology'. Essentially all the CTL-defined wt p53 peptides have been identified using a combination of sequence motifs of peptides binding to specific class I HLA allelic molecules and algorithm predictions of binding to these molecules [7, 32–41]. Due to its high frequency of expression in the patient populations being studied, the focus of this effort has been to identify HLA-A*0201 (HLA-A2)-restricted epitopes. Using HLA-A2 transgenic mice as well as PBMCs obtained from normal donors, a series of CTL-defined wt p53 peptides have been identified. In vitro studies are then required to define which peptides can be classified as naturally processed and presented HLA-A2-restricted CTL-defined wt p53 peptides. In this manner, wt $p53_{65–73,\ 149–157,\ 189–196,\ 217–225,\ 264–173}$ and $p53_{322–330}$ are being studied for their potential use in p53-based cancer vaccines for patients expressing the HLA-A2.1 allele.

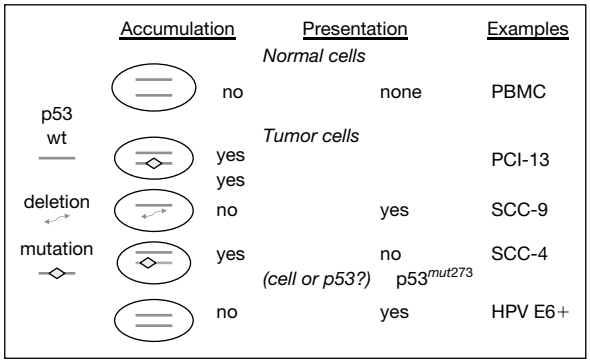


Fig. 2. Phenotypes of p53 expressed in tumors and their abilities to present wt p53 peptides for CTL recognition.

Nature and Sites of Genetic Alterations in p53 Can Influence Presentation of wt p53 Epitopes

A surprising outcome of the initial studies identifying CTL-defined wt p53 peptides were the repeated observations that (1) accumulation of mutant p53 in a tumor cell did not automatically confer sensitivity to cytolysis by anti-wt p53 CTLs and (2) a variety of mechanisms can influence the processing and presentation of wt p53 epitopes for immune recognition (fig. 2). It has become increasingly apparent that the nature and sites of p53 missense mutation influence antigen processing of p53 molecules [34, 36, 42, 43]. Furthermore, oncogenic events involving human papillomavirus (HPV) infection or *mdm2* amplification can also impact on processing of p53 epitopes for T cell recognition [43–45]. The HPV E6 contributes to transformation by binding to p53 and enhancing its ubiquitation and proteasomal degradation. This can lead to loss of p53 function and contribute to the transformation process at the same time enhancing the presentation of wt p53 epitopes. Consequently, an HPV+ HNSCC could present wt p53 epitopes in the absence of accumulation of wt p53. Genetic alterations in *mdm2*, an oncogene that controls ubiquitation and proteasomal degradation of p53, are frequently encountered in tumors. Many of these tumor cells can accumulate wt p53 and present wt p53 epitopes. Aside from the defects in the antigen processing machinery components in tumors [46], which can hinder the successful outcome of any T-cell-based immunotherapy, a particularly critical challenge for a successful outcome for wt p53-based immunization is knowledge of p53 expressed in the tumor and predicting tumor presentation of the targeted wt p53 peptides.

Immunological Tolerance Plays a Role in Defining Patients' Responsiveness to 'Self' Tumor Peptides

By the very nature of the 'self' versus 'nonself' concept that governs the immune system, effective immunity against 'self' tumor antigens, such as wt p53 peptides, must breach the barriers to protect the body from inappropriate and potentially deleterious autoimmune responses. While a controlled 'antitumor autoimmune' response may be the desired effect of vaccination targeting 'self' tumor antigens, it must break the immunological tolerance to these epitopes. This subtlety of targeting 'self' tumor peptides is particularly important in the case of wt p53 epitopes. Most of the other 'self' tumor antigens being targeted with vaccines, such as those derived from tissue-specific or differentiation antigens, have limited tissue distribution. As a result, these antigens are not readily available in the thymus, and immune responsiveness to them is governed by peripheral tolerance. In contrast, p53 is expressed by all nucleated cells and readily available in the thymus for induction of tolerance to p53. Based on in vitro immunological studies involving PBMCs, it is apparent that cells from only about a third of PBMCs obtained from normal donors and patients with HNSCC were responsive to in vitro stimulation (IVS) with autologous dendritic cells (DCs) pulsed with wt p53 peptides. The DCs were chosen for this assay as they are considered the only antigen-presenting cells capable of inducing antigen-specific responses from naïve T cells. The anti-wt p53 T cells induced from these individuals displayed a low-to-intermediate affinity for their ligands and a limited repertoire of T cell receptor usage [36, 47–49]. To what extent the weak immunogenicity of wt p53 peptides reflects deletion or anergy of anti-wt p53 T cells is an open question [26, 27], but preclinical murine studies have clearly demonstrated that the anti-wt p53 CTLs induced in p53 null mice are more reactive than the anti-wt p53 CTLs induced in normal p53 (+/+) mice [30, 31]. Most importantly, the adoptive transfer into normal mice of these high-affinity anti-wt p53 CTLs as well as anti-wt p53 Th cells obtained from p53 null mice did not result in deleterious autoimmune side effects [30, 31].

Circumventing the Nonresponsiveness of PBMCs to CTL-Defined wt p53 Peptides

One well-established method for enhancing the immunogenicity of a T-cell-defined epitope is to identify amino acid exchanges in the peptide sequence that enhance its binding to HLA molecules and/or interaction with the T cell receptor and permit expansion of T cells capable of recognizing the parental peptide [50–53]. For the wt $p53_{264–272}$ and $p53_{149–157}$ peptides, this approach was

Table 1. IVS responses of PBMCs obtained from HLA-A2+ normal donors to wt and the T50L variant p53 peptides

Donor No.	$p53_{25–35}$	$p53_{65–73}$	$p53_{149–157}$	$p53_{217–225}$	$p53_{264–272}$	$p53_{322–330}$	p53 T150L
1	−	+	+	−	−	−	n.d.
2	−	+	+	−	−	−	n.d.
3	−	−	−	−	−	+	−
4	−	+	+	+	+	+	−
5	−	−	−	−	+	+	+
6	−	−	−	−	+	−	−
7	−	+	+	−	−	−	n.d.
8	−	+	−	−	−	−	n.d.
9	−	−	−	−	−	−	+
10	−	−	−	−	+	−	−
Total	0/10	5/10	4/10	1/10	4/10	3/10	2/6

Responder cell reactivity was tested in ELISPOT and/or cytotoxicity assays. n.d. = not determined.

successful in optimizing the immunogenicities of these two epitopes. In the case of the wt $p53_{264–272}$ peptide (LLGRNSFEV), which contains a favorable amino acid (leucine) at the anchor positions 2 and 9, the exchange of tryptophan for phenylalanine at position 7 of the peptide, L270W, increased its immunogenicity by enhancing the stability of the HLA/peptide/T cell receptor complex, as evidenced by an increased affinity for the parental peptide of anti-wt $p53_{264–272}$ CTL induced using the optimized peptide. The amino acid exchange of the favorable amino acid (leucine) for an unfavorable amino acid (threonine) in anchor position 2 of the wt $p53_{149–157}$ peptide (STPPPGTRV) increased the binding affinity of the T150L peptide for HLA-A2.1 molecules and enhanced its immunogenicity [54]. These findings demonstrate the utility of using amino acid exchanges to optimize the efficacy of cancer vaccines targeting 'self' tumor peptides.

Patterns of IVS Responsiveness of Normal Donor PBMCs to CTL-Defined wt p53 Peptides

As multiple CTL-defined wt p53 peptides have been identified and IVS responsiveness to two of them have shown to be sporadic [36, 47–49], the question of defining their relative immunogenicities becomes an issue that needs to be resolved to proceed with the development of multiepitope p53-based vaccines. In this regard, we examined the IVS responsiveness of PBMCs obtained

from 10 normal donors to a panel of 5 wt p53 peptides and the optimized $p53^{T150L}$ peptide [Chikamatsu and De Leo, unpubl. results]. The reactivities of the outgrowing lymphocytes for wt p53 peptides were determined using ELISPOT and cytotoxic assays with peptide-pulsed T2 target cells as the target cells [36]. As indicated in table 1, the most frequently detected IVS responses were to the wt $p53_{65–73}$, $p53_{149–157}$ and $p53_{264–272}$ peptides. The response rate to wt $p53_{149–157}$ was further enhanced by the use of the optimized T150L peptide. The results of this ongoing analysis require IVS analysis of additional PBMC samples to be significant. Nonetheless, they indicate that all PBMCs from all the 10 donors tested responded to either wt $p53_{65–73}$, $p53_{149–157}$ or $p53_{264–272}$ peptides, most of the donors responding to 2 of the peptides. We are concluding, therefore, that these 3 wt p53 peptides would be the most suitable consideration in the construction of a multi-CTL peptide p53 vaccine.

Th-Cell-Defined wt p53 Peptides

The identification of anti-p53 IgG antibodies in the sera of some patients with cancer is indicative of anti-p53 CD4+ Th cell responses induced in these individuals. Unfortunately, it is also associated with a poor prognosis, which might be attributable to a predominating Th2 antitumor immune response in these patients rather than the Th1-biased response that is generally associated with tumor eradication. Preclinical studies have demonstrated that vaccines that employ Th- as well as CTL-defined epitopes derived from the same tumor antigen show enhanced efficacy due to the established role of the antigen-specific CD4+ T cells in the induction and maintenance of effective antitumor immunity [55, 56]. Consequently, the identification of Th-cell-defined p53 peptides would be useful for not only enhancing the efficacy of p53-based immunization but also to possibly 'reverse' the Th2-biased responses of p53-seropositive patients. Several in vitro studies have focused on proliferative T-cell-mediated responses to intact p53 protein or p53 peptides [13, 14, 57]. The study of Fujita et al. [58] identified several immunogenic HLA-class-II-restricted wt p53 peptides. The abilities of these peptides to be naturally presented, however, were not established in their study. In our recent study, which utilized recombinant wt p53 protein-pulsed DCs as the antigen presenting cells and algorithm-predicted HLA-DRB1*040-binding 15-mer peptides [59], we identified wt $p53_{110–124}$ peptide as a naturally presented HLA-DRB1*0401-restricted epitope [60]. In in vitro experiments using the autologous PCI-13 HNSCC system available in our laboratory, the addition of anti-wt $p53_{110–124}$ CD4+ T cells to PBMCs was shown to increase the total number of CD8+ T cells in the IVS cultures and, more relevantly, to enhance the induction of anti-PCI-13 effectors (fig. 3). This effect was dependent

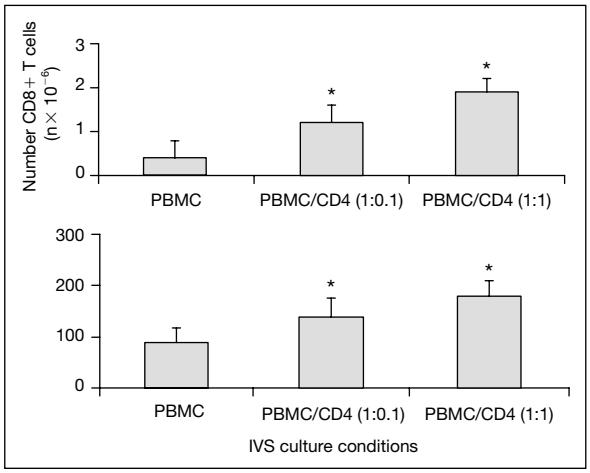


Fig. 3. IVS of PBMCs with autologous anti-wt $p53_{110–124}$ CD4+ Th cells enhances the expansion of CD8+ T cells and the generation of anti-PCI-13 effectors. *$p < 0.05$.

on the ratio PBMC/CD4 cells in the cultures. These results are consistent with the concept of developing a multi-epitope p53 vaccine that would employ Th-defined as well as CTL-defined p53 peptides to maximize its efficacy.

Immunoselection or Immunoediting Relative to p53: Sites of Mutation in p53 in Tumors of HLA-A2+ Patients with HNSCC

Although missense mutations in *p53* in an incredible number of human tumors have been identified, the HLA haplotype of these tumors is unknown. Several years ago, Wiedenfeld et al. [61] broached the question of whether the sites of *p53* missense mutation occurring in lung tumors outgrowing in HLA-A2+ individuals showed a potential for a disproportionate incidence of mutations occurring within putative HLA-A2-restricted p53 epitopes. Hoffmann et al. [47, 49] have shown that an interesting inverse correlation appears to exist between the IVS responsiveness to the wt $p53_{264–272}$ peptide and/or frequencies of anti-wt $p53_{264–272}$ CTLs present in PBMCs obtained from HLA-A2+ patients with HNSCC and the mutational site/level of p53 expressed in their tumors. The results obtained from 30 patients tended to distinguish these individuals into 2 groups: nonresponsive and responsive. The tumor specimens obtained from these 30 patients were then analyzed for p53 accumulation by immunohistochemistry and genotyped for alterations in *p53* exons 5–8. The tumors of 'nonresponsive' patients had a p53 phenotype consistent with presentation of the wt $p53_{264–272}$

peptide (accumulation of mutant p53), while the 'responders' had tumors expressing normal levels of wt p53 and, presumably, a low potential to present the epitope. While several explanations are possible, these results are consistent with immunoselection of 'epitope loss' tumors. Another involves the possibility that the SCCHN tumors expressing wt p53 might also be HPV+. Presumably, in the presence of HPV E6, tumors need not accumulate mutant p53 to present the $p53_{264–272}$ peptide for CTL recognition [43].

Of the 30 tumor specimens analyzed, 15 had genetic alterations within *p53* exons 5–8. Six of the tumors had missense mutations within 3 CTL-defined epitopes, $p53_{217–225}$, $p53_{149–157}$ and $p53_{264–273}$, and 1 had a mutation at codon 273, which is known to block processing of the $p53_{264–272}$ peptide [34, 42]. The mutation in the $p53_{217–225}$ epitope, Y220C, was detected in 2 of the tumors. Codons 273 and 220 are considered p53 mutational 'hot spots'. Mutation at *p53* codon 273 is the most frequently detected *p53* mutation in human cancers (~12%), while mutation at codon 220 ranks 6th with a frequency of approximately 1% [18]. These values are independent of tumor type and do not take into account the HLA haplotype of the tumor. Consequently, it would appear that a disproportionate number of missense mutations are occurring within the regions encoding the wt $p53_{149–157}$ and $p53_{217–220}$ epitopes in HNSCC of HLA-A2+ patients. The question of whether the altered p53 sequences yield T-cell-defined mutant p53 epitopes needs to be studied. Of interest, however, is the fact that 2 of the 3 missense mutations detected that occurred within the $p53_{149–157}$ epitope were nonconserved amino acid exchanges at the anchor positions of the peptide. These mutant peptides, even if processed, would most likely be weakly immunogenic due to unfavorable amino acid substitutions at anchor residue positions and unable to induce a robust antimutant p53 immune response and tumor eradication. Overall, the skewed pattern of *p53* missense mutation in the tumors of HLA-A2+ patients with HNSCC strongly suggests that wt p53 peptides, although 'self' antigens, are surprisingly immunogenic. Given that mutation of *p53* is considered an early event in the development of HNSCC, the immunological pressure exerted by anti-wt p53 CTL cells could readily promote the outgrowth of 'p53 epitope loss' tumors. These observations imply that robust multiepitope anti-p53 immune responses are needed in order to minimize outgrowth of 'epitope loss' variants, which tumors can readily achieve this due to their inherent genetic instability and heterogeneity.

Active and Passive p53-Based Immunizations

As in any vaccine development program, the optimization of the immunogen and vaccine vehicle is critical. A wide range of p53-based vaccines and

immunization protocols has been evaluated. Murine studies have shown that effective anti-wt p53 T-cell-mediated antitumor responses could be induced by (1) wt p53 peptides or recombinant p53 protein admixed with chemical adjuvants or pulsed onto bone-marrow-derived DCs [22, 26], as well as (2) DCs transfected with nonviral plasmids or viruses encoding intact p53 or fragments [62–64]. In addition, p53 nonviral plasmid DNA vaccines biolistically (gene gun) delivered as well as recombinant viral vectors expressing p53 have also been shown to be effective in inducing antitumor immunity [65–67]. In vitro studies using PBMCs obtained from normal donors and patients have shown the utility of peptide or protein-pulsed DCs [36, 47, 60] or DCs transfected with recombinant adenoviral constructs expressing p53 for induction/expansion of anti-wt p53 CTL and Th cells [68]. Complementing these active p53-based immunizations has been the evaluation of adoptive transfer of anti-wt p53 CTLs and Th cells to induce tumor eradication. The use of high-affinity anti-wt p53 T cells derived from p53 null mice and HLA-A2.1-transgenic p53 null mice has been shown to be very effective in inducing tumor eradication [30, 31, 69]. Although of high affinity, these cells do not react with normal cells and did not induce any detectable evidence of autoimmunity. The concept of genetically engineering high-affinity anti-p53 human T cell effectors by transfecting PBMCs with cDNA encoding the T cell receptor derived from antihuman p53 murine CTLs is being actively pursued [70].

Clinical p53 Vaccine Trials

Several phase I/II studies on p53-based immunotherapy of cancer patients utilizing peptide-based or recombinant viral vectors expressing wt p53 are in progress. They are based on the promising results of preclinical murine tumor model studies using transplantable tumors that have repeatedly demonstrated the efficacy of peptide as well as recombinant viral vector-based p53 vaccines targeting mutant as well as wt p53 epitopes in tumor eradication. Of particular translational relevancy were the murine studies employing DCs pulsed with protein or peptide or transfected with adeno/p53 as vaccines.

The concept of replacing mutant p53 in a patient's tumor with functional wt p53 delivered using recombinant adenoviral/p53 constructs preceded the use of this construct in p53-based immunotherapy. An underreported aspect of replacement adeno/p53 gene therapy trials is whether any 'bystander' anti-p53 immune responses were induced in these patients receiving this gene therapy [71]. The great advantage of using recombinant protein or viral vectors encoding p53 as immunogen is that it permits multiple CTL and Th epitopes to be presented independently of knowing the identity of these epitopes and patients'

HLA haplotypes. The initial findings of phase I/II immunization trials of patients using either a recombinant adenovirus or canarypox virus encoding wt p53 have been reported on. Kuball et al. [72] detected antiviral immune responses but no anti-wt $p53_{264–272}$ peptide CTL responses in HLA-A2+ patients treated with a recombinant adeno/p53 vaccine. In contrast, a clinical vaccine trial involving patients with metastatic colon cancer using canarypox virus (ALVAC) encoding wt p53 administered intravenously induced or augmented humoral anti-p53 IgG responses in 3/16 patients and anti-p53 cellular responses in 4/16 [73, 74]. A clear distinction between the two trials is that the anti-p53 T cell responses in the latter trial were detected in assays using mixtures of overlapping wt p53 peptides to stimulate the T cells. The responses detected in these assays were independent of the patients' HLA haplotypes and identity of the epitopes. A third virus-based vaccine trial, which is modeled on murine studies using adenoviral/p53-transfected DC vaccine, is listed by the NCI for patients with lung cancer as being in progress.

One wt p53 peptide-based vaccine trial has been initiated using either DC or chemical adjuvants. This vaccine trial is for HLA-A2+ patients with low burden ovarian cancer, and the patients are receiving wt $p53_{264–272}$ peptide-based vaccines [75]. One group of 5 patients received the peptide pulsed onto autologous DCs and administered intravenously, while the second group of 6 patients received the peptide subcutaneously admixed with ISA-51 and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor. Both groups of patients also received low-dose interleukin 2 for 10 days beginning with cycle 3 of the vaccination protocol. Immunological monitoring showed the induction in individuals of both groups of anti-wt p53 CTL responses in ELISPOT and tetramer assays. This was accompanied by increased progression-free survival times.

Conclusion

High stakes and expectations are associated with any experimental cancer therapy. The numerous concerns and issues associated with the development of immunotherapy of cancer are well documented. Advances in molecular immunology and improved and more detailed immunological monitoring of immunized patients are enhancing the development of cancer vaccines. Compared to many of the other tumor antigens being targeted, p53 is unique in many respects. It is truly a 'self' antigen and is expressed in all nucleated cells. Despite this, no evidence of deleterious autoimmune reactions has been detected in the patients participating in the initial phase I/II p53-based immunotherapy trials. Whether the 'autoimmune response' that signals the efficacy of some melanoma trials will also be evident in patients receiving

p53-based immunotherapy is a critical unknown [76]. In addition, p53 seems to have the ability to readily 'dodge the immunological bullet'. The very nature of the genetic instability that is initiated by genetic alterations in *p53* coupled with the pressure of immunoselection/immunoediting represents a combination of influences that promote tumor escape and are, at the very least, challenging. Nonetheless, the stakes are high and nothing is impossible. It is just more difficult than initially thought.

References

1 Greenlee RT, Hill-Harmon MB, Murray T, Thun M: Cancer statistics. CA Cancer J Clin 2001; 51:15–36.
2 Rosenberg SA: Shedding light on immunotherapy for cancer. N Engl J Med 2004;350:1461–1463.
3 Toes RE, Ossendorp F, Offringa R Melief CJ: CD4 T cells and their role in antitumor immune responses. J Exp Med 1999;189:753–756.
4 Hung K, Hayashi R, Lafond-Walker A, Lowenstein C, Pardoll D, Levitsky H: The central role of CD4+ T cells in the antitumor immune response. J Exp Med 1998;188:2357–2368.
5 Ossendorp F, Mengede E, Camps M, Filius R, Melief CJ: Specific T helper cell requirement for optimal induction of cytotoxic T lymphocytes against major histocompatibility complex class II negative tumors. J Exp Med 1998;187:693–702.
6 Rotzschke O, Falk K, Deres K, Schild H, Norda M, Metzger J, Jung G, Rammensee HG: Isolation and analysis of naturally processed viral peptides as recognized by cytotoxic T cells. Nature 1990;348:252–254.
7 Falk K, Rotzschke O, Stevanovic S, Jung G, Rammensee HG: Allele-specific motifs revealed by sequencing of self-peptides eluted from MHC molecules. Nature 1991;351:290–296.
8 Renkvist N, Castelli C, Robbins PF, Parmiani G: A listing of human tumor antigens recognized by T cells. Cancer Immunol Immunother 2001;50:3–15.
9 De Leo AB, Jay G, Appella E, Dubois GC, Law LW, Old LJ: Detection of a transformation-related antigen in chemically induced sarcomas and other transformed cells of the mouse. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1979;76:2420–2424.
10 Crawford LV, Pim DC, Bulbrook RD: Detection of antibodies against the cellular protein p53 in sera from patients with breast cancer. Int J Cancer 1982;30:403–408.
11 Bourhis J, Lubin R, Roche B, Koscielny S, Bosq J, Dubois I, Talbot M, Marandas P, Schwaab G, Wibault P, Luboinski B, Eschwege F, Soussi T: Analysis of p53 serum antibodies in patients with head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. J Natl Cancer Inst 1996;88:1228–1233.
12 Soussi T: p53 antibodies in the sera of patients with various types of cancer: A review. Cancer Res 2000;60:1777–1788.
13 Houbiers JG, van der Burg SH, van de Watering LM, Tollenaar RA, Brand A, van de Velde CJ, Melief CJ: Antibodies against p53 are associated with poor prognosis of colorectal cancer. Br J Cancer 1995;72:637–641.
14 Van der Burg SH, de Cock K, Menon AG, Franken KL, Palmen M, Redeker A, Drijfhout J, Kuppen PJ, van de Velde C, Erdile L, Tollenaar RA, Melief CJ, Offringa R: Long lasting p53-specific T cell memory responses in the absence of anti-p53 antibodies in patients with resected primary colorectal cancer. Eur J Immunol 2001;31:146–155.
15 Harris CC: Structure and function of the p53 tumor suppressor gene: Clues for rational cancer therapeutic strategies. J Natl Cancer Inst 1996;88:1442–1455.
16 Hollstein M, Shomer B, Greenblatt M, Soussi T, Hovig E, Montesano R, Harris CC: Somatic point mutations in the p53 gene of human tumors and cell lines: Updated compilation. Nucleic Acids Res 1996;24:141–146.
17 Hollstein M, Sidransky D, Vogelstein B, Harris CC: p53 mutations in human cancers. Science 1991;253:49–53.

18 Oliver M, Eeles R, Hollstein M, Khah MA, Harris CL, Hainanut P: TP53 Database: new online mutation analysis and recommendations to users. Hum Mutat 2002;19:607–614.
19 Hauser U, Balz V, Carey TE, Grenman R, van Lierop A, Scheckenbach K, Bier H: Reliable detection of p53 aberrations in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck requires transcript analysis of the entire coding region. Head Neck 2002;24:868–873.
20 Balz V, Scheckenbach K, Gotte K, Bockmuhl U, Petersen I, Bier H: Is the p53 inactivation frequency in squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck underestimated? Analysis of p53 exons 2–11 and human papillomavirus 16/18 E6 transcripts in 123 unselected tumor specimens. Cancer Res 2003;63:1188–1191.
21 Nijman HW, van der Burg SH, Vierboom MP, Houbiers JG, Kast WM, Melief CJ: p53, a potential target for tumor-directed T cells. Immunol Lett 1994;40:171–178.
22 Mayordomo JI, Loftus DJ, Sakamoto H, De Cesare CM, Appasamy PM, Lotze MT, Storkus WJ, Appella E, De Leo AB: Therapy of murine tumors with p53 wild-type and mutant sequence peptide-based vaccines. J Exp Med 1996;183:1357–1365.
23 Sogn JA: Tumor immunology. The glass is half full. Immunity 1998;9:757–763.
24 Parmiani G, Castelli C, Dalerba P, Mortarini R, Rivoltini L, Marincola FM, Anichini A: Cancer immunotherapy with peptide-based vaccines. What have we achieved? Where are we going? J Natl Cancer Inst 2002;94:805–818.
25 Acres B, Beverley P, Scholl S: Tumor immunology and the battle of Waterloo. Mol Cancer Ther 2002;1:651–655.
26 Theobald M, Biggs J, Hernandez J, Lustgarten J, Labadie C, Sherman LA: Tolerance to p53 by A2.1-restricted cytotoxic T lymphocytes. J Exp Med 1997;185:833–841.
27 Hernandez J, Lee PP, Davis MM, Sherman LA: The use of HLA A2.1/p53 peptide tetramers to visualize the impact of self tolerance on the TCR repertoire. J Immunol 2000;164:596–602.
28 Khong HT, Restifo NP: Natural selection of tumor variants in the generation of 'tumor escape' phenotypes. Nat Immunol 2002;3:999–1005.
29 Dunn GP, Bruce AT, Ikeda H, Old LJ, Schreiber RD: Cancer immunoediting. From immunosurveillance to tumor escape. Nat Immunol 2002;3:991–998.
30 Vierboom MP, Nijman HW, Offringa van der Voort EI, van Hall T, van den Broek L, Fleuren GJ, Kenemans P, Kast WM, Melief CJ: Tumor eradication by wild-type p53-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes. J Exp Med 1997;186:695–704.
31 Zwaveling S, Vierboom MP, Ferreira Mota SC, Hendriks JA, Ooms ME, Sutmuller RP, Franken KL, Nijman HW, Ossendorp F, van der Burg SH, Offringa R, Melief CJ: Antitumor efficacy of wild-type p53-specific CD4+ T-helper cells. Cancer Res 2002;62:6187–6193.
32 Rammensee H, Bachmann J, Emmerich NP, Bachor OA, Stevanovic S: SYFPEITHI Database for MHC ligands and peptide motifs. Immunogenetics 1999:50:213–219.
33 Ropke M, Hald J, Guldberg P, Zeuthen J, Norgaard L, Fugger L, Svejgaard A, van der Burg S, Nijman HW, Melief CJ, Claesson MH: Spontaneous human squamous cell carcinomas are killed by a human cytotoxic T lymphocyte clone recognizing a wild-type p53-derived peptide. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1996;93:14704–14707.
34 Theobald M, Biggs J, Dittmer D, Levine AJ, Sherman LA: Targeting p53 as a general tumor antigen. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1995;92:11993–11997.
35 Gnjatic S, Cai Z, Viguier M, Chouaib S, Guillet JG, Choppin J: Accumulation of the p53 protein allows recognition by human CTL of a wild-type p53 epitope presented by breast carcinomas and melanomas. J Immunol 1998;160:328–333.
36 Chikamatsu K, Nakano K, Storkus WJ, Appella E, Lotze MT, Whiteside TL, De Leo AB: Generation of anti-p53 cytotoxic T lymphocytes from human peripheral blood using autologous dendritic cells. Clin Cancer Res 1999;5:1281–1288.
37 Eura M, Chikamatsu K, Katsura F, Obata A, Sobao Y, Takiguchi M, Song Y, Appella E, Whiteside TL, De Leo AB: A wild-type sequence p53 peptide presented by HLA-A24 induces cytotoxic T lymphocytes that recognize squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck. Clin Cancer Res 2000; 6:979–986.
38 McArdle SE, Rees RC, Mulcahy KA, Saba J, McIntyre CA, Murray AK: Induction of human cytotoxic T lymphocytes that preferentially recognise tumour cells bearing a conformational p53 mutant. Cancer Immunol Immunother 2000;49:417–425.

39 Barfoed AM, Petersen TR, Kirkin AF, Thor Straten P, Claesson MH, Zeuthen J: Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte clones, established by stimulation with the HLA- A2 binding p5365–73 wild type peptide loaded on dendritic cells in vitro, specifically recognize and lyse HLA-A2 tumour cells overexpressing the p53 protein. Scand J Immunol 2000;51:128–133.
40 Schirle M, Keilholz W, Weber B, Gouttefangeas C, Dumrese T, Becker HD, Stevanovic S, Rammensee HG: Identification of tumor-associated MHC class I ligands by a novel T cell-independent approach. Eur J Immunol 2000;30:2216–2225.
41 Wurtzen PA, Pedersen LO, Poulsen HS, Claesson MH: Specific killing of p53 mutated tumor cell lines by a cross-reactive human HLA-A2-restricted p53-specific CTL line. Int J Cancer 2001;93: 855–861.
42 Theobald M, Ruppert T, Kuckelkorn U, Hernandez J, Haussler A, Ferreira EA, Liewer U, Biggs J, Levine AJ, Huber C, Koszinowski UH, Kloetzel PM, Sherman LA: The sequence alteration associated with a mutational hotspot in p53 protects cells from lysis by cytotoxic T lymphocytes specific for a flanking peptide epitope. J Exp Med 1998:188:1017–1028.
43 Vierboom MP, Zwaveling S, Bos GMJ, Ooms M, Krietemeijer GM, Melief CJ, Offringa R: High steady-state levels of p53 are not a prerequisite for tumor eradication by wild-type p53-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes. Cancer Res 2000;60:5508–5513.
44 McKaig RG, Baric RS, Olshan AF: Human papillomavirus and head and neck cancer: Epidemiology and molecular biology. Head Neck 1998;20:250–265.
45 Lane DP, Hall PA: MDM2 – Arbiter of p53's destruction. Trends Biochem Sci 1997;22:372–374.
46 Marincola FM, Jaffee EM, Hicklin DJ, Ferrone S: Escape of human solid tumors from T-cell recognition: Molecular mechanisms and functional significance. Adv Immunol 2000;74:181–273.
47 Hoffmann TK, Nakano K, Elder EM, Dworacki G, Finkelstein SD, Appella E, Whiteside TL, De Leo AB: Generation of T cells specific for the wild-type sequence $p53_{264–272}$ peptide in cancer patients: Implications for immunoselection of epitope loss variants. J Immunol 2000;165: 5938–5944.
48 Hoffmann TK, Loftus DJ, Nakano K, Maeurer MJ, Chikamatsu K, Appella E, Whiteside TL, De Leo AB: The ability of variant peptides to reverse the nonresponsiveness of T lymphocytes to the wild-type sequence $p53_{264–272}$ epitope. J Immunol 2002;168:1338–1347.
49 Hoffmann TK, Donnenberg AD, Finkelstein SD, Donnenberg VS, Friebe-Hoffmann U, Myers EN, Appella E, De Leo AB, Whiteside TL: Frequencies of tetramer+ T cells specific for the wild-type sequence $p53_{264–272}$ peptide in the circulation of patients with head and neck cancer. Cancer Res 2002;62:3521–3529.
50 Boehncke WH, Takeshita T, Pendleton CD, Houghten RA, Sadegh-Nasseri S, Racioppi L, Berzofsky JA, Germain RN: The importance of dominant negative effects of amino acid side chain substitution in peptide-MHC molecule interactions and T cell recognition. J Immunol 1993;150:331–341.
51 Zaremba S, Barzaga E, Zhu M, Soares N, Tsang KY, Schlom J: Identification of an enhancer agonist cytotoxic T lymphocyte peptide from human carcinoembryonic antigen. Cancer Res 1997;57:4570–4577.
52 Rivoltini L, Squarcina P, Loftus DJ, Castelli C, Tarsini P, Mazzocchi A, Rini F, Viggiano V, Belli F, Parmiani G: A superagonist variant of peptide MART1/Melan A27–35 elicits anti-melanoma CD8+ T cells with enhanced functional characteristics: Implication for more effective immunotherapy. Cancer Res 1999;59:301–306.
53 Slansky JE, Rattis FM, Boyd LF, Fahmy T, Jaffee EM, Schneck JP, Margulies DH, Pardoll DM: Enhanced antigen-specific antitumor immunity with altered peptide ligands that stabilize the MHC-peptide-TCR complex. Immunity 2000;13:529–538.
54 Petersen TR, Buus S, Brunak S, Nissen MH, Sherman LA, Claesson MH: Identification and design of p53-derived HLA-A2-binding peptides with increased CTL immunogenicity. Scand J Immunol 2001;53:357–364.
55 Casares N, Lasarte JJ, de Cerio AL, Sarobe P, Ruiz M, Melero I, Prieto J, Borras-Cuesta F: Immunization with a tumor-associated CTL epitope plus a tumor-related or unrelated Th1 helper peptide elicits protective CTL immunity. Eur J Immunol 2001;31:1780–1789.
56 Wang L, Miyahara Y, Kato T, Aota T, Kuribayashi K, Shiku H: Essential roles of tumor-derived helper T cell epitopes for an effective peptide-based tumor vaccine. Cancer Immun 2003;3:16.

57 Tilkin AF, Lubin R, Soussi T, Lazar V, Janin N, Mathieu MC, Lefrere I, Carlu C, Roy M, Kayibanda M, et al: Primary proliferative T cell response to wild-type p53 protein in patients with breast cancer. Eur J Immunol 1995;25:1765–1769.
58 Fujita H, Senju S, Yokomizo H, Saya H, Ogawa M, Matsushita S, Nishimura Y: Evidence that HLA class II-restricted human CD4+ T cells specific to p53 self peptides respond to p53 proteins of both wild and mutant forms. Eur J Immunol 1998;28:305–316.
59 Brusic V, Rudy G, Honeyman G, Hammer J, Harrison L: Prediction of MHC class II-binding peptides using an evolutionary algorithm and artificial neural network. Bioinformatics 1998;14:121–130.
60 Chikamatsu K, Albers A, Stanson J, Kwok WW, Appella E, Whiteside TL, De Leo AB: $p53_{110–124}$-specific human CD4+ T-helper cells enhance in vitro generation and antitumor function of tumor-reactive CD8+ T cells. Cancer Res 2003;63:3675–3681.
61 Wiedenfeld EA, Fernandez-Vina M, Berzofsky JA, Carbone DP: Evidence for selection against human lung cancers bearing p53 missense mutations which occur within the HLA A*0201 peptide consensus motif. Cancer Res 1994;54:1175–1177.
62 Ishida T, Chada S, Stipanov M, Nadaf S, Ciernik FI, Gabrilovich DI, Carbone DP: Dendritic cells transduced with wild-type p53 gene elicit potent anti-tumour immune responses. Clin Exp Immunol 1999;117:244–251.
63 Tuting T, De Leo AB, Lotze MT, Storkus WJ: Genetically modified bone marrow-derived dendritic cells expressing tumor-associated viral or 'self' antigens induce antitumor immunity in vivo. Eur J Immunol 1997;27:2702–2707.
64 Nikitina EY, Chada S, Muro-Cacho C, Fang B, Zhang R, Roth JA, Gabrilovich DI: An effective immunization and cancer treatment with activated dendritic cells transduced with full-length wild-type p53. Gene Ther 2002;9:345–352.
65 Hurpin C, Rotarioa C, Bisceglia H, Chevalier M, Tartaglia J, Erdile L: The mode of presentation and route of administration are critical for the induction of immune responses to p53 and antitumor immunity. Vaccine 1998;16:208–215.
66 Tuting T, Gambotto A, Robbins PD, Storkus WJ, De Leo AB: Co-delivery of T helper 1-biasing cytokine genes enhances the efficacy of gene gun immunization of mice: Studies with the model tumor antigen beta-galactosidase and the BALB/c Meth A p53 tumor-specific antigen. Gene Ther 1999;6:629–636.
67 Putzer BM, Bramson JL, Addison CL, Hitt M, Siegel PM, Muller WJ, Graham FL: Combination therapy with interleukin-2 and wild-type p53 expressed by adenoviral vectors potentiates tumor regression in a murine model of breast cancer. Hum Gene Ther 1998;9:707–718.
68 Nikitina EY, Clark JI, van Beynen J, Chada S, Virmani AK, Carbone DP, Gabrilovich DI: Dendritic cells transduced with full-length wild-type p53 generate antitumor cytotoxic T lymphocytes from peripheral blood of cancer patients. Clin Cancer Res 2001;7:127–135.
69 McCarty TM, Liu X, Sun JY, Peralta EA, Diamond DJ, Ellenhorn JD: Targeting p53 for adoptive T-cell immunotherapy. Cancer Res 1998;58:2601–2605.
70 Liu X, Peralta EA, Ellenhorn JD, Diamond DJ: Targeting of human p53-overexpressing tumor cells by an HLA A*0201-restricted murine T-cell receptor expressed in Jurkat T cells. Cancer Res 2000;60:693–701.
71 Waku T, Fujiwara T, Shao J, Itoshima T, Murakami T, Kataoka M, Gomi S, Roth JA, Tanaka N: Contribution of CD95 ligand-induced neutrophil infiltration to the bystander effect in p53 gene therapy for human cancer. J Immunol 2000;165:5884–5890.
72 Kuball J, Schuler M, Antunes Ferreira E, Herr W, Neumann M, Obenauer-Kutner L, Westreich L, Huber C, Wolfel T, Theobald M: Generating p53-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes by recombinant adenoviral vector-based vaccination in mice, but not man. Gene Ther 2002;9:833–843.
73 Van der Burg SH, Menon AG, Redeker A, Bonnet MC, Drijfhout JW, Tollenaar RA, van de Velde CJ, Moingeon P, Kuppen PJ, Offringa R, Melief CJ: Induction of p53-specific immune responses in colorectal cancer patients receiving a recombinant ALVAC-p53 candidate vaccine. Clin Cancer Res 2002;8:1019–1027.
74 Menon AG, Kuppen PJ, van der Burg SH, Offringa R, Bonnet MC, Harinck BI, Tollenaar RA, Redeker A, Putter H, Moingeon P, Morreau H, Melief CJ, van de Velde CJ: Safety of intravenous administration of a canarypox virus encoding the human wild-type p53 gene in colorectal cancer patients. Cancer Gene Ther 2003;10:509–517.

75 Herrin V, Behrens RJ, Achtar M, Monahan B, Bernstein S, Brent-Steele T, Whiteside T, Wieckowski E, Berzofsky J, Khleif SN: Wild type p53 peptide vaccine can generate a specific immune response in low burden ovarian adenocarcinoma. ASCO Chicago, Ill., USA, 2003, abstract 678.
76 Dudley ME, Wunderlich JR, Robbins PF, Yang JC, Hwu P, Schwartzentruber DJ, Topalian SL, Sherry R, Restifo NP, Hubicki AM, Robinson MR, Raffeld M, Duray P, Seipp CA, Rogers-Freezer L, Morton KE, Mavroukakis SA, White DE, Rosenberg SA: Cancer regression and autoimmunity in patients after clonal repopulation with antitumor lymphocytes. Science (Wash DC) 2002;298: 850–854.

Dr. Albert B. De Leo
University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute, Research Pavilion, Hillman Cancer Center
5117 Centre Avenue, Pittsburgh PA 15213 (USA)
Tel. +1 412 623 3228, Fax +1 412 623 1415, E-Mail deleo@imap.pitt.edu

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 151–160

p53 as an Immunotherapeutic Target in Head and Neck Cancer

Approaches to Reversing Unresponsiveness of T Lymphocytes and Preventing Tumor Escape

Thomas K. Hoffmann[a,b], *Henning Bier*[a], *Albert D. Donnenberg*[b,c], *Theresa L. Whiteside*[b,d,e], *Albert B. De Leo*[b,d]

[a]Department of Otorhinolaryngology, Heinrich Heine University, Düsseldorf, Germany; [b]University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute and Departments of [c]Medicine, [d]Pathology and [e]Otolaryngology, University of Pittsburgh School of Medicine, Pittsburgh, Pa., USA

Abstract

Squamous cell carcinomas of the head and neck (HNSCCs) are characterized by a high frequency of mutations in the *p53* gene often leading to p53 protein accumulation. Since accumulation of p53 is associated with enhanced presentation of wild-type sequence (wt) p53 peptides to immune cells, the development of 'pan' vaccines against HNSCC has focused on wt p53 epitopes. We used the HLA-A2.1-restricted wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope pulsed on autologous dendritic cells to generate cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) ex vivo from circulating precursor T cells of HLA-A2.1+ patients with HNSCC. CTLs specific for the wt $p53_{264–272}$ peptide were generated from leukocytes obtained from a cohort of patients with HNSCC (group A). Paradoxically, none of those patients had tumors which adequately presented the epitope, i.e. accumulated p53. In contrast, patients who did not generate CTLs (group B) had tumors which accumulated altered p53 and potentially could present the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope. When $p53_{264–272}$-specific T cells were directly enumerated in the peripheral circulation of patients with HNSCC using tetrameric $p53_{264–272}$/HLA-A2.1 complexes by multicolor flow cytometry, group A had high and group B low percentages of tetramer+ CD3+ CD8+ T cells. These findings suggested that in vivo p53-specific CTLs in group A might play a role in the elimination of tumor cells expressing the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope ('immunoselection'), leading to the outgrowth of 'epitope loss' tumor cells. On the other hand, precursor CTLs specific for the wt $p53_{264–272}$ peptide in group B are unresponsive to the p53 antigen. Unresponsiveness of CTLs specific for the wt $p53_{264–272}$ peptide detected in group B could be reversed by using more immunogenic variant peptides of the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope. In vivo, immunoselection of tumors which become resistant to anti-p53 immune

responses has important implications for future p53-based vaccination strategies. It calls for modified approaches, in which altered peptide variants of the wt sequence $p53_{264–272}$ epitope are used in a vaccine in order to overcome unresponsiveness of T lymphocytes to the native epitope.

The current treatment of squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (HNSCC) consists of surgery or combinations of surgery with radiotherapy and/or chemotherapy [1]. However, the prognosis of patients with HNSCC treated with these therapies has not changed for the last 30 years [2]. New therapies are needed to improve patient survival, and tumor vaccine development is considered a promising therapeutic strategy. Since missense mutations of *p53* occur in the majority of HNSCC [3–5], this tumor suppressor gene product could be an attractive candidate for antitumor vaccination strategies [6, 7]. Initially, the effort to develop p53-based vaccines focused on missense mutations, which are tumor specific in nature. However, they have limited clinical usefulness, because of the requirement that they need to occur within epitopes which could be presented to immune cells by human leukocyte antigen (HLA) molecules expressed by the individual patient. On the other hand, the majority of *p53* mutations involve the alteration of a single amino acid. Therefore, in tumors accumulating p53, the majority of p53 epitopes processed and presented to immune cells can be expected to be wild type in sequence and could be candidates for the use in the development of broadly applicable cancer vaccines [8–17].

To evaluate the quality of immune responses specific for the HLA-A2.1-restricted, human wild-type sequence (wt) epitope $p53_{264–272}$ in patients with HNSCC, T cells specific for this epitope were generated ex vivo and evaluated relative to the presence of *p53* gene mutations and protein expression in the patients' tumors. In addition, $p53_{264–272}$-specific T cells were directly enumerated in the peripheral circulation of patients with HNSCC, using novel tetrameric $p53_{264–272}$ peptide/HLA-A2.1 complexes in multicolor flow cytometry. The data revealed an unexpected dichotomy in T cell responses to wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope among patients with HNSCC that was related to p53 expression in the tumor. In this paper, we consider the significance of this dichotomy for the success of future p53-peptide-based vaccines in these patients.

Methods

Generation of Anti-p53 Cytotoxic T Cells using Peptide Pulsed Autologous Dendritic Cells

Peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) were isolated from HLA-A2.1+ HNSCC patients and healthy individuals. Dendritic cells were generated from monocytes in the

presence of granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor + interleukin (IL) 4, pulsed with the $p53_{264–272}$ peptide (LLGRNSFEV) and cocultured with autologous PBMCs in the presence of low doses of IL-7 and IL-2. After weekly in vitro stimulation (IVS), the reactivity of generated T cells was tested against various targets (peptide pulsed T2 cells and different HNSCC lines, which naturally present the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope) in γ-interferon ELISPOT as well as cytotoxicity assays. The specificity was confirmed in antibody-blocking experiments and confirmed by tetramer staining.

Tetrameric Peptide/HLA-A2.1 Complexes ('Tetramers')

The streptavidin-phycoerythrin-labeled tetramers were applied in 4-color flow cytometry assays as previously described by us in detail [18].

p53 Analysis in HNSCC

Exons 5–8 of the *p53* gene were analyzed using a PCR-based technique [19]. For p53 protein, immunohistochemistry with D0-7 (Dako) was performed.

Variant Peptides

The basis for the selection of variant peptides (Protein Identification Resource, National Biomedical Research Foundation, Washington, D.C., USA) for synthesis was a bias towards retention of a high degree of similarity to $p53_{264–272}$ in the central region of the peptide.

Results

In vitro Generation of Anti-p53 CTLs

Generated T cells were HLA class I restricted and reacted against T2 cells pulsed with $p53_{264–272}$ peptide and, to a lesser extent, against HLA-A2.1 matched HNSCC cell lines which naturally present the epitope [20]. In contrast, HNSCC cell lines, which do not express the epitope, were only minimally lysed, and their killing was not blocked by anti-HLA-A2 antibody. Tetrameric $p53_{264–272}$/HLA-A2.1 complexes were used to confirm the anti-$p53_{264–272}$ specificity of CTLs present in bulk IVS cultures. In 1 HNSCC patient, up to 35% out of all CD8+ lymphocytes were found to be CD8+/tetramer+ after IVS.

Table 1 summarizes the results obtained with PBMC of HNSCC patients after IVS with the $p53_{264–272}$ peptide. T cells of 3/6 patients with HNSCC were found to be reactive against peptide-loaded T2 cells as well as against tumor cells naturally presenting the wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope. This reactivity was HLA class I restricted, as it was blocked by anti-HLA-class-I or anti-HLA-A2 antibody.

p53 Analysis in Patients' Tumors and Association with Anti-p53 Response

Immunohistochemistry for p53 as well as sequencing of the *p53* gene in the patients' tumors were performed in order to investigate a possible association between the presence of a CTL response specific for the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope

Table 1. Summary of ex vivo anti-p53 responses in patients with HNSCC [20]

Patients	p53 status		Anti-p53 response after IVS			
	tumor *p53* genotype	tumor p53 protein	parental wt $p53_{264–272}$	variant $p53_{6T}$	variant $p53_{7P}$	variant $p53_{7W}$
1	wt in exons 5–8	–	+	–	–	+
2	wt in exons 5–8	–	+	–	–	–
3	mutation in exon 8	accumulation[1], no presentation	+	–	–	+
4	mutation in exon 7	accumulation	–	–	–	–
5	mutation in exon 5	accumulation	–	–	–	–
6	mutation in exon 8	accumulation	–	–	–	+

PBMCs were obtained from HNSCC patients and stimulated with the peptide-pulsed autologous dendritic cells or PBMCs in 2–4 IVS cycles. Effector cell reactivity was tested in ELISPOT or cytotoxicity assays, and T cell specificity for the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope was confirmed using tetramer technology. – indicates that there was no specific effector cell reactivity against the $p53_{264–272}$ peptide; + indicates that specific reactivity was observed against the $p53_{264–272}$ peptide. For T cells which were stimulated with a variant peptide, + indicates that specific reactivity against the variant peptide as well as cross-reactivity against the parental wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope were observed.

[1]The R273H mutation has been shown to prevent processing of the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope [21].

and the p53 status of the tumor. Although it is generally considered that HLA-A2+ tumor target cells sensitive to lysis by CTLs recognizing the wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope do accumulate mutant p53, this phenotype is not an absolute prerequisite for their recognition by the CTL. In particular, mutation at codon 273 is known to prevent the processing and presentation of $p53_{264–272}$ epitope, due to interference with the proteasome pathway [21] (table 1). Of the 3 patients who did not show CTL responses to the wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope (No. 4, 5 and 6), mutations in *p53* exons 5–8 were detected in all 3 tumors. The tumors of patients 4, 5 and 6 accumulated p53 and presumably could present the epitope. In contrast, among the 3 patients who showed CTL responses (No. 1, 2 and 3), patients 1 and 2 had tumors with the wt in exons 5–8 of the *p53* gene and no p53 accumulation. The tumor of patient 3 accumulated p53 expressing a

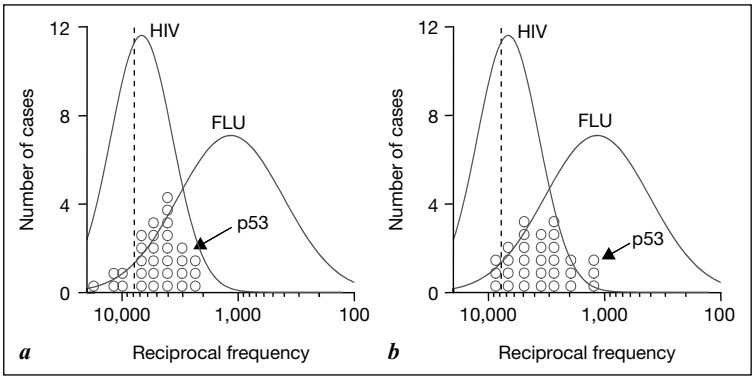


Fig. 1. Reciprocal frequencies of $p53_{264–272}$ tetramer+ CD8+ CD3+ T cells in the peripheral circulation of normal donors (***a***) versus patients with HNSCC (***b***) [22]. Patients had higher frequencies of such tetramer+ T cells than normal donors. Open circles show individual data points. Superimposed normal distribution curves were calculated from sample means and standard deviations of HIV and FLU tetramer data from the normal control group. The dashed line represents the cutoff for the lower detection limit of tetramer frequency.

missense mutation at codon 273, known to prevent the processing and presentation of the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope [21]. All 3 tumors were, therefore, unlikely to present the wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope. Therefore, it would appear that the CTL response to the wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope was demonstrable in patients bearing a tumor unable to present the epitope.

In vivo Frequency of $p53_{264–272}$-Specific T Cells in HNSCC Patients

We next extended the study to 30 HNSCC patients and 31 healthy individuals (all HLA-A2.1+) and determined the frequency of $p53_{264–272}$-specific T cells by multicolor flow cytometry, using tetramer technology. We determined that the mean of $p53_{264–272}$-specific T cells was higher than that of T cells specific for HIV (ILKEPVHGV, $pol_{476–484}$) but lower than that of those specific for influenza (GILGFVFTL, $FLU_{58–66}$) [22] (fig. 1).

Patients who responded to IVS with the $p53_{264–272}$ peptide had higher frequencies of $p53_{264–272}$-specific precursor T cells than ‘nonresponders’ (not shown). Furthermore, patients had significantly higher proportions of $p53_{264–272}$-specific CD8+ T cells in the circulation relative to normal donors (fig. 2). Patients with particularly high frequencies of wt $p53_{264–272}$-specific T cells had p53– tumors. In contrast, tumors of patients with very low frequencies of wt $p53_{264–272}$-specific T cells showed p53 overexpression in most cases (fig. 2).

Finally, we sought to increase the response rate obtained with the parental $p53_{264–272}$ peptide during IVS (fig. 3). In order to reverse the unresponsiveness

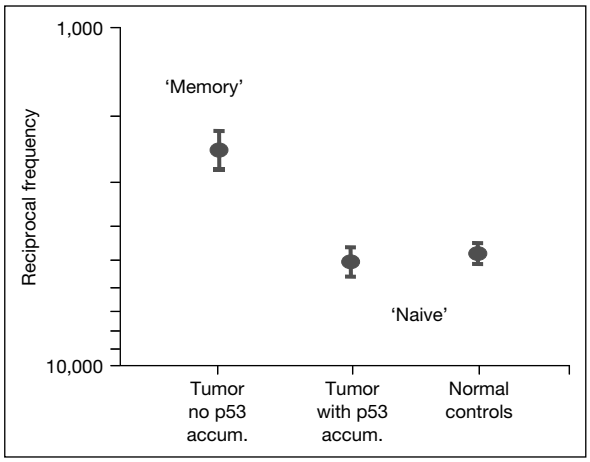


Fig. 2. Reciprocal frequency of $p53_{264–272}$-specific CD8+ T cells in patients with HNSCC and normal controls [22]. The mean frequencies for normal controls and for patients with HNSCC found to accumulate p53 or not to accumulate p53 were determined. PBMCs of 30 HLA-A2.1+ patients with HNSCC and 31 normal controls were evaluated. Tumors of these patients showed either (1) normal p53 protein expression, (2) accumulated p53 protein or (3) a mutation within or next to the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope, most likely preventing presentation of the epitope [21]. In this instance, the tumor was considered to have normal p53 expression since the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope could not be presented; bars indicate ±SD.

of T lymphocytes to the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope in patients whose tumors accumulate p53, we tried to increase the immunogenicity of the parental wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope by introducing single amino acid exchanges at nonanchor positions. A total of 19 variants of the wt $p53_{264–272}$ peptide were synthesized and tested. Two of these variant peptides [substitutions at positions 6 (6T) and 7 (7W)] were found to be capable of inducing specific T cells in a proportion of normal donors and cancer patients, including an individual (patient No. 6, table 1) who did not respond to the parental peptide and whose tumor was able to present the p53 epitope. As determined by tetramer staining (fig. 4), ELISPOT assays for γ-interferon and cytotoxicity, these T cells were cross-reactive against the parental wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope pulsed on T2 target cells as well as naturally presented by tumors [23].

Discussion

Novel therapeutic strategies for patients with HNSCC include the development of vaccines. An immunogenic antigen is a requirement for a vaccine. Using

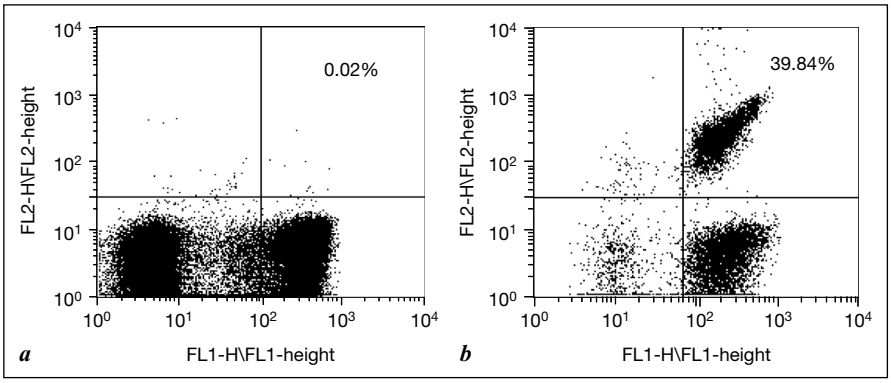


Fig. 3. Staining of T cells with tetrameric peptide/MHC-class I complexes before (***a***) and after IVS (***b***; 4 × IVS with 270W) with 7W variant peptide [23]. Cells were progressively gated by forward and side scatter for lymphocytes and CD3+/CD8+ T cells. Gated populations are plotted as CD8 staining (horizontal axis) versus tetramer staining (vertical axis). Tetramer staining was performed with p53 variant peptide 7W/HLA-A2.1 complexes. The upper right quadrant shows the percentage of tetramer+ T cells.

apoptotic tumor cells [24] or a known tumor-associated antigen, wt $p53_{264–272}$ [20], we were able to induce antitumor responses in vitro from PBMCs of normal donors. However, it was not always possible to induce an antitumor response with PBMCs obtained from HNSCC patients. In the case of p53, we expected that PBMCs of HNSCC patients whose tumors accumulate p53 would readily generate anti-p53 responses, while PBMCs of patients whose tumor cannot present the $p53_{264–272}$ epitope would not. Surprisingly, anti-p53 CTLs were only generated from PBMCs obtained from patients with tumors unlikely to present the wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope (wt *p53* expression or *p53* mutation which prevents presentation of the epitope) and not from PBMCs obtained from patients whose tumors accumulated mutant p53 and most likely could present the epitope. These findings suggest that in vivo, preexisting CTLs specific for the wt $p53_{264–272}$ peptide play a role in the elimination of tumor cells expressing this epitope. This type of immune selection by the preexisting CTLs could lead to the outgrowth of 'epitope loss' tumor cells, as illustrated in figure 4.

The observed reciprocal relationship between the frequency of $p53_{264–272}$-specific T cells in the patients' peripheral circulation and the p53 tumor status lends further credence to the immunoselection hypothesis. In the presence of wt $p53_{264–272}$-specific T cells, epitope loss tumor variants are selected in vivo during tumor progression [22]. Immunoselection contributes to tumor escape from the immune system, and thus has important implications for future p53-based immunization strategies. Patients whose tumors have lost expression of the targeted

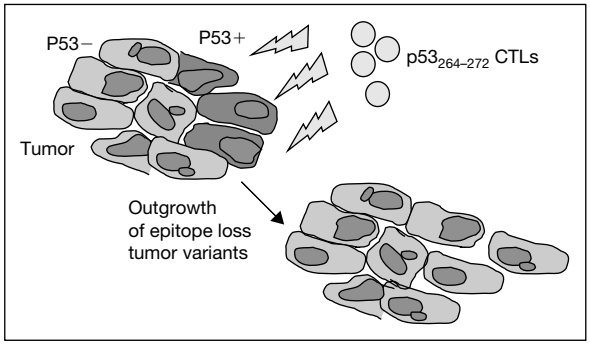


Fig. 4. A model for immunoselection of epitope loss tumor variants. The initial tumor is heterogenous in p53 expression, consists of a p53 heterogeneity with some cells accumulating p53 (p53+) whereas others do not accumulate p53 (p53–). The p53-accumulating cells are subsequently subject to physiologically significant selection pressure by certain expandable $p53_{264–272}$-specific CTLs in situations where such CTLs arise in vivo. This subsequently could lead to the outgrowth of p53– tumors.

epitope represent unlikely responders to p53-based vaccines. On the other hand, PBMCs of patients whose tumors had a high potential to express the target antigen also had low numbers of p53-specific precursor cells, which were not expandable by IVS. These cells can be considered to have been tolerized in vivo [25–27]. It appears that it might be necessary to break tolerance of immune cells to the self-antigen, $p53_{264–272}$ epitope, to achieve responses to a p53-based immunotherapy in many patients with HNSCC. A potential strategy for this is to seek and use a potent immunogen. We, therefore, sought to increase the immunogenicity of the wt $p53_{264–272}$ peptide by introducing single amino acid exchanges and indeed were able to increase response frequencies in vitro [23]. Most importantly, these variant peptides or altered peptide ligands were found to be capable of inducing specific T cells in a proportion of PBMCs obtained from HNSCC patients who did not respond to the parental peptide. Significantly, this was the case in a patient whose autologous tumor was able to present the p53 epitope.

The possibility that immunoselection of epitope loss tumor cells might occur during p53-based immunotherapy has to be considered in designing future clinical trials. In this context, the use of vaccines capable of targeting multiple tumor-associated antigens might be necessary to prevent tumor escape from the immune system [28].

Finally, the use of variant peptides of the wt $p53_{264–272}$ epitope represents a promising approach to overcoming the unresponsiveness of certain cancer patients to this self-epitope, thereby enhancing its potential use in tumor vaccines for appropriately selected cancer patients.

Acknowledgement

This work was supported in part by grant D/99/08916 of the Dr.-Mildred-Scheel-Stiftung für Krebsforschung (to T.K.H.) and by the National Institutes of Health Grant PO-1 DE-12321 (to T.L.W., A.D.L.).

References

1 Vokes EE: Combined-modality therapy of head and neck cancer. Oncology 1997;11:27–30.
2 Parker SL, Tong T, Bolden S, Wingo PA: Cancer statistics. CA Cancer J Clin 1996;46:5–12.
3 Hollstein M, Sidransky D, Vogelstein B, Harris CC: p53 mutations in human cancers. Science 1991;253:49–53.
4 Hollstein M, Shomer B, Greenblatt M, Soussi T, Hovig E, Montesano R, Harris CC: Somatic point mutations in the p53 gene of human tumors and cell lines: Updated compilation. Nucleic Acids Res 1996;24:141–146.
5 Raybaud Diogene H, Tetu B, Morency R: p53 overexpression in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma: Review of the literature. Eur J Cancer B Oral Oncol 1996;32b:143–149.
6 Harris CC: Structure and function of the p53 tumor suppressor gene: Clues and rational cancer therapeutic strategies. J Natl Cancer Inst 1996;88:1442–1455.
7 DeLeo AB: p53-based immunotherapy of cancer. Crit Rev Immunol 1998;18:29–35.
8 Houbiers JGA, Nijman HW, Drijfhout JW, Kenemans P, van der Velde CJH, Brand A, Momburg F, Kast WM, Melief CJM: In vitro induction of human cytotoxic T lymphocyte responses against peptides of mutant and wild-type p53. Eur J Immunol 1993;23:2072–2077.
9 Nijman HM, van der Burg SH, Vierboom MP, Houbiers JG, Kast WM, Melief CJ: p53, a potential target for tumor-directed T cells. Immunol Lett 1994;40:171–178.
10 Zeh HJ, Leder GH, Lotze MT, Salter RD, Tector M, Stuber G, Modrow S, Storkus WJ: Flow-cytometric determination of peptide-class-I complex formation: Identification of p53 peptides that bind to HLA-A2. Hum Immunol 1994;39:79–85.
11 Theobald M, Biggs J, Dittmer D, Levine AJ, Sherman LA: Targeting p53 as a general tumor antigen. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1995;92:11993–11997.
12 Mayordomo JI, Loftus DJ, Sakamoto H, DeCesare CM, Appasamy PM, Lotze MT, Storkus WJ, Appella EA, DeLeo AB: Therapy of murine tumors with p53 wild-type and mutant sequence peptide-based vaccines. J Exp Med 1996;183:1357–1365.
13 Ropke M, Hald J, Guldberg P, Zeuthen J, Norgaard L, Fugger L, Svejgaard A, van der Burg S, Nijman HW, Melief CJ, Claesson MH: Spontaneous human squamous cell carcinomas are killed by a human cytotoxic T lymphocyte clone recognizing a wild-type p53-derived peptide. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 1996;93:14704–14707.
14 Vierboom M P, Nijman HW, Offringa R, van der Voort EI, van Hall T, van den Broek L, Jan Fleuren G, Kenemans P, Kast WM, Melief CJ: Tumor eradication by wild type p53 specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes. J Exp Med 1997;186:695–703.
15 Gnjatic S, Cai Z, Viguier M, Chouaib S, Guillet JG, Choppin J: Accumulation of the p53 protein allows recognition by human CTL of a wild-type p53 epitope presented by breast carcinomas and melanomas. J Immunol 1998;160:328–333.
16 McCarty TM, Liu X, Sun JY, Peralta EA, Diamond DJ, Ellenborn JDI: Targeting p53 for adoptive T-cell immunotherapy. Cancer Res 1998;58:2601–2605.
17 Chikamatsu K, Nakano K, Storkus WJ, Appella E, Lotze MT, Whiteside TL, DeLeo AB: Generation of anti-p53 cytotoxic T lymphocytes from human peripheral blood using autologous dendritic cells. Clin Cancer Res 1999;5:1281–1288.
18 Hoffmann TK, Donnenberg V, Friebe U, Meyer M, Rinaldo CR, DeLeo AB, Whiteside TL, Donnenberg AD: Competition of peptide-MHC class I tetrameric complexes with anti-CD3 provides evidence for specificity of peptide binding to the TCR complex. Cytometry 2000;41: 321–328.

19 Finkelstein SD, Przygodzki R, Pricolo V, Sakallah SA, Swalsky PA, Bakker A, Lanning R, Bland KI, Cooper DL: Prediction of biologic aggressiveness in colorectal cancer by p53/K-ras-2 topographic genotyping. Mol Diagn 1996;1:5–12.
20 Hoffmann TK, Nakano K, Elder E, Dworacki G, Finkelstein SD, Apella E, Whiteside TL, DeLeo AB: Generation of T cells specific for the wild-type sequence $p53_{264–272}$ peptide in cancer patients – Implications for immunoselection of epitope loss variants. J Immunol 2000;165:5938–5944.
21 Theobald M, Ruppert T, Kuckelkorn U, Hernandez J, Häussler A, Antunes Ferreira E, Liewer U, Biggs J, Levine AJ, Huber C, Koszinowski UH, Kloetzel PM, Sherman LA: The sequence alteration associated with a mutational hotspot in p53 protects cells from lysis by cytotoxic T lymphocytes specific for a flanking peptide epitope. J Exp Med 1998;188:1017–1028.
22 Hoffmann TK, Donnenberg AD, Finkelstein SD, Donnenberg VS, Friebe-Hoffmann U, Myers EN, Appella E, DeLeo AB, Whiteside TL: Frequencies of tetramer+ T cells specific for the wild-type sequence $p53_{264–272}$ peptide in the circulation of patients with head and neck cancer. Cancer Res 2002;62:3521–3529.
23 Hoffmann TK, Nakano K, Maeurer M, Chikamatzu K, Loftus DJ, Appella E, Whiteside TL, DeLeo AB: The ability of variant peptides to reverse the non-responsiveness of T lymphocytes to the wild-type sequence $p53_{264–272}$ epitope. J Immunol 2002;168:1338–1347.
24 Hoffmann TK, Meidenbauer N, Dworacki G, Kanaya H, Whiteside TL: Generation of tumor-specific T lymphocytes by cross-priming with human dendritic cells ingesting apoptotic tumor cells. Cancer Res 2000;60:3542–3549.
25 Matzinger P: Tolerance, danger, and the extended family. Annu Rev Immunol 1994;12:991.
26 Theobald M, Biggs J, Hernández J, Lustgarten J, Labadie C, Sherman LA: Tolerance to p53 by A2.1-restricted cytotoxic T lymphocytes. J Exp Med 1997;185:833–839.
27 Hernández J, Lee PL, Davis MM, Sherman LA: The use of HLA-A2.1/p53 peptide tetramers to visualize the impact of self-tolerance on the TCR repertoire. J Immunol 2000;164:596–602.
28 Marincola FM, Jaffee EM, Hicklin DJ, Ferrone S: Escape of human solid tumors from T-cell recognition: Molecular mechanisms and functional significance. Adv Immunol 2000;74:181–273.

Thomas K. Hoffmann, MD
Department of Otorhinolaryngology, Head and Neck Surgery
Heinrich Heine University, Moorenstrasse 5, DE–40225 Düsseldorf (Germany)
Tel. +49 211 811 7570, Fax +49 211 811 8880, E-Mail tkhoffmann@uni-duesseldorf.de

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 161–172

Imbalance in Absolute Counts of T Lymphocyte Subsets in Patients with Head and Neck Cancer and Its Relation to Disease[1]

I. Kuss, B. Hathaway, R.L. Ferris, W. Gooding, T.L. Whiteside

University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute, Pittsburgh, Pa., USA

Abstract

Apoptosis of circulating CD8+ T cells seen in patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (HNSCC) suggests a possibility of lymphocyte imbalance. Therefore, absolute numbers and percentages of T lymphocyte subsets were examined in the peripheral blood of patients with HNSCC and age-matched controls. Venous blood was obtained from 148 patients with HNSCC and 54 normal volunteers. Absolute numbers of CD3+, CD4+ and CD8+ T lymphocytes were determined using fluorobeads in a flow-cytometry-based technique. Percentages of T lymphocyte subsets were also evaluated by flow cytometry. The patients were grouped, at the time of blood draw (active vs. no evident disease, NED), type of therapy administered and the length of follow-up. Patients with HNSCC were found to have significantly lower absolute numbers of CD3+, CD4+ and CD8+ T cells than normal controls (NC). However, no differences in the percentages of T cell subsets between patients and NC were observed. Patients with active disease had significantly lower CD3+ and CD4+ T cell counts than those with NED. Patients with NED after surgery and radiotherapy had lower T cell counts than those treated by surgery alone. Patients who remained without evident disease for more than 2 years did not recover their T cell counts, and the T cell imbalance was evident many years after curative surgery. Patients with recurrent disease at the time of blood draw tended to have the lowest CD4+ T cell counts. The TNM stage or site of the disease were not related to the absolute T cell count. Our data indicate that patients with HNSCC have altered lymphocyte homeostasis, which persists for months or years after curative therapies.

[1]The data presented and text originate in part from the paper by Kuss et al. entitled 'Decreased absolute counts of T lymphocyte subsets and their relation to disease in squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck', Clin Cancer Res 2004;10:3755–3762.

Despite the constant input of new lymphocytes from the bone marrow and the thymus and the exponential generation of specific cells in response to antigens, the size of the peripheral lymphocyte pool remains relatively stable. To maintain homeostasis, the peripheral blood T lymphocyte pool is regulated in complex ways that have not yet been fully defined [1]. In general, clonal expansions of specific cells are balanced by programmed cell death in other subpopulations and the maintenance of a relatively constant total peripheral blood T lymphocyte count. We have reported previously that patients with squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck (HNSCC) as well as melanoma and breast cancer have increased proportions of circulating T cells that bind annexin V and are, therefore, destined to apoptose [2–5]. Due to this extensive apoptosis in the peripheral circulation and concomitant repopulation of the blood compartment with T cells from the immature cell pool, rapid turnover of effector cells takes place that is reminiscent of that described for patients with HIV [6, 7]. These observations suggest that the evaluation of the proportions and absolute numbers of lymphocytes and their subsets in the peripheral circulation of cancer patients is important and might provide insights into the redistribution of those lymphocyte subsets that mediate antitumor defense.

In order to evaluate a possible impact of spontaneous apoptosis of circulating T lymphocytes [2–5] on the peripheral T cell pool, we investigated *both* the percentages and absolute numbers of CD3+, CD4+ and CD8+ T lymphocyte subsets in a large cohort of patients with HNSCC, using a single-platform flow-cytometry-based method. The study objectives were: (a) to determine whether absolute T cell numbers and percentages are significantly decreased in patients relative to normal controls (NC); (b) to correlate the imbalance in absolute T cell counts to disease activity and oncologic therapy, and (c) to obtain insights into a possible predictive role of T cell counts in patients with HNSCCHN. We found that the presence of tumor as well as its recurrence had a significant impact on the absolute number of T cell subsets. Both the type of therapy and length of the posttherapy period were considered, and the results suggested that regardless of these factors, lymphopenia was a persistent feature of the disease.

Material and Methods

Patients and Controls

148 patients with HNSCC, who were consecutively seen between July 2001 and June 2003 at the Outpatient Otolaryngology Clinic at the University of Pittsburgh Oral Cancer Center were entered into the study. The Institutional Review Board has approved the protocol for collection of patient blood samples. Normal healthy donors (NC) were recruited among the laboratory personnel, family members of patients and other volunteers, with an intent to match controls and patients for age. Subjects who served as NC were interrogated

Table 1. Clinical characteristics of HNSCC patients at the time of blood draw (n = 148)

Active disease (47)
Surgery for recurrence (7)
Surgery of primary disease (34)
Recurrent disease (6)
NED (101)
After surgery alone (73)
<2 years (40)
>2 years (33)
After surgery + RT (28)
<2 years (14)
>2 years (14)

The numbers of patients are indicated in parentheses.

for the general state of health, use of medications, smoking and alcohol consumption. A written informed consent was obtained from each individual participating in this study.

The clinical characteristics of the patients included in this study are shown in table 1. The cohort of 148 patients included 111 men and 37 women with a median age of 62 years (range 24–86), and the group of 54 volunteers comprised 25 males and 29 females with a median age of 54 years (range 22–88).

Collection of Blood Samples

Venous blood (10 ml) was obtained from the patients either in the morning before surgery or during the outpatient visits and prior to any therapies. Blood samples were collected into heparinized tubes. Samples were also collected from age-matched NC. Blood samples were hand-carried to the laboratory and immediately used for experiments.

Absolute Lymphocyte Count Determination

A standard single platform technique, the tetraONE™ System (Beckman Coulter, Miami, Fla., USA), based on 4-color flow cytometry in the presence of counting beads was used. The identification of lymphocytes by expression of bright CD45 and low side scatter signals was followed by the identification of T cell subsets based on the expression of CD3, CD4 and CD8, as previously described [8]. The one-platform method was validated in our laboratory by comparisons with the previously established two-platform method.

Statistical Analysis

Differences in percentages and counts of lymphocyte subsets between patients and normal controls were age adjusted by linear regression models after suitable data transformations. If age adjustment was unnecessary, differences were tested with the t test or the Wilcoxon test. The associations among lymphocyte subsets and clinical (disease status, site of disease), pathologic (stage) and behavioral (smoking) characteristics were tested with the t test or Wilcoxon test for 2-group differences or the Kruskal-Wallis test for 3 or more groups. Tests of trend with ordinally scaled endpoints such as T and N stages were conducted with the Jonckheere-Terpstra test.

Table 2. Absolute numbers and percentages of T cells and T cell subsets in patients with HNSCC and NC

	CD3+	CD4+	CD+
Absolute number			
Patients (n = 148)	1,081 ± 601	670 ± 412	392 ± 269
NC (n = 58)	1,512 ± 494	1,005 ± 360	476 ± 208
p value	<0.0001	<0.0001	0.0012
Percentages			
Patients (n = 148)	71 ± 9	44 ± 9	26 ± 11
NC (n = 58)	70 ± 9	47 ± 9	22 ± 7
p value	0.6374	0.1141	0.0917

The data are means ±SD. The p values are for the differences between patients and NC.

Results

Analysis of T Cell Subsets in Patients and NC

Using the single-platform method, we initially compared both the percentages and absolute numbers of CD3+, CD4+ and CD8+ cells in all patients to those in NC. Although percentages of T lymphocyte subsets were not found to be age associated, the absolute counts of all subsets decreased with age. For this reason, all comparisons of absolute lymphocyte counts in patients versus NC were adjusted for age. In comparing patients with NC, no significant differences were observed in the percentages of T cell subsets (table 2). However, all absolute T cell numbers were significantly different in patients versus NC. The patients had 382 fewer CD3+ cells, 297 fewer CD4+ and 85 fewer CD8+ cells per cubic millimeter than NC. These significant differences ($p < 0.0001$ for CD3+ and CD4+, $p < 0.0012$ for CD8+ cells) were detectable at any age. Overall, the patients had significantly lower absolute T cell counts but not percentages than NC, and the absolute numbers of CD8+ T cells were the least depressed in patients with HNSCC relative to NC.

Comparisons of CD4 and CD8 T Cell Counts in Patients and NC

Although the mean CD4/CD8 ratio was not different between patients and NC, we undertook a more detailed analysis of the relationship between the numbers of CD4+ and CD8+ T lymphocytes in individual patients, as shown in figure 1. Relative to NC with the mean CD4/CD8 ratio of 2.4 (fig. 1a), the

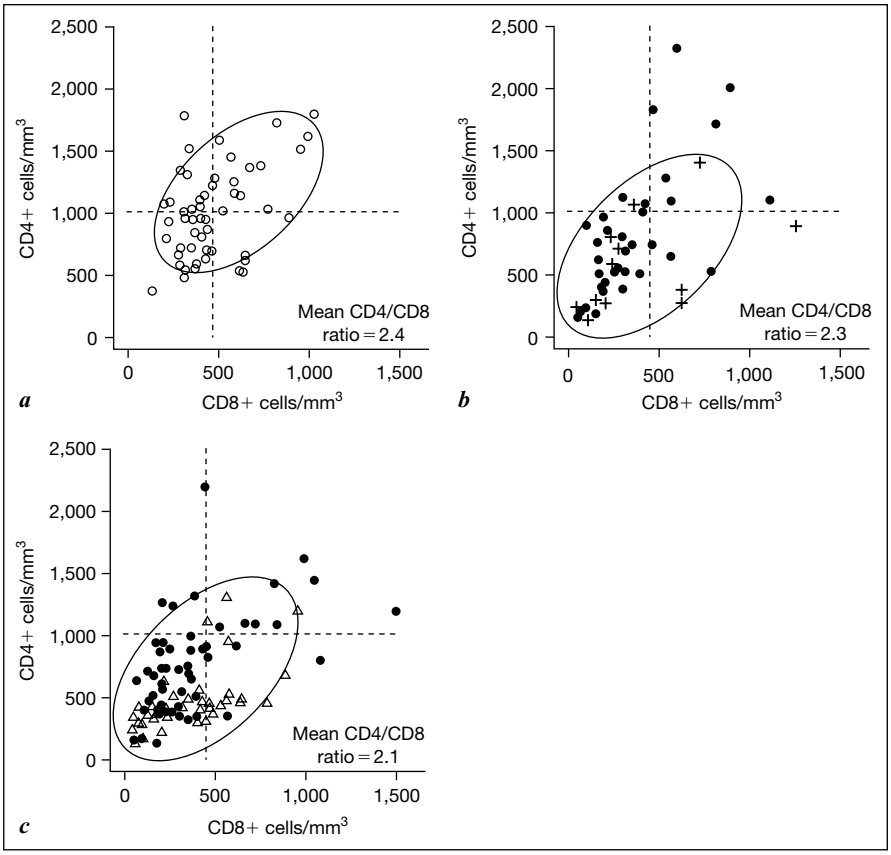


Fig. 1. Distribution of the individual CD4+ and D8+ T cell numbers among NC (***a***), HNSCC patients with active disease (***b***) and HNSCC patients with NED (***c***). The horizontal and vertical reference lines indicate mean values for CD4+ and CD8+ T cells of NC tested in the same assays as the patients. The circles indicate the prevalent distribution of cell counts. Note very low numbers of both CD4+ and CD8+ T cells in ***b*** and ***c***. In ***b***, patients treated surgically for disease recurrence or second primary tumors are indicated by a cross. In ***c***, patients treated with postoperative radiotherapy are denoted by a triangle.

patients with active disease, whose mean CD4/CD8 ratio was 2.3, had decreased numbers of CD4+ as well as CD8+ T cells. As a result, there was a dramatic shift of the individual CD4 and CD8 counts to the left lower quadrant in figure 1b. Not surprisingly, the patients with recurrent disease had the lowest absolute counts of CD4 and CD8+ T cells (fig. 1b). Among the patients with active disease, a small subgroup (8/47) with high numbers of CD4+ T

cells and relatively normal counts of CD8+ T cells (right upper quadrant in fig. 1b) is evident. A somewhat different relationship emerges when CD4+ and CD8+ T cells are examined in the patients who at the time of blood draws had no evident disease (NED) either after curative surgery or surgery plus radiotherapy (fig. 1c). Here, it can be seen that patients previously treated with radiation therapy (RT) in addition to surgery had the lowest CD4+ counts. Other NED patients had somewhat depressed CD4+ counts but normal CD8+ counts when compared to NC (fig. 1a).

Effects of Postoperative Radiation on Absolute Lymphocyte Counts

Among 101 patients with NED at the time of blood draws, 28 had received postoperative RT. The postoperative RT consisted of 66–70 Gy divided into 1.8- to 2.0-Gy fractions over 35 individual daily sessions. This RT was applied within 6 weeks of surgery. The time duration between the last RT and a blood draw for this study was variable, ranging from 1 month to more than 10 years. The patients who had RT also had significantly lower absolute numbers of CD4+ T cells ($p < 0.0001$) as well as CD3+ T cells ($p = 0.0001$) as compared to 73 NED patients without prior RT (fig. 2). In contrast, the count of CD8+ T lymphocytes remained unchanged after RT, an indication that CD8+ T cells were not sensitive to RT. Nevertheless, it should be noted that the NED patients treated with surgery alone also had comparably low CD4+ and CD8+ T cell numbers, and, thus, RT was only one of the factors contributing to T cell cytopenia in the patients.

Effects of Surgery on Absolute Lymphocyte Counts

The cohort of 73 NED patients who underwent curative surgery alone were divided into those treated more than 2 years before the blood draw and those studied within 2 years of surgery. As seen in figure 3, the absolute numbers of the T cell subsets were significantly decreased in both groups relative to NC (fig. 1a; $p < 0.0001$). The data suggest that effects of the tumor on the homeostasis of lymphocytes are observed long after the tumor has been removed and in the absence of any other lymphoablative therapy.

Lymphocyte Counts and Disease

Among 47 patients with active disease at the time of blood draw prior to surgery, 34 were diagnosed as having primary tumors and 13 as recurrent or second primary tumors (table 1). CD4+ and CD8+ T cell counts were significantly depressed in both these groups relative to normal controls (fig. 1b). However,

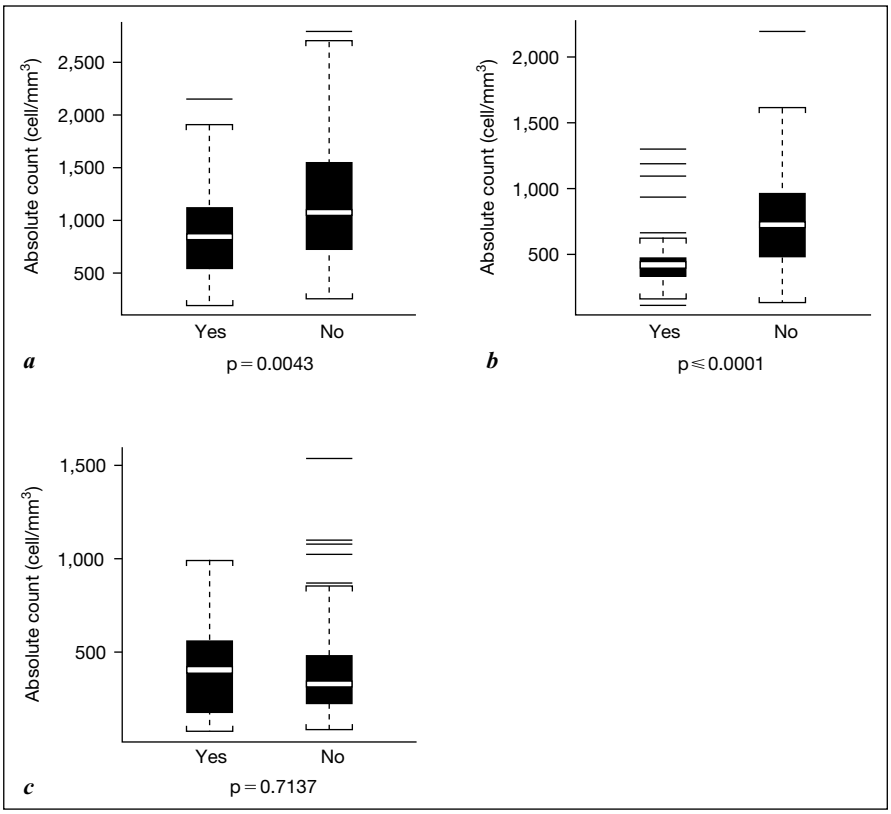


Fig. 2. Box plots showing effects of postoperative RT on the absolute numbers of CD3+, CD4+ and CD8+ T cells in patients with HNSCC. The absolute counts of patients who received RT are compared to counts in the patients treated with surgery without RT. The bars are median values, the box indicates the interquartile range (25–75%), and the 'whiskers' extend to 1.5 times the interquartile range.

patients with documented disease recurrence or second primary tumors at the time of blood draw had the lowest CD4+ T cell counts of all the groups studied ($p = 0.0001$).

Neither the disease stage, site nor nodal involvement defined for these patients at the time of curative surgery had any discernible effects on absolute lymphocyte counts determined at the time of blood draws (data not shown). It has to be stressed, however, that blood draws for lymphocyte counts were obtained at different time points relative to surgery and in many cases, 4 or more years after curative therapy.

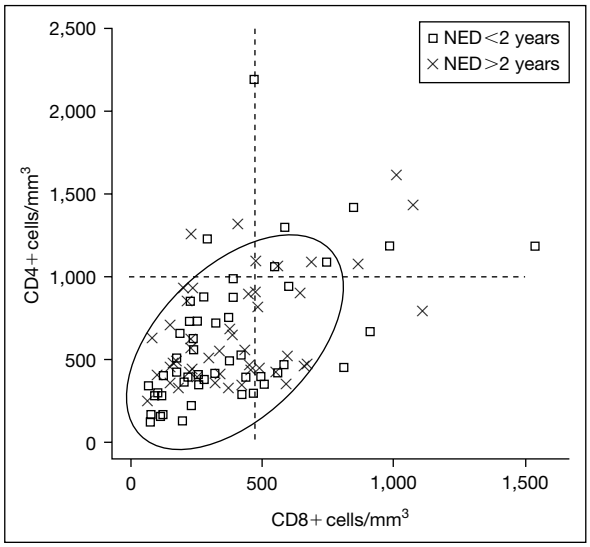


Fig. 3. Absolute counts of CD4+ and CD8+ T cells in individual patients with NED after curative surgery. The patients studied <2 years after surgery are represented by open squares, while those studied >2 years after surgery are represented by x. Note low absolute counts of both CD4+ and CD8+ T cells in the patients with NED regardless of the length of follow-up. No difference in the CD4+/CD8+ ratio was observed between these two groups of NED patients ($p = 0.56$). The stippled lines represent the mean values for CD4+ and CD8+ T cell numbers in normal donors.

Discussion

Patients with cancer who do not receive conventional therapies are not generally considered to be lymphopenic. Nevertheless, abnormalities in T cell counts have been observed in patients with breast cancer, ovarian cancer, myeloma, head and neck cancer or liver cancer [9–11]. More importantly, some reports show associations of T cell subset abnormalities with poor clinical outcomes [12–14]. However, there is no consensus on the extent of changes in different T lymphocyte subsets in the course of cancer progression or its relationship with response to tumor-specific therapy or patient survival.

The rationale for the study of absolute T-cell counts in patients with HNSCC was based on our earlier reports of significant levels of spontaneous apoptosis consistently observed among circulating T lymphocytes in these patients [2, 3] and suggesting that their absolute lymphocyte counts might be depressed. Through the use of single-platform flow cytometry it was possible to independently analyze the percentages and absolute numbers of the

T cell subsets in the patients' peripheral circulation. Interestingly, absolute numbers of CD3+, CD4+ and CD8+ T cells were found to be significantly decreased in the patient group, emphasizing the existence of a relative lymphopenia in the patients versus age-adjusted NC, despite the apparently normal percentages of circulating T lymphocytes. This observation emphasizes the necessity of determining absolute counts, not percentages, of lymphocyte subsets in patients with cancer. The usually reported cell percentages are misleading, because they do not consider the total white blood cell count, which might be, and frequently is, altered in these patients particularly after anticancer therapies.

The most interesting finding of this study, was the observation that the absolute count of CD8+ T cells, although significantly decreased in the patients versus NC, and especially so in patients with active disease, appeared to recover and normalize in most patients with NED, while the CD4+ T cell count did not. We had expected to find significantly decreased numbers of circulating CD8+ T lymphocytes rather than CD4+ T lymphocytes in these patients based on previous data of selective apoptosis of CD8+ T cells [2, 3]. A possible explanation for this unexpected finding could be that the homeostatic mechanisms compensate for the selective apoptosis by a rapid expansion of CD8+ T cells in the periphery of patients with HNSCC. Our data reported here and elsewhere [15] indicate that the homeostasis of CD8+ T cells in the peripheral circulation of patients with HNSCC appears to be maintained by their rapid turnover, resulting in a relatively stable mean peripheral CD8+ cell count for the patient population as a whole. A situation associated with profound depression of the peripheral CD8+ T cell count occurred in patients with stage IV disease, who failed to normalize the CD8+ T cell count after surgery. This observation suggests that in advanced disease, patients might fail to effectively compensate for the loss of effector cells. Patients with documented recurrence of disease or second primary tumor at the time of blood draw had the lowest T cell counts of all studied. The observed trend was for CD8+ T cell counts to increase and for CD4+ T cell counts to decrease after tumor removal by surgery. But one of the most interesting findings of this study was that HNSCC patients who remained without evident disease for 2 years or >2 years after curative surgery alone (no radio- or chemotherapy) still showed an imbalance in the T cell subsets. This imbalance was highly significant for CD4+ T cells, while CD8+ T cells tended to normalize. This observation suggests that the disease process has a profound and long-lasting impact on T lymphocyte homeostasis in patients with HNSCC. Others have suggested previously that lymphocyte counts have prognostic value in HNSCC [16].

Another factor that had a significant impact on T cell counts was the history of previous RT. Only CD4+ but not CD8+ T cells appeared to be

affected by previous RT (fig. 4). While this has been previously reported [17], the finding of decreased counts of CD4+ T cells long after the administration of RT was somewhat surprising. Apparently, CD4+ T cells are not only more sensitive to RT than CD8+ lymphocytes, but the restoration of the peripheral CD4+ T cell pool after RT is very slow. As indicated above, many patients with NED and no previous RT also had reduced CD4+ T cell counts long after curative surgery. Thus, RT was not the only factor modulating the number of circulating CD4+ cells in a cohort of patients with HNSCC previously treated for their disease.

While the current study was not designed to address survival as endpoint, we considered the possibility that disturbed lymphocyte homeostasis might be especially prominent in patients with poor prognosis, i.e. stage IV disease and nodal metastases. However, we could not establish a statistically significant relationship between disease stage or its severity and lymphocyte counts based on retrospective data analysis. It should be noted that no predictive value for absolute lymphocyte counts or CD4/CD8 ratios for larynx preservation, response to therapy or survival of patients with HNSCC was seen in another study [18].

Our results for patients with HNSCC are complementary to the findings of others who also report lymphocyte imbalance in cancer [11–14]. Combined with the presence of functional abnormalities in T cells of patients with HNSCC, as reported by us previously [3, 5, 19–21], the overall impression is that of decreased immune competence in these patients. Lowered T cell numbers in the circulation could predispose the patients to infections, disease recurrence or a second malignancy. It is, therefore, advisable to pay attention to T cell counts during posttreatment visits, even when the patients have NED long after curative therapy. Our data emphasize that decreased T cell counts reflect effects of the disease process on T cell homeostasis and not just therapy-mediated alterations and that the imbalance is long-lasting. In view of the possibility that such persistent changes in homeostasis of T cell subsets might adversely influence antitumor responses and promote recurrence. Therapies designed to increase lymphocyte counts could be considered even in patients with NED.

References

1 Goldrath AW, Bevan MJ: Selecting and maintaining a diverse T-cell repertoire. Nature 1999;402: 255–262.

2 Dworacki G, Meidenbauer N, Kuss I, Hoffmann TK, Gooding W, Lotze M, Whiteside TL: Decreased ζ chain expression and apoptosis in CD3+ peripheral T lymphocytes in patients with melanoma. Clin Cancer Res 2001;7:947–957.

3 Hoffmann T, Dworacki G, Tsukishiro T, Meidenbauer N, Gooding W, Johnson JT, Whiteside TL: Spontaneous apoptosis of circulating T lymphocytes in patients with head and neck cancer and its clinical importance. Clin Cancer Res 2002;8:2553–2562.
4 Saito T, Kuss I, Dworacki G, Gooding W, Johnson JT, Whiteside TL: Spontaneous ex vivo apoptosis of peripheral blood mononuclear cells in patients with head and neck cancer. Clin Cancer Res 1999;5:1263–1273.
5 Reichert TE, Strauss L, Wagner EM, Gooding W, Whiteside TL: Signaling abnormalities, apoptosis, and reduced proliferation of circulation and tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes in patients with oral carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 2002;8:3137–3145.
6 Hellerstein M, Hanley MB, Cesar D, Siler S, Papageorgopoulos C, Wieder E, Schmidt D, Hoh R, Neese R, Macallan D, Deeks S, McCune JM: Directly measured kinetics of circulation T lymphocytes in normal and HIV-1-infected humans Nat Med 1999;5:83–89.
7 Neese RA, Siler SQ, Cesar D, Antelo F, Lee D, Misell L, Patel K, Tehrani S, Shah P, Hellerstein MK: Advances in the stable isotope-mass spectrometric measurement of DNA synthesis and cell proliferation Anal Biochem 2001;298:189–195.
8 Reimann KA, O'Gorman MG, Spritzler J, Wilkening C, Sabath D, Helm K, Campbell D: Multisite comparison of CD4 and CD8 T-lymphocyte counting by single- versus multiple-platform methodologies: Evaluation of Beckman Coulter flow-count fluorospheres and the tetraONE system. Clin Diagn Lab Immunol 2000;7:344–351.
9 Schroder W, Vering A, Stegmuller M, Strohmeier R: Lymphocyte subsets in patients with ovarian and breast cancer. Eur J Gynaecol Oncol 1997;18:474–477.
10 Wolf GT, Amendola BE, Diaz R, Lovett EJ, Hammerschmidt RM, Peterson KA: Definite vs adjuvant radiotherapy: Comparative effects on lymphocyte subpopulations in patients with head and neck squamous carcinoma. Arch Otolaryngol 1985;111:716–726.
11 Melichar B, Touskova M, Solichova D, Kralickova P, Kopecky G: CD4+ T-lymphocytopenia and systemic immune activation in patients with primary and secondary liver tumours. Scand J Clin Lab Invest 2001;61:363–370.
12 Kay NE, Leong TL, Bone N, Vesole DH, Greipp PR, Van Ness B, Oken MM, Kyle RA: Blood levels of immune cells predict survival in myeloma patients: Results of an Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group phase 3 trial for newly diagnosed multiple myeloma patients. Blood 2001;98: 23–28.
13 Murta EF, de Andrade JM, Falcao RP, Bighetti S: Lymphocyte subpopulations in patients with advanced breast cancer submitted to neoadjuvant chemotherapy. Tumori 2000;86: 403–407
14 Hernberg M, Muhonen T, Turunen JP, Hahka-Kemppinen M, Pyrohonen S: The CD4+/CD8+ ratio as a prognostic factor in patients with metastatic melanoma receiving chemoimmunotherapy. J Clin Oncol 1996;14:1690–1696.
15 Kuss I, Godfrey TE, Donnenberg AD, Whiteside TL: Low levels of T-cell receptor excision circles (TREC) and paucity of naïve T cells in the circulation of patients with cancer suggest a rapid lymphocyte turnover within the memory compartment. AACR Proc 2002;43:278.
16 Wolf GT, Schmaltz S, Hudson J, et al: Alterations in T lymphocyte subpopulations in patients with head and neck squamous carcinoma: Correlations with prognosis. Arch Otolaryngol 1987;113: 1200–1206.
17 Friedman EJ: Immune modulation by ionizing radiation and its implications for cancer immunotherapy. Curr Pharm Des 2002;8:1765–1780.
18 Wolf GT, Bradford CR, Urba S, Smith A, et al: Immune reactivity does not predict immunotherapy response, organ preservation or survival in advanced laryngeal cancer. Laryngoscope 2002;112: 1351–1356.
19 Kuss I, Donnenberg A, Gooding W, WhitesideTL: Effector CD8+CD45RO–CD27– T cells have signaling defects in patients with head and neck cancer. Br J Cancer 2003;88: 223–230.
20 Tsukishiro T, Donnenberg AD, Whiteside TL: Rapid turnover of the CD8+CD28– T-cell subset of effector cells in the circulation of patients with head and neck cancer. Cancer Immunol Immunother 2003;52:599–607.

21 Albers AE, Tsukishiro T, Ferris RL, DeLeo AB, Whiteside TL: TCR VB restrictions in peripheral circulation and tumor infiltrating lymphocytes obtained from patients with head and neck cancer. AACR Proc, Toronto, 2003, abstract 105839.

Theresa L. Whiteside, PhD
University of Pittsburgh Cancer Institute
Research Pavilion at the Hillman Cancer Center
Suite 1.27, 5117 Centre Avenue, Pittsburgh, PA 15213 (USA)
Tel. +1 412 624 0096, Fax +1 412 624 0264, E-Mail whitesidetl@msx.upmc.edu

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 173–183

Antitumor Immunization of Head and Neck Squamous Cell Carcinoma Patients with a Virus-Modified Autologous Tumor Cell Vaccine

Christel Herold-Mende[a,b], *Jochen Karcher*[d], *Gerhard Dyckhoff*[a], *Volker Schirrmacher*[c]

[a]Molecular Cell Biology Group, Department of Head and Neck Surgery, and [b]Molecular Biology Laboratory, Department of Neurosurgery, University of Heidelberg, and [c]Division of Cellular Immunology, German Cancer Research Center, Heidelberg, and [d]HNO-Klinik der Caritasklinik St. Theresia, Saarbrücken, Germany

Abstract

Background: Head and neck squamous cell carcinomas (HNSCCs) are aggressive tumors with poor 5-year survival rates, thus demanding new treatment concepts. **Methods:** In a nonrandomized study, 20 HNSCC patients were preconditioned with interleukin (IL) 2 and subsequently vaccinated with virus-modified autologous tumor cells prepared from short-term tumor cultures. Antitumor reactivity was determined by delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) skin reaction. **Results:** Preconditioning of tumor patients with IL-2 prior to vaccination was associated with an increased number of T cells especially after a radiation-induced marked decrease, and levels of mitogen stimulation capacity were almost as high as before surgery. MHC class I molecules expressing autologous tumor cell cultures were successfully infected. Vaccination with virus-modified tumor cells was able to increase systemic antitumor reactivity as revealed by augmentation of DTH reactivity to unmodified tumor cells. **Conclusion:** We provide evidence that a combination of preconditioning of HNSCC patients with IL-2 to improve their immune competence with subsequent vaccination with virus-modified autologous tumor cells leads to augmented antitumor DTH reactivity.

The incidence of malignant tumors of the head and neck (HNSCC) has increased all over the world during the last decades [1, 2]. Despite progress in surgical techniques and an improved application of radio- and chemotherapy,

the mortality due to these tumors is still high, therefore demanding the development of new treatment modalities.

Immunotherapy of HNSCC is very appealing because it offers the potential for tumor specificity with low side effects [3, 4]. Certain proteins are selectively overexpressed in HNSCC [5], making these tumor antigens possible targets for immune recognition and reaction. In an animal model, it was shown that postoperative vaccination with irradiated, modified tumor cells could cure about one third of the animals, even at the time when the tumor had already metastasized to the first draining lymph nodes [6].

For optimal efficacy, tumor cell vaccines require the addition of danger signals by adjuvants to increase their immunogenicity [7]. For this purpose, we used Newcastle disease virus (NDV) [8], an avian paramyxovirus that does not integrate into the host DNA and is well known for its low pathogenicity. It selectively replicates in tumor cells and exhibits pleiotropic immune-modulatory properties [9]. In the infected cells, it induces danger signals such as double-stranded RNA, interferons and chemokines [10]. Our strategy of tumor vaccine design is based on the use of patient-derived autologous live tumor cells from cell culture (ATV), which may express common as well as unique tumor-associated antigens. For vaccine production, 10 million cells are infected with NDV and then inactivated by irradiation. When applied intradermally, such an ATV-NDV vaccine is well tolerated and can induce delayed-type hypersensitivity (DTH) skin reactions. Table 1 contains a summary about postoperative long-term survival of patients treated with such a vaccine. Over the last 10 years, 9 phase II clinical studies were performed on different tumor types, and improvements of survival were observed in most of them.

With regard to HNSCC, it is well documented that these tumors release substances that cause immunosuppression, such as transforming growth factor β and interleukin (IL) 10 [18]. In addition, surgery and postoperative radiation therapy are associated with a marked decrease in T lymphocytes [19, 20], which are of major importance for an efficient immunological antitumor response. Therefore our aim was first to rescue lymphocytes from radiation- and surgery-induced apoptosis by applying low-dose IL-2. When the T cell numbers improved, active specific immunization with the ATV-NDV vaccine was performed. Here we describe the effects of conditioning the patients with IL-2 and show some characteristics of the HNSCC-NDV vaccine.

Materials and Methods

Patients

Twenty patients with pathologically confirmed HNSCC were recruited from January 1996 to December 1997 to receive antitumor vaccination. Eligibility criteria included a

Table 1. Clinical studies with NDV-infected autologous tumor cells

Type of cancer	Type of study	Patients, n	Benefit	Reference
Colorectal, metastatic	phase II trial	23	improved DFS	Schlag et al. [11], 1992
Colorectal, locally advanced	phase II trial	57	improved OS	Ockert et al. [12], 1996
Breast, early	phase II trial	63	improved OS	Ahlert et al. [13], 1997
Ovary, metastatic	phase II trial	82	improved DFS	Ahlert et al. [13], 1997; Möbus et al. [14], 1993
Renal, metastatic	phase II trial	40	improved OS	Pomer et al. [15], 1995
Pancreas, stage G3	phase II trial	9	improved OS	Schirrmacher et al. [16], 1998
Stomach	phase II trial	7	improved OS	Schirrmacher et al. [16], 1998
Melanoma, recurrent metastatic	phase II trial	41	improved OS	Schirrmacher et al. [16], 1998
Glioblastoma multiforme	phase II trial	23	improved DFS and OS	Steiner et al. [17], 2004

DFS = Disease-free survival; OS = overall survival.

Karnofsky performance score of 60 or greater and normal baseline hematological parameters 2 weeks before the first vaccination (hemoglobin, total granulocyte count, platelet count, creatinine, transaminases and thromboplastin time), a patient age over 18 years and a written informed consent. Exclusion criteria were pregnancy, severe pulmonary, cardiac or other systemic disease associated with an unacceptable operative risk, presence of an acute infection, autoimmune disorders or other malignancies. Each patient received maximal surgical resection (20/20) followed by radiotherapy in 15/20 cases (total dose 60 Gy). Vaccination therapy was started 3 months after surgery, when radiotherapy was completed and the subsequent preimmunization period was finished. Patients were required to use a medically accepted form of birth control during the study. The study was approved by the institutional review board, in accordance with the Helsinki Declaration of 1975, as revised in 1983.

Total Counts and Mitogen Stimulation Capacity of T Cells

At different time points, total T lymphocyte counts were determined in the peripheral blood by FACS analysis as described [20].

For mitogen stimulation tests, mononuclear cells were exposed for 3 days to different concentrations of concanavalin A and phytohemagglutinin (PHA) or for allogeneic stimulation incubated for 6 days in a mixed lymphocyte culture as described [19]. Then cells were pulsed with ^{3}H-thymidine, and incorporation was determined. Relative responses were calculated as ratio of counts per minute from tumor patients to counts per minute from healthy donors.

Autologous Tumor Cell Culture and Characterization

Tumor samples were mechanically dissected within 2 h after resection. The cell suspension was cultured in Dulbecco's minimal essential medium (Invitrogen, Karlsruhe, Germany) supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum (Biochrom, Berlin, Germany) and antibiotics. We only used pretested serum batches from countries in which bovine spongiform encephalopathy has never been diagnosed. Mycoplasma contamination was excluded by 4,6-diamidino-2-phenylindole staining (Roche Diagnostics, Mannheim, Germany), and cells were routinely tested for lack of fungal and yeast contaminations. All short-term cultures were characterized for their epithelial origin by the immunohistochemical detection of tissue-specific markers using antibodies recognizing a broad spectrum of cytokeratins (clone MNF 116, Dako, Hamburg, Germany) and for expression of MHC class I molecules.

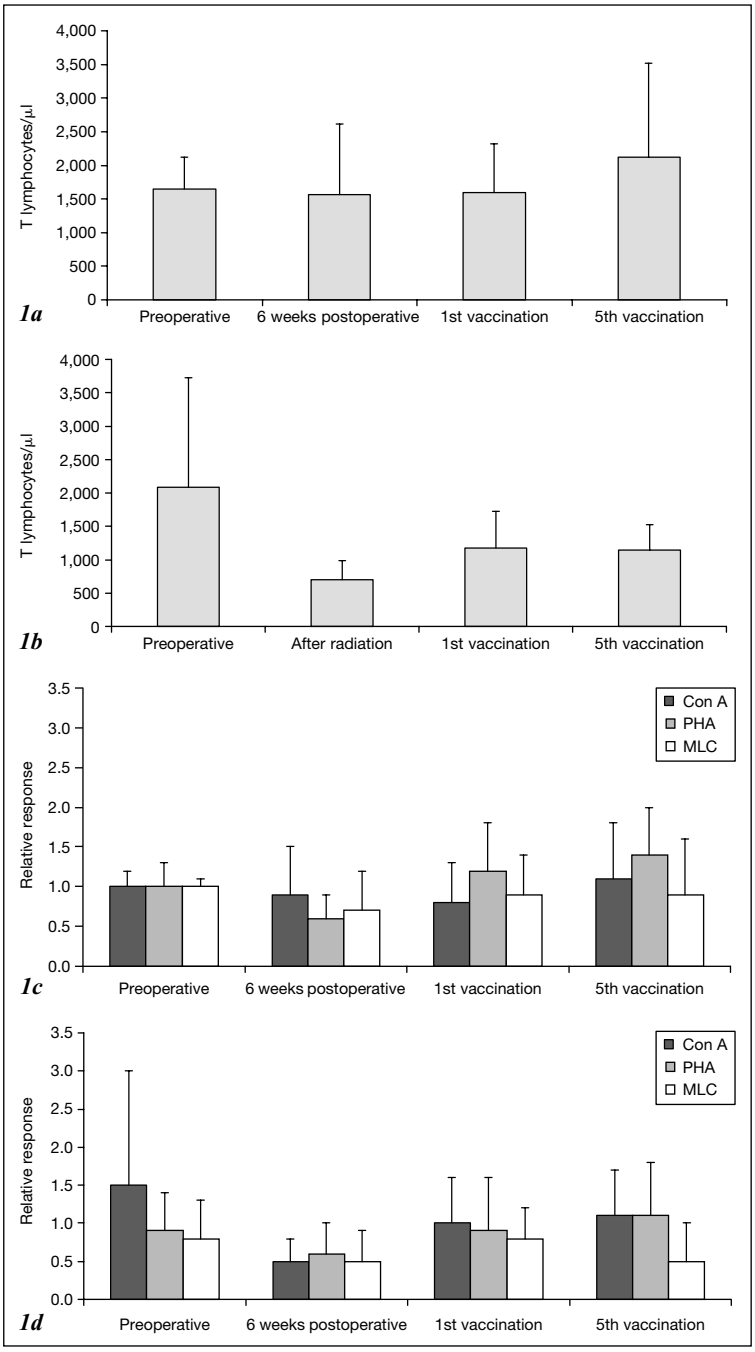
Preparation of NDV-Modified Autologous Tumor Cell Vaccine

Per vaccine, 1×10^{7} tumor cells were incubated for 1 h with 64 hemagglutinating units of the avirulent strain Ulster of NDV. Successful infection was proven by immunohistochemical staining with anti-NDV-HN monoclonal antibody recognizing the viral protein hemagglutinin neuraminidase, kindly provided by Dr. Iorio, Worcester, USA. For a DTH test, non-virus-modified autologous tumor cells as well as NDV-modified tumor cells were used. Finally, cells were irradiated with 200 Gy. In case of the ATV-NDV vaccine, a dose of 400,000 IU of recombinant IL-2 (Chiron, Ratingen, Germany) was added to the vaccine prior to application.

Vaccination Procedure and DTH Test

Vaccination started 12 weeks after radiotherapy, consisting of up to 5 applications with 1×10^{7} ATV-NDV cells intradermally on the upper thigh (alternately left and right). In addition 1×10^{6} IU IL-2 were subcutaneously applied 4 times over a time period of 2 days at the vaccination site. Vaccinations 1–4 were given at 3-week intervals followed by a 6-month interval for vaccination 5. To determine antitumor reactivity against unmodified tumor cells,

Fig. 1. Levels and mitogen stimulation capacity of T cells in nonirradiated (***a***, ***c***; n = 5) and irradiated patients (***b***, ***d***; n = 15) at different time points. Relative responses determined at the 1st vaccination were obtained after completion of the IL-2 preconditioning period. In irradiated patients (***b***, ***d***), T cell numbers and mitogen stimulation responses were markedly decreased after radiotherapy. They recovered to normal values after IL-2 treatment. In nonirradiated patients (***a***, ***c***), especially postoperative values for stimulation with different mitogens decreased slightly and were as high as before surgery after IL-2 preconditioning. Con A = Concanavalin A; MLC = mixed lymphocyte culture.


T lymphocytes/μl
4,000
3,500
3,000
2,500
2,000
1,500
1,000
500
0
Preoperative
6 weeks postoperative
1st vaccination
5th vaccination
1a
T lymphocytes/μl
4,000
3,500
3,000
2,500
2,000
1,500
1,000
500
0
Preoperative
After radiation
1st vaccination
5th vaccination
1b
Relative response
3.5
3.0
2.5
2.0
1.5
1.0
0.5
0.0
Con A
PHA
MLC
Preoperative
6 weeks postoperative
1st vaccination
5th vaccination
1c
Relative response
3.5
3.0
2.5
2.0
1.5
1.0
0.5
0.0
Con A
PHA
MLC
Preoperative
6 weeks postoperative
1st vaccination
5th vaccination
1d

challenge tests were performed with 1×10^6 non-virus-modified cells on the upper thigh before the first and before the last vaccination. DTH reactions at the vaccination and at the challenge sites were recorded 24 h after injection by measuring the area of induration.

Immunohistochemistry

Immunohistochemical staining was performed on HNSCC cells and on cryostat sections of the frozen specimens. Fixation and staining were carried out as described [21].

Results

T Cell Levels and Mitogen Stimulation after IL-2 Application

In order to avoid an unwanted decrease in T cell levels at the time of vaccination, during the preconditioning period the patients received 10^6 IU IL-2 four times a week, which was applied in the abdominal wall. T lymphocyte counts were determined at different time points (fig. 1a, b). Mean T cell levels of nonirradiated patients were not reduced after surgery and even slightly increased at the end of the vaccination treatment (fig. 1a). In contrast, T lymphocyte counts of patients who underwent surgery and subsequent radiotherapy showed a marked decrease in mean levels (694 T cells/μl) as determined after the completion of radiotherapy (fig. 1b). This is far below the normal range of 1,017–1,862 T cells/μl. Application of IL-2 was associated with a normalization of T lymphocyte count with a mean value of 1,176/μl at the time of the first vaccination. Interestingly, mean T cell levels remained constant during the vaccination period although the IL-2 dose, which the patients received together with the vaccine, was much lower than during the preconditioning period.

To analyze the functional activity of the T cells, we performed a mitogen stimulation test with concanavalin A and PHA and performed allogeneic stimulation in a mixed lymphocyte culture. Six weeks after surgery we observed a reduced stimulation capacity. This was most pronounced in irradiated tumor patients (fig. 1d). However, at the end of the preconditioning period, mean stimulation values were almost as high as before surgery and thus in the normal range of ≤ 0.5. During the vaccination period, mean values for at least concanavalin A and PHA remained high, while mean mixed lymphocyte culture stimulation in irradiated patients decreased again.

Establishment and Characterization of HNSCC Short-Term Cultures

To obtain vaccine in sufficient quantity and quality, ATV-NDV was prepared for each patient from autologous HNSCC cell cultures. All HNSCC short-term cultures showed homogenous expression of epithelium-specific markers as determined by cytokeratin staining. As shown in figure 2a, expression of MHC

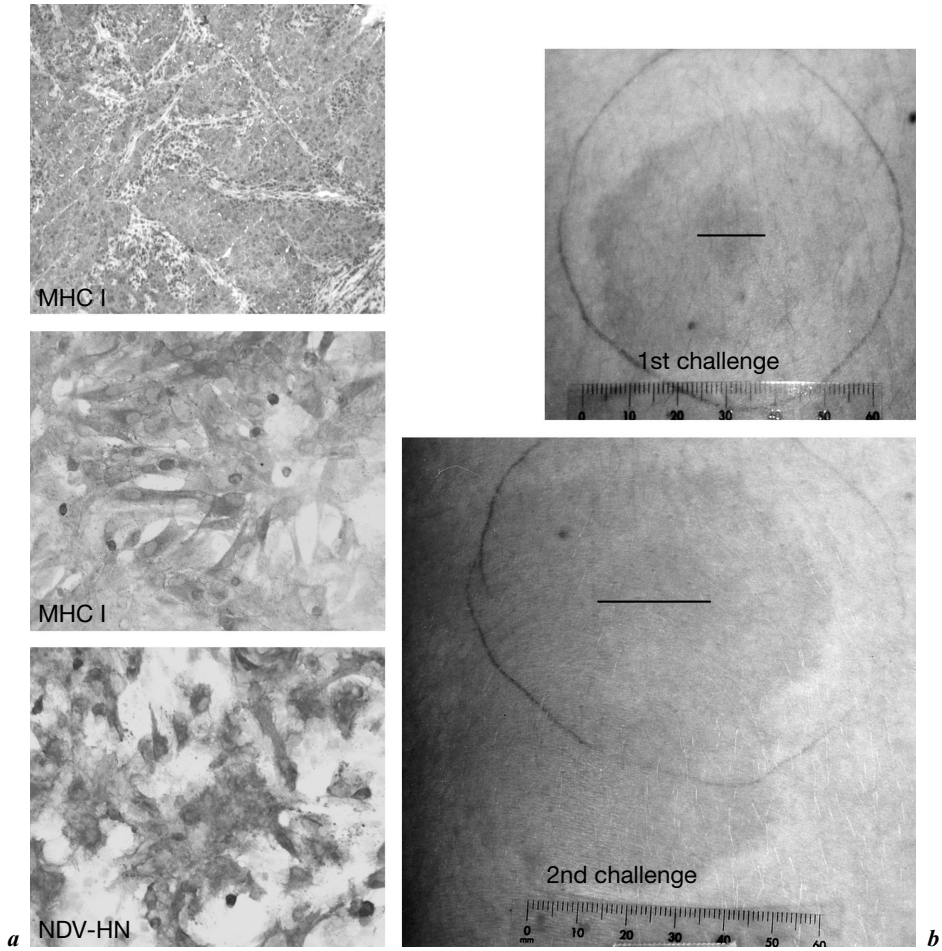


Fig. 2. Vaccine characteristics and skin reactivity before and after vaccine application. ***a*** Immunohistochemical analysis demonstrates expression of MHC class I molecules in tumor cells of the native tumor tissue (upper part), their maintained expression in short-term tumor cell cultures (middle part) and the successful infection of cultured tumor cells with NDV (lower part). ***b*** DTH reactivities to unmodified tumor cells (black bars) before first vaccination (1st challenge) and before the last vaccination (2nd challenge). The increased area of induration in the 2nd challenge test is of particular relevance since it indicates systemic reactivity to autologous tumor cells as they may have remained in the patient.

class I molecules, which are important for the presentation of tumor-associated antigens, was not only observed in the original tumor tissue (upper part) but was maintained in all HNSCC short-term cultures (middle part). Successful infection of HNSCC tumor cells with NDV could be demonstrated in all cases

by staining with an antibody recognizing the viral molecule hemagglutinin neuraminidase (NDV-HN, lower part).

Effects of Vaccination Demonstrated by Immune Monitoring in the Skin

DTH skin reactions – defined as the area of induration at the application site – were determined 24 h after vaccination with 10^7 virus-modified tumor cells as well as after challenge with 10^6 unmodified irradiated tumor cells. Figure 2b shows a representative example of antitumor reactivity against unmodified tumor cells before the first and before the last vaccination (1st and 2nd challenges). Antitumor vaccination was associated with a markedly increased area of induration (see bars in fig. 2b). The increased reactivity to unmodified tumor cells is of particular relevance, since it indicates systemic reactivity to autologous tumor cells, which may have remained in the patient.

Discussion

In the present antitumor vaccination study, we demonstrate in 20 HNSCC patients that postoperative treatment with low-dose IL-2 increases the number of T cells and restores their functional activity. This is of major importance since HNSCC patients have been noted to develop marked surgery- and radiation-induced cellular immune defects [12, 13] that may be unfavorable especially for immunotherapeutic approaches. Effects observed after IL-2 conditioning were maintained during the subsequent antitumor immunization period, in which patients repeatedly received an autologous virus-modified tumor cell vaccine and thus were able to develop an increased systemic cell-mediated immune responsiveness as evidenced by antitumor DTH reactivity.

Although the IL-2 dose we have chosen for preconditioning has marked effects on T cell numbers and functional capacity, it has been reported that even higher IL-2 doses did not improve the prognosis of HNSCC patients [22]. However, in accordance with our observations on the functional capacity of T cells, IL-2 was shown to rescue antigen-specific T cells from radiation-induced apoptosis [23]. Preconditioning with IL-2 may thus be a good way to enhance the immune competence of HNSCC patients, especially after radiation-induced immunosuppression.

With regard to the vaccine preparation, we decided to use individual intact tumor cells obtained from short-term tumor cultures as the source of tumor antigens. This allowed us to produce a vaccine with a standardized high number of tumor cells. The high number of 10 million autologous viable tumor cells

per vaccine might include individually unique tumor antigens derived from mutations or other genetic alterations and might also be representative of the heterogeneity of tumor antigens in an individual tumor of a patient. The use of whole tumor cells eliminates the need to first identify the respective tumor antigens, which would require sophisticated techniques. Since even multiple applications of the vaccine did not induce autoimmune disease, this approach can be considered to be safe [Karcher et al., unpubl. data].

As adjuvant in the tumor vaccine, we employed NDV strain Ulster, based on good experiences in various animal tumor models [16]. Recently, interest in the use of tumor-selective replication-competent viruses such as NDV, which has already been safely applied to many cancer patients in Europe and the USA, has been reviving [8]. NDV possesses antineoplastic, oncolytic as well as immunestimulatory properties [8, 9]. In tumor cells, it induces T-cell-costimulatory activity [24], upregulates MHC and adhesion molecules and induces IFN-α and -β as well as the chemokines RANTES and IP-10 [10]. These factors lead to proinflammatory effects at the vaccination site and thus contribute to the augmentation of cytotoxic antitumor effects [25].

Regarding the clinical outcome of the vaccinated patients, we have indications for an improved overall survival in patients suffering from stage IV tumors that is associated with an increased antitumor memory [Karcher et al., unpubl. data].

Altogether, the present study provides evidence that the preconditioning of HNSCC patients with IL-2 might improve the responsiveness to a tumor vaccine combining multiple tumor antigens with NDV-induced danger signals [7]. This combined approach seems to be an interesting new concept for the treatment of HNSCC patients.

Acknowledgements

The authors wish to thank Renate Steinle, Annette Buttler, Heike Westphal, Ilka Hearn, Hilde Discher and Melanie Bobko for their excellent technical assistance.

References

1 Jemal A, Thomas A, Murray T, Thun M: Cancer statistics. CA Cancer J Clin 2002;52:23–47.
2 Parkin DM, Pisani P, Ferlay J: Global cancer statistics. CA Cancer J Clin 1999;49:33–64.
3 Chang AE, Li Q, Jiang G, Teknos TN, Chepeha DB, Bradford CR: Generation of vaccine-primed lymphocytes for the treatment of head and neck cancer. Head Neck 2003;25:198–209.
4 Leach DR, Krummel MF, Allison JP: Enhancement of antitumor immunity by CTLA-4 blockade. Science 1996;271:1734–1736.

5 Gotte K, Usener D, Riedel F, Hormann K, Schadendorf D, Eichmuller S: Tumor-associated antigens as possible targets for immune therapy in head and neck cancer: Comparative mRNA expression analysis of RAGE and GAGE genes. Acta Otolaryngol 2002;122:546–552.
6 Bier H, Armonat G, Schirrmacher V, Ganzer U: Postoperative active-specific immunotherapy of lymph node micrometastasis in a guinea pig tumor model. ORL J Otorhinolaryngol Relat Spec 1989;51:197–205.
7 Matzinger P: The danger model: A renewed sense of self. Science 2002;296:301–305.
8 Nelson NJ: Scientific interest in Newcastle disease virus is reviving. J Natl Cancer Inst 1999;91: 1708–1710.
9 Schirrmacher V, Haas C, Bonifer R, Ahlert T, Gerhards R, Ertel C: Human tumor cell modification by virus infection: An efficient and safe way to produce cancer vaccine with pleiotropic immune stimulatory properties when using Newcastle disease virus. Gene Ther 1999; 6:63–73.
10 Washburn B, Schirrmacher V: Human tumor cell infection by Newcastle disease virus leads to upregulation of HLA and cell adhesion molecules and to induction of interferons, chemokines and finally apoptosis. Int J Oncol 2002;21:85–93.
11 Schlag P, Manasterski M, Gerneth T, Hohenberger P, Dueck M, Herfarth C, Liebrich W, Schirrmacher V: Active specific immunotherapy with Newcastle-disease-virus-modified autologous tumor cells following resection of liver metastases in colorectal cancer: First evaluation of clinical response of a phase II trial. Cancer Immunol Immunother 1992;35:325–330.
12 Ockert D, Schirrmacher V, Beck N, Stoelben E, Ahlert T, Flechtenmacher J, Hagmuller E, Buchcik R, Nagel M, Saeger HD: Newcastle disease virus-infected intact autologous tumor cell vaccine for adjuvant active specific immunotherapy of resected colorectal carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 1996;2:21–28.
13 Ahlert T, Sauerbrei W, Bastert G, Ruhland S, Bartik B, Simiantonaki N, Schumacher J, Hacker B, Schumacher M, Schirrmacher V: Tumor-cell number and viability as quality and efficacy parameters of autologous virus-modified cancer vaccines in patients with breast or ovarian cancer. J Clin Oncol 1997;15:1354–1366.
14 Möbus V, Horn S, Stock M, Schirrmacher V: Tumor cell vaccination for gynecological tumors. Hybridoma 1993;12:543–547.
15 Pomer S, Schirrmacher V, Thiele R: Tumor response and 4 year survival data of patients with advanced renal carcinoma treated with autologous tumor vaccine and subcutaneous r-IL-2 and IFN-alpha2b. Int J Oncol 1995;6:947–954.
16 Schirrmacher V, Ahlert T, Pröbstle T, Steiner HH, Herold-Mende C, Gerhards R, Hagmuller E: Immunization with virus-modified tumor cells. Semin Oncol 1998;25:677–696.
17 Steiner H, Bonsanto MM, Beckhove P, Brysch M, Geletneky K, Ahmadi R, Schuele-Freyer R, Kremer P, Ranaie G, Matejic D, Bauer H, Kiessling M, Kunze S, Schirrmacher V, Herold-Mende C: Anti-tumor vaccination of patients with glioblastoma multiforme: A pilot study to assess feasibility, safety and clinical benefit. In revision.
18 Karcher J, Reisser C, Daniel V, Herold-Mende C: Expression der immunsupprimierenden Zytokine TGF-ß2 und IL-10 in Kopf-Hals-Tumoren–Vergleich von Serumwerten und Gewebeexpression. HNO 1999;47:879–884.
19 Tisch M, Heimlich F, Daniel V, Opelz G, Maier H: Cellular immune defect caused by postsurgical radiation therapy in patients with head and neck cancer. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 1998; 119:412–417.
20 Heimlich F, Dietz A, Daniel V, Maier H: Immunosuppression caused by head and neck surgery. HNO 1999;47:885–892.
21 Herold-Mende C, Mueller MM, Bonsanto MM, et al: Clinical impact and functional aspects of tenascin expression during glioma progression. Int J Cancer 2002;98:362–369.
22 Mantovani G, Bianchi A, Curreli L, Ghiani M, Santona MC, Proto E, Puxeddu P: Neo-adjuvant chemotherapy +/– immunotherapy with s.c. IL 2 in advanced squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck: A pilot study. Biotherapy 1994;8:91–98.
23 Mor F, Cohen IR: IL-2 rescues antigen-specific T cells from radiation or dexamethasone-induced apoptosis: Correlation with induction of Bcl-2. J Immunol 1996;156:515–522.

24 Termeer CC, Schirrmacher V, Brocker EB, Becker JC: Newcastle-disease-virus infection induces a B7–1/ B7–2 independent T-cell-costimulatory activity in human melanoma cells. Cancer Gene Ther 2000;7:316–323.
25 Von Hoegen P, Zawatzky R, Schirrmacher V: Modification of tumor cells by a low dose of Newcastle disease virus. III. Potentiation of tumor specific cytolytic T-cell activity via induction of interferon alfa, beta. Cell Immunol 1990;126:80–90.

Dr. rer. nat. Christel Herold-Mende
Universitäts-HNO-Klinik
AG Molekulare Zellbiologie, INF 400, DE–69120 Heidelberg (Germany)
Tel. +49 6221 56 39504, Fax +49 6221/56 5362, E-Mail H.Mende@med.uni-heidelberg.de

Bier H (ed): Current Research in Head and Neck Cancer.
Adv Otorhinolaryngol. Basel, Karger, 2005, vol 62, pp 184–200

Prognostic Factors

Confusion Caused by Bad Quality of Design, Analysis and Reporting of Many Studies

Willi Sauerbrei

Abteilung Medizinische Biometrie und Statistik, Institut für Medizinische Biometrie und Medizinische Informatik, Universitätsklinikum Freiburg, Freiburg, Deutschland

Abstract

In contrast to therapeutic research guidance to design, conduct, analyse and report studies on prognostic factors is less developed and often several deficiencies are stressed. For the assessment of the importance of a factor of interest a systematic review of the corresponding studies would be required, however, this is hardly possible because of many weaknesses in the individual studies. In this article I will discuss several deficiencies of the analysis of prognostic factor studies and shortly discuss problems of reporting and of a summary assessment. By using 3 studies in cancer and a hypotheitcal study as examples I will discuss categorization respectively the determination of a functional form for a continuous factor, sample size, multivariable analysis and data quality. The message of this paper is that serious improvements of prognostic factor studies are required. This can be achieved by a closer collaboration between several disciplines and a closer collaboration at the international level. Specifically, experienced statisticians have to play a central role in the planning, analysis, interpretation and reporting of these studies.

Cancer is a heterogeneous disease with tumours being highly variable in their growth rates, patterns of metastases and other biological characteristics. Several molecular markers that might complement the TNM system have been investigated in the last two decades in order to improve the knowledge of disease evolution, but the results of published studies are often inconsistent or even contradictory, thus limiting their value and potential application [1].

About 10 years ago, Altman [2] has heavily criticized the quality of medical research. In one sentence he nicely summarized several deficiencies. He stated that in numerous studies of the medical literature, in both general and specialist journals, researchers ‘use the wrong techniques (either wilfully or in

ignorance), use the right techniques wrongly, misinterpret their results, report their results selectively, cite the literature selectively and draw unjustified conclusions'. He discussed several reasons for this situation.

Concerning therapeutic research with the aim to find a treatment strategy which is in some sense 'better' than the current 'standard' treatment, the situation has improved, at least for some diseases such as breast cancer or gynaecological cancer. This assessment is based on personal experiences for about two decades in these diseases.

Concerning prognostic factors, the quality of research is still poor. Despite a huge research effort and thousands of papers, the prognostic value of most traditional factors under discussion is uncertain and the usefulness of prognostic indices or classification schemes in oncology is often unproven [3]. Because of the relevance for the treatment of patients, clinicians are now more interested in a predictive factor, which is in methodological terminology an interaction of treatment with a factor of interest. Unfortunately, in the medical community the value of specific predictive factors is also controversial. Many statements concerning the predictive value of baseline variables are based on subgroup findings, but often without appropriate statistical tests for interaction [4].

For both prognostic and predictive markers, summary assessments are required in order to identify the most valuable markers for a disease of interest. Obviously, this requires a number of important steps, starting with systematic reports of all studies. Relevant studies have to be identified, and the required information has to be extracted from each study, or even better, original data should be available for re-analyses. As the latter may be time-consuming, costly and very difficult, summary assessments are often based on reports in the literature. Obviously this requires standards of reporting. For randomized trials, the CONSORT (Consolidated Standards of Reporting Trials) statement was developed and improved reporting [5–7]. In contrast, reporting of prognostic factor studies is hardly addressed in the literature, a meta-analytic approach to assess the prognostic value of a marker is still an exception. To investigate the practicality of such an approach, an empirical investigation of a systematic review of tumour markers for neuroblastoma was performed by Riley et al. [8]. Based on 260 studies identified they concluded that the reporting was often inadequate, in terms of both statistical analysis and presentation, and that there was considerable heterogeneity for many important clinical/statistical factors.

Although guidelines for the evaluation of prognostic factors have been published more than a decade ago [9], the quality of research in this area is still bad. This has also been recognized by clinicians. In a review of prognostic and predictive factors in breast cancer, Gasparini [10] mentions 'the methodology of studies on prognostic and predictive indicators that are, at present, the most disappointing, controversial, and debatable aspect of this field of research. In fact,

most of our knowledge on the usefulness of novel biomarkers for prognostic and predictive purposes is from retrospective studies that often report repetitive and inconclusive results due to methodological biases related to: inadequate specificity and sensitivity of the assay, lack of quality control for inter/intra-laboratory variations, inadequate sample size or length of follow-up, suboptimal statistical analyses, co-determination of confounding variables or heterogeneous therapy.'

Some researchers may argue that these are problems from the past which may be less relevant in the 'new era' of molecular markers, where data from thousands of genes are collected in order to develop new and better prognostic classification schemes and to identify groups of genes predicting the usefulness of therapeutic strategies. However, many of the issues are also relevant, some of them will be even more critical. In the summary of a review article on the future of cancer prognostic studies, Hall and Going [11] state: 'Many studies have attempted to define useful prognostic and predictive factors in cancer but few have achieved acceptance in clinical practice because of methodological weaknesses. These include failure to test clearly formulated hypotheses, inadequate sample size, inappropriate multiple significance testing, arbitrary definition of patient groups, inadequately reproducible assays, and failure to verify prognostic factors with data independent of the data which suggested the original hypothesis. This unsatisfactory situation will persist until critical attention is routinely paid to study design and prospective validation of supposed prognostic and predictive factors, without which classical approaches will be suboptimally exploited and the flood of data from new molecular technologies will not be used effectively. We propose that prognostic factors should be evaluated in three phases: I, assay definition; II, retrospective testing; III, prospective testing, ideally as a designed part of clinical trials.'

Many critical issues are mentioned in these summaries, several challenges and barriers from the laboratory and clinical side were discussed by Pritzker [12], and for further methodological issues see Altman and Lyman [13].

The main aim of this paper is to demonstrate some deficiencies of the analysis of these studies. Furthermore I will discuss problems of a summary assessment for a prognostic factor of interest.

Issues in Data Analysis

Data Sets Used for Demonstration

Freiburg DNA Study

The database of the study consisted of all patients who had surgery for primary breast cancer between March 1982 and December 1987 at the

Department of Gynaecology of the University of Freiburg. Paraffin-embedded material was available for 372 patients. Some exclusion criteria (e.g. pretreated patients or history of malignancy) were defined retrospectively, which left 266 patients with a median follow-up time of 82 months for the analysis.

Eight important patient characteristics were investigated. Besides S phase fraction (SPF), we consider here only lymph node status and ploidy status. Except for SPF in aneuploid tumours, the data are nearly complete. According to the treatment policies of the clinic and the exclusion criteria, none of the node-negative patients had adjuvant chemotherapy or hormonal therapy. One hundred fifteen events (39 in node-negative and 76 in node-positive; 48 in diploid and 67 in aneuploid tumours) have been observed for recurrence-free survival, which was defined as the time from surgery to the first locoregional recurrence, distant metastasis, second malignancy or death. More details about the study can be found in Pfisterer et al. [14].

Prognostic Factors in Node-Positive Breast Cancer

From July 1984 to December 1989, the German Breast Cancer Study Group (GBSG 2) recruited 720 patients with primary node-positive breast cancer into a comprehensive cohort study [15]. Randomized and non-randomized patients were eligible, and about two thirds were entered into the randomized part. The effectiveness of 3 versus 6 cycles of chemotherapy and additional hormonal treatment with tamoxifen were investigated in a 2×2 design. After a median follow-up time of nearly 5 years, 312 patients had had at least 1 event (recurrence of the disease or death). The event-free survival time of the 686 patients (with 299 events) who had complete data for the factors age, tumour size, number of positive lymph nodes, progesterone and oestrogen receptor status, menopausal status and tumour grade is considered in this paper. The prognostic factors comprise 5 continuous, 1 binary and 1 ordinal variable (tumour grade). Categorizations were based on medical considerations and were used by Schumacher et al. [16] for the analysis of the randomized trial.

Glioma

A randomized trial to compare two chemotherapy regimes included 447 patients with malignant glioma. At the time of the analysis, 293 patients had died and the median survival time from the date of randomization was about 11 months. Besides therapy, 12 variables (age, 3 ordinal and 8 binary variables) which might influence the survival time were considered. The 3 variables measured on an ordinal scale (the Karnofsky index, the type of surgical resection and the grade of malignancy) were each represented by 2 dummy variables, resulting in a total of 15 predictors denoted by X_1, ..., X_{15}. For these

predictors, complete data were available for 413 patients (274 events) used here in a complete case analysis. A detailed description of the study and a comparison of several approaches to investigate the influence of prognostic factors and therapy are given by Ulm et al. [17], Sauerbrei and Schumacher [18] and Sauerbrei [19].

Continuous Factor – Categorization or Determination of Functional Form?

Often variables are measured in a continuous form; however, changing it to a categorical form is common practice in many analyses. An important reason is that categorization makes it easier for clinicians to use information about the relationship between an outcome and a predictor variable in making treatment decisions [20]. Another reason is that the functional form of the influence is unknown and that analysis based on categorization data is easier.

In particular, values of a variable are frequently divided into just two groups. Categorization enables researchers to avoid strong assumptions about the relation between the marker and risk, but at the expense of throwing away information. The information loss is greatest with only two groups, but this approach is common, often by splitting at the sample median [21]. It is well known, however, that the results of analyses can vary if different cutpoints are used. Often, several cutpoints are investigated, and the one that corresponds to the most significant relation with outcome is chosen. In other words, the cutpoint defining 'low' and 'high' risk is chosen that minimizes the p value relating the prognostic factor to outcome. The cutpoint so chosen is often termed 'optimal', but this description is inadvisable because of the well-known problem of multiple testing. Altman et al. [21] prefer to call it the 'minimum p value approach'.

This approach requires the systematic variation of the cutpoint when categorizing a continuous covariate like SPF in the Freiburg DNA study and computing a p value for each cutpoint. In figure 1a we show that the p value is unstable and that the cutpoint corresponding to the minimal p value is a result of chance.

Even more importantly, this approach clearly leads to a serious problem of multiple testing [22]. When a series of statistical tests, each with a prespecified nominal type 1 error, for example 5%, is performed on the same data, then this procedure leads to a global error rate for the whole procedure that might be much higher than 5%. Theoretical arguments [23, 24] and results from simulation studies [21, 25] demonstrate that the false-positive rate can be inflated to values exceeding 40% when a nominal level of 5% is used. A correction, valid for large sample sizes, of the minimal p value to allow for the multiple testing can be derived [21].

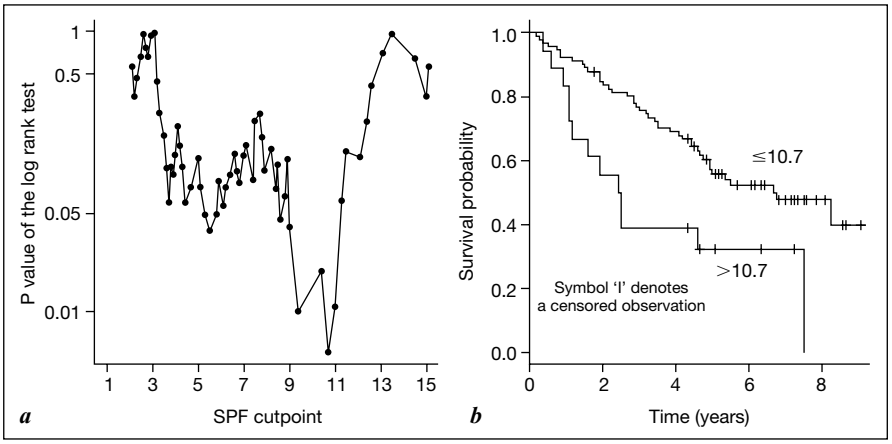


Fig. 1. DNA example, node-positive population. ***a*** Dependence of the p value of the log rank test on the SPF cutpoint chosen. ***b*** Kaplan-Meier estimates for 'low' and 'high' SPF values, respectively, categorization determined by the 'optimal' cutpoint approach.

A simple approximation for the corrected p value [21] is

$p_{cor} \approx -1.63\ p_{min}(1 + 2.35 \log_e p_{min})$ for $\varepsilon = 10\%$
$p_{cor} \approx -3.13\ p_{min}(1 + 1.65 \log_e p_{min})$ for $\varepsilon = 5\%$

where p_{min} denotes the minimum p value of the log rank statistic, taken over the selection interval characterized by the proportion ε of smallest and of largest values of the prognostic factor that are not considered as potential cutpoints.

For example, to reach a value $p_{cor} = 0.05$ requires $p_{min} = 0.002$ when $\varepsilon = 10\%$ and even $p_{min} = 0.001$ when $\varepsilon = 5\%$. Using the correction formula, the corrected p value for their optimal cutpoint in the full data set of the SPF example was 0.403, in contrast to the minimum p value of 0.037 which would indicate a significant influence of SPF.

Using this approach, most likely different cutpoints will be termed 'optimal' in different subpopulations. For the node-positive population, the optimal cutpoint for SPF is from 10.7 to 10.9 (fig. 1). In the node-negative population, the optimal cutpoint is from 9.0 to 9.1; analysing both populations together results in an optimal cutpoint of 5.4. In further populations, e.g. defined by ploidy status, other optimal cutpoints were derived [21]. Analysing the data in a multivariate analysis, e.g. adjusting for tumour size and age, will furthermore change the optimal cutpoint, originally intended as cutpoint to classify patients into two groups with 'low' and 'high' SPF values, respectively.

Ten years ago, SPF was seen by many researchers as an important prognostic factor in breast cancer. Altman et al. [21] found 19 cutpoints used to

classify SPF into high and low values; some of them were derived by an optimal cutpoint approach. Nowadays, it is well known that the prognostic value of SPF was heavily overestimated by many researchers. Overestimation of the effect is illustrated by the two Kaplan-Meier estimates for 'low' and 'high' SPF values, the categorization for SPF is based on the 'optimal' cutpoint approach (fig. 1b). Statistical methods have been proposed to correct for the overestimation [26]. More details on problems of the optimal cutpoint approach are discussed in Holländer and Schumacher [27].

To avoid information loss and to avoid the unrealistic way of describing a smooth relationship between a predictor and an outcome variable by a cutpoint model, it is preferable to investigate the functional influence for a continuous prognostic factor.

Usually, in regression models, the effect of continuous covariates is assumed to be linear. However, for some prognostic factors this assumption may be wrong, leading to wrong conclusions or even declaring a factor erroneously as uninfluential. A systematic investigation for sensible non-linear relationships is a better way to analyse the data. We propose to use the fractional polynomial (FP) approach developed by Royston and Altman [28]. Here, one or two terms of the form X^p are fitted, the exponents p being chosen from the small preselected set of integer and non-integer values $\{-2, -1, -0.5, 0, 0.5, 1, 2, 3\}$. Although only a small number of transformations is considered (7 for FPs of degree 1 and 36 for FPs of degree 2, where the values from the set are combined), FP functions provide a rich class of possible functional forms leading to a reasonable fit to the data in many situations. Royston and Altman [28] dealt mainly with the case of a single predictor, but they also suggested and illustrated an algorithm for fitting FPs in multivariable models. By combining backward elimination, which aims to exclude from a model all factors without influence on the outcome, with the search for the most suitable FP transformation for continuous predictors, Sauerbrei and Royston [29] propose modifications to this multivariable FP procedure. A further extension of the multivariate FP procedure aims to reflect basic medical knowledge of the types of relationship to be expected between certain predictors and risk. Sauerbrei et al. [30] use this approach to investigate the functional influence of 7 standard prognostic factors in a prospective study on node-positive breast cancer patients. They show that the FP approach can provide a clearer insight into the nature of the relationship between the values of the factors and the risk of recurrence or death than usual approaches based (i) on the assumption of a linear relationship for continuous variables or (ii) categorized data (fig. 2). With both approaches age would not have a significant effect on recurrence-free survival, p values are 0.9 for a linear relationship and 0.2 for the categorized variable. For the latter, the 2 cutpoints were prespecified. The figure clearly demonstrates a strong non-linear effect of age on recurrence-free survival time ($p = 0.001$). Sauerbrei et al. [30] discuss that

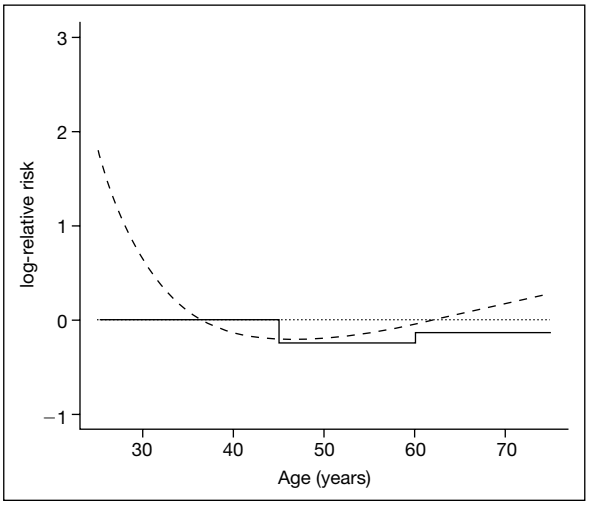


Fig. 2. Estimated log-relative risk function for age obtained by the FP– (- - -), categorization (———) and linear (·····) approach in the breast cancer study.

the proposed functional form explains the current controversial discussion about the prognostic value of age in the literature. They argue that the controversies are caused by differences concerning the use of other prognostic factors considered in a multivariable framework and by different cutpoints used to define 'young age' for a breast cancer patient.

Sample Size

If the role of a new prognostic factor is to be investigated, a careful planning of an appropriate study is required. This includes an assessment of the power of the study in terms of sample sizes. An adequate analysis of the independent prognostic effect of a new factor has to be adjusted for the existing standard factors [31]. With survival or event-free survival as the endpoint, this will often be done with the Cox proportional hazards model. Sample size and power formulae in survival analysis have been developed for randomized treatment comparisons. In the analysis of prognostic factors, however, the covariates included are expected to be correlated with the factor of primary interest. In this situation, the existing sample size and power formulae are not valid, a simple extension recently proposed by Schmoor et al. [32] can be used.

In reality, studies on prognostic factors are often not carefully planned, and consideration of sample size and power are an exception. See some of the cited

Table 1. Hypothetical study: influence of a binary prognostic factor (F) on observing an event

Factor	Event		Total
	yes	no	
F+	30 (10%)	270 (90%)	300 (66.6%)
F–	6 (4%)	144 (96%)	150 (33.3%)
Total	36 (8%)	414 (92%)	450

critique in the introduction [10, 11, 13]. Often it is ignored that the number of events – sometimes called 'effective sample size' – determines the power of a study and not the number of patients recruited. Therefore the prognosis of a population and the lengths of follow-up determine the required number of patients to enter in a study. With a small number of events it is only possible to detect very large effects which are rather unlikely in reality, at least if the assessment is done correctly by also considering the 'standard' factors in a multivariable context. For example, to detect an effect with a relative risk of 1.5 for a binary prognostic factor (prevalence 30%), 227 events are required for a power of 80%, type I error 5%. If in the intended follow-up time an event is expected only in about half of the patients, the required sample size will be 454. A large effect (relative risk, RR = 2.0) can be detected with a much smaller effective sample size of 78.

The required number of events increases if a variable of interest is correlated with other variables included in a multivariable model. For a population with a good prognosis, even large effects can only be detected with sample sizes of several hundred patients and with a long-term follow-up.

A large study is also required if the prevalence of a factor is low. For example, with a prevalence of 10%, the required number of events increases to 530 (RR = 1.5) and to 182 (RR = 2.0), respectively, other assumptions unchanged. For more details, see Schmoor et al. [32] or Schumacher et al. [33]. Based on these calculations, it is obvious that many prognostic factor studies have only a very low power to detect a prognostic effect of relevant size.

The seriousness of this issue is partly presented in a systematic review of tumour markers for neuroblastoma [8] (see also the summary assessment below). For 13 tumour markers of interest, they identified 318 reports which would have been suitable to estimate an effect of the marker. However, they had to exclude 122 (38.4%) reports because the sample size was 25 or lower! Probably the percentage of reports with a sufficient power, say 80%, was very low for an effect with a usual size.

With a simple hypothetical study, we will further illustrate the necessity of a sufficient sample size. In table 1 we give the result of a study with a binary prognostic factor (F) and a binary outcome.

In a study with 450 patients, we observe a prevalence of 66.6% for the factor F. So far, 8% of patients have an event. The frequency of an event is 10% if the factor is present, but only 4% if it is not present. The estimated RR is 2.5, and a χ^2 test of independence gives a p value of 0.027, indicating that F has an influence on the probability of observing an event. Even this large effect would not have been significant ($p = 0.118$), if the study had included 225 patients only, with all percentages in the table unchanged (halving absolute numbers in the table).

Doubling the numbers in the table gives a study with 900 patients and a highly significant p value of 0.002. Often, the p values for the observed RR of 2.5 would be interpreted as being 'non-significant ($n = 225$)', 'significant ($n = 450$)' and 'highly significant ($n = 900$)'. This illustrates that the p value is highly dependent on the sample size (respectively the effective sample size in studies with survival data) and that erroneous conclusions are possible if an assessment is based on p values only. They have to be complemented by estimating the size of the effect with the corresponding confidence interval. In our example the RR is always 2.5, the 95% confidence intervals are 0.75–8.37 for $n = 225$, 1.06–5.87 for $n = 450$ and 1.37–4.57 for $n = 900$.

Despite the large sample size, confidence intervals for the estimate of the RR are still large. One reason is the small number of events observed so far. Let us assume that we observe 4 times the number of events in the example, with the RR and the prevalence unchanged (120 events in 300 F+ patients and 24 events in 150 F– patients). In the study with 450 patients, this larger number of events substantially reduces the 95% confidence interval of our estimate of the RR to 1.69–3.70, the p value is now <0.001.

Multivariate Analysis

Data analysts are often faced with many predictor variables which may have an influence on outcome. Variable selection strategies are needed in order to identify the subset of 'important' predictors. In regression models, several strategies such as sequential procedures (e.g. stepwise selection or backward elimination) or all-subset selection with different optimization criteria (e.g. Akaike or Bayesian information criteria) are available, but they may give different answers. Expert knowledge is required for a sensible application. Although subject matter knowledge should guide selection, some variables will inevitably be chosen mainly by statistical principles – essentially, p values for

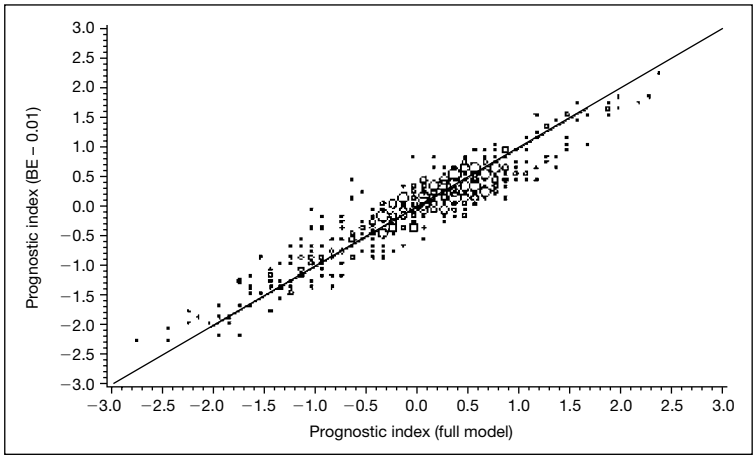


Fig. 3. Scatter plot of the prognostic indices from the full model (15 variables) and from a model selected by backward elimination (BE) with 4 variables for 413 patients in the glioma study: the radius of each circle represents the number of cases. From Sauerbrei [19].

including or excluding variables. The definition of a 'best' strategy to produce a model which has good predictive properties in new data is difficult. A model which fits the current data set may well be too much data driven to give adequate predictive accuracy in other settings. Several difficulties and issues how to handle them are discussed in the statistical literature [19, 34, 35].

Generalizability and practical usefulness are other issues which have to be kept in mind when developing a predictive model. Because it would require measuring all variables in an identical or at least in a similar way, it is obvious that a prognostic model based on many variables is 'not clinically useful' and is 'quickly forgotten' [3].

For patients with a glioma, Sauerbrei [19] developed several prognostic models by using backward elimination and discussed several issues of model complexity. The scatter plot of the prognostic indices from the full model with 15 variables and from the most simple model with 4 variables only shows the high correlation (Pearson's correlation coefficient 0.94) between these two indices.

Concerning the practical usefulness the index based on 4 variables is clearly preferable; concerning the predictive ability there is hardly any difference between them. Sauerbrei [19] also illustrates several problems of models which are too complex and argues for greater simplicity of final regression models.

With statistical packages it is easy to perform a multivariable analysis, but all approaches have several more or less obvious assumptions. Violations of the

assumptions can result in wrong models and wrong conclusions. Multivariable modelling is a task for the statistical expert.

Tree-based approaches [36] and artificial neural nets [37, 38] are often used as alternatives to regression models for the analysis of prognostic factor studies. In some data sets, Schumacher et al. [33] compare results between the approaches and assess the prognostic ability of classification schemes derived from them. The authors give several arguments that regression models are the standard tool for analysing the prognostic relevance of various factors. As the other approaches are substantially different in their assumptions and in their way of modelling, they can complement this analysis.

To improve the understanding of the basics of multivariable analysis for clinical readers, Katz [39] discusses issues such as what multivariable models are, why they are used, what types exist, what assumptions underline them, how they should be interpreted and how they can be evaluated. For other readable papers for clinicians on the use of the Cox model, see Baker et al. [40], and on multivariate data analysis of survival data, see Bradburn et al. [41].

Data Quality

It is obvious that data quality has a strong influence on the assessment of a prognostic factor. Many papers are published on the reproducibility of measurements, and statistical investigations have shown that errors in measurement will result in underestimating a true effect. This will be illustrated with an extension of the hypothetical example from the section on 'sample size' above. If in table 1 the status of factor F is misclassified in 10% of the patients (3 events and 27 non-events as F– instead of the correct F+; 15 non-events from F– to F+), the estimated RR is reduced to 1.74. Even for n = 450, the corresponding p value (p = 0.130) would now be much larger than the usual significance criteria of 5%.

Another important issue of data quality is the completeness of data. For studies with interest in survival data, completeness of follow-up is necessary in order to observe all events. The influence of the effective sample size (number of events) on the power of a study was discussed earlier. For patients without an event, observed survival time is calculated up to the last information, the term 'censored' survival time is used. Because methods for the analysis of survival data, e.g. Kaplan-Meier estimator or Cox model, usually assume that the mechanism of censoring does not depend on the event time, it can be very critical if incomplete follow-up of a patient depends on a prognostic factor of a patient. For example, a patient with a bad status of health may not come (may not be able to come) to an intended follow-up visit. The simplest (and usual!) way is

to use the information up to the last visit; however, this can (seriously) bias the analysis of survival time if the bad health status is the reason for the missing follow-up information.

A further issue is completeness of data for prognostic factors, which is a frequent complication. Most often it is assumed that the data are 'missing at random' and the standard approach in most statistical packages is a complete case analysis, that is, all subjects with at least one missing value in the covariates are excluded from the analysis [42]. In a multivariate analysis this may result in a substantial reduction of the sample size, even if for each variable only a small percentage of patients has missing values. For example, if 97% of the data are available for each of 7 variables of interest, up to 21% (3×7) of the patients will be excluded in a complete case analysis. Obviously, with such an approach a lot of information is wasted. Other issues arise in a multivariable analysis if information is missing for one variable in a substantial part of the patients, e.g. in a third. There are several ways to impute values for the missing values starting with simple approaches, e.g. the mean from patients with information, to more complicated multiple imputation techniques where the imputed value depends on the correlation with other variables in the study [42, 43]. Because the missing value issue is specific in each study, it is not possible to give general guidelines; experienced statisticians have to handle this issue.

Summary Assessment of a Prognostic Factor

For all diseases a large number of prognostic markers is discussed. Systematic reviews and meta-analytical approaches to identify the most valuable prognostic markers are needed because usually conflicting evidence relating to markers is published across a number of studies. Obviously, this requires a number of important steps, starting with systematic reports of all studies. For randomized trials the CONSORT statement [5] was developed and improved reporting. Weaknesses of the original version were addressed in a revised version [6, 7].

Although there is hardly any empirical evidence on the issue of publication bias in prognostic factor studies, it is most likely that it is more serious than in the context of randomized trials. For the latter situation, the problem has been known for a long time [44–46]. As prognostic factor studies are often based on historical data, it is much easier to conduct such a study; often, it is even done by a small group of researches and students within several months. If the result is 'positive', e.g. a large effect of the intended direction is found, a paper will be submitted and may be published. If the result is 'negative', researchers may not even submit a manuscript on the study, or it is more likely

Table 2. Published reports for 3 prognostic factors for neuroblastoma [8]

Markername	Papers	OS and DFS reports	Total successful estimates	Estimates U/A	Different cut-off groups	Different stage groups	Different age groups
MYC-N	151	194	94	77/17	9	9	4
CD44	8	8	3	3/0	1	1	2
MDR	16	30	16	13/3	8	3	3

For more explanations, see the text. OS = Overall Survival; DFS = Disease Free Survival; U/A = estimates from unadjusted/adjusted (multivariate) analysis.

that editors reject the manuscript. Within the current situation of research in prognostic factor studies, it is obvious that identification of all studies for a specific marker of interest is impossible.

A further critical issue is the reporting of prognostic factor studies. A large systematic investigation of this issue highlights that reporting is in general insufficient [8]. In a systematic review of tumour markers for neuroblastoma, 260 studies which considered 130 different markers were identified. The authors concluded that 'the reporting of these studies was often inadequate, in terms of both statistical analysis and presentation, and there was considerable heterogeneity for many important clinical/statistical factors. These problems restricted both the extraction of data and the meta-analysis of results from the primary studies, limiting feasibility of the evidence-based approach.'

As key problems they identified:

(1) no appropriate statistical analysis performed or reported;
(2) hazard ratio not calculated or not reported;
(3) inexact p values provided;
(4) group numbers and group events not given;
(5) marker studies too small.

Some issues are obvious by considering reports for the markers MYC-N, CD44 and the multi-drug resistance protein (MDR) in table 2. For MYC-N, 151 papers were identified for which 194 reported results for overall survival and disease-free survival, respectively. However, successful estimates of the effect could only be extracted for 94 (48.5%) of them. Only 17 of these estimates could be derived from a multivariable analysis, adjusting for other factors. The majority of these estimates (77) is only from a univariate analysis. In these papers, 9 different cut-off values were found to categorize MYC-N; 9 different stage groups and 4 different age groups were used.

For CD44 and MDR, the number of reports is much smaller. The limited information from multivariable analysis is obvious.

The paper by Riley et al. [8] clearly demonstrates the seriousness of problems of research on prognostic factors. I agree with their statement that their findings for tumour markers within the neuroblastoma literature can be generalized to other prognostic markers and other disease areas. The resulting problems for a sensible systematic assessment of the prognostic ability of markers are obvious [47]. Improvement of reporting is a prerequisite for an improvement of research for prognostic factors. Some proposals towards guidelines for improved reporting are discussed by Riley et al. [8], specific guidelines are currently under development by a joint working group of the National Cancer Institute of the USA and by the EORTC. In the future, the guidelines may play a similar role to the CONSORT statement for the reporting of randomized trials, hoping that they can help to avoid some important and obvious mistakes in the design and analysis of these studies and that they can lead to a substantial improvement of reporting of these studies.

Beside improvement of reporting, a summary assessment for a marker of interest seems to require availability of full individual patient data for a 'well-defined' group of studies which should be incorporated in the summary. In order to avoid serious problems caused by publication bias, this latter issue is important.

It may also be sensible that researchers work together towards planned pooled analyses, a concept considered important in epidemiological research. Together with further issues of systematic reviews of observational studies this is discussed in detail by Blettner et al. [48].

Conclusion

In this paper, I have considered several critical issues of prognostic factor studies. Specifically, I have tried to show several basic statistical issues which are still handled insufficiently in many studies. Obviously, this represents a subjective choice and view of the author.

Much more on this topic can be found in Schumacher et al. [33] and other papers and books (e.g. Simon and Altman [31], Altman and Lyman [13]). The obvious messages of these papers are: firstly, that serious improvement is required (and is possible) in this type of research; secondly, that improvement requires the close collaboration between several disciplines – experienced statisticians have to play a central role in the planning, analysis, interpretation and reporting of these studies; thirdly, that summary assessments of prognostic factors require a close collaboration at an international level. In the research on treatment strategies, this has been successfully done for many years in several diseases.

References

1 Boracchi P, Biganzoli E: Markers of prognosis and response to treatment: Ready for clinical use in oncology? A biostatistician's viewpoint. Int J Biol Markers 2003;18:65–69.
2 Altman DG: The scandal of poor medical research. BMJ 1994;308:283–284.
3 Wyatt JC, Altman DG: Prognostic models: Clinically useful or quickly forgotten? Commentary. BMJ 1995;311:1539–1541.
4 Assmann S, Pocock S, Enos L, Kasten L: Subgroup analysis and other (mis)uses of baseline data in clinical trials. Lancet 2000;255:1064–1069.
5 Begg C, Cho M, Eastwood S, Horton R, Moher D, Olkin I, et al: Improving the quality of reporting of randomized controlled trials: The CONSORT statement. JAMA 1996;276:637–639.
6 Moher D, Schulz K, Altman D: The CONSORT statement: Revised recommendations for improving the quality of reports of parallel-group randomized trials. Ann Intern Med 2001;134:657–662.
7 Altman D, Shulz K, Moher D, Egger M, Davidoff F, Elbourne D, Gøtzsche P, Lang T: The revised CONSORT statement for reporting randomized trials: Explanation and elaboration. Ann Intern Med 2001;13:663–664.
8 Riley RD, Abrams KR, Sutton AJ, Lambert PC, et al: Reporting of prognostic markers: Current problems and development of guidelines for evidence based practice in the future. Br J Cancer 2003;88:1191–1198.
9 McGuire WL: Breast cancer prognostic factors: Evaluation guidelines. J Natl Cancer Inst 1991; 83:154–155.
10 Gasparini G: Prognostic variables in node-negative and node-positve breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res Treat 1998;52:321–331.
11 Hall PA, Going JJ: Predicting the future: A critical appraisal of cancer prognosis studies. Histopathology 1999;35:189–194.
12 Pritzker K: Cancer biomarkers: Easier said than done. Clin Chem 2002;48:1147–1150.
13 Altman DG, Lyman GH: Methodological challenges in the evaluation of prognostic factors in breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res Treat 1998;52:289–303.
14 Pfisterer J, Kommoss F, Sauerbrei W, Menzel D, Kiechle M, Giese E, Hilgarth M, Pfleiderer A: DNA flow cytometry in node positive breast cancer: Prognostic value and correlation to morphological and clinical factors. Anal Quant Cytol Histol 1995;17:406–412.
15 Schmoor C, Olschewski M, Schumacher M: Randomized and non-randomized patients in clinical trials: Experiences with comprehensive cohort studies. Stat Med 1996;15:263–271.
16 Schumacher M, Bastert G, Bojar H, Hübner K, Olschewski M, Sauerbrei W, Schmoor C, Beyerle C, Neumann RLA, Rauschecker HF, for the GBSG: A randomized 2×2 trial evaluating hormonal treatment and the duration of chemotherapy in node-positive breast cancer patients. J Clin Oncol 1994;12:2086–2093.
17 Ulm K, Schmoor C, Sauerbrei W, Kemmler G, Aydemir U, Mueller B, Schumacher M: Strategien zur Auswertung einer Therapiestudie mit der Überlebenszeit als Zielkriterium. Biometrie Informatik Med Biol 1989;20:171–205.
18 Sauerbrei W, Schumacher M: A bootstrap resampling procedure for model building: Application to the Cox regression model. Stat Med 1992;11:2093–2109.
19 Sauerbrei W: The use of resampling methods to simplify regression models in medical statistics. Appl Stat 1999;48:313–329.
20 Mazumdar M, Glassman JR; Categorizing a prognostic variable: Review of methods: Code for easy implementation and applications to decision-making about cancer treatments. Stat Med 2000;19:113–132.
21 Altman DG, Lausen B, Sauerbrei W, Schumacher M: Dangers of using 'optimal' cutpoints in the evaluation of prognostic factors. J Natl Cancer Inst 1994;86:829–835.
22 Courdi A, Hery M, Chauvel P, et al: Prognostic value of continuous variables in breast cancer and head and neck cancer: Dependence on the cut-off level. Br J Cancer 1988;64:88–90.
23 Miller R, Siegmund D: Maximally selected chi square statistics. Biometrics 1982;38:1011–1016.
24 Lausen B, Schumacher M: Maximally selected rank statistics. Biometrics 1992;38:73–85.
25 Hilsenbeck SG, Clark GM: Practical P-value adjustment for optimally selected cutpoint. Stat Med 1996;15:103–112.

26 Schumacher M, Holländer N, Sauerbrei W: Resampling and cross-validation techniques: A tool to reduce bias caused by model building? Stat Med 1997;16:2813–2827.
27 Holländer N, Schumacher M: On the problem of using 'optimal' cutpoints in the assessment of quantitative prognostic factors. Onkologie 2001;24:194–199.
28 Royston P, Altman DG: Regression using fractional polynomials of continuous covariates: Parsimonious parametric modelling (with discussion). Appl Stat 1994;43:429–467.
29 Sauerbrei W, Royston P: Building multivariable prognostic and diagnostic models: Transformation of the predictors by using fractional polynomials. J R Stat Soc Ser A 1999;162:71–94; corrigendum: J R Stat Soc Ser A 2002;165:399–400.
30 Sauerbrei W, Royston P, Bojar H, Schmoor C, Schumacher M, for the German Breast Cancer Study Group: Modelling the effects of standard prognostic factors in node positive breast cancer. Br J Cancer 1999;79:1752–1760.
31 Simon R, Altman DG: Statistical aspects of prognostic factor studies in oncology. Br J Cancer 1994;69:979–985.
32 Schmoor C, Sauerbrei W, Schumacher M: Sample size considerations for the evaluation of prognostic factors in survival analysis. Stat Med 2000;19:441–452.
33 Schumacher M, Holländer N, Schwarzer G, Sauerbrei W: Prognostic factor studies; in Crowley J (ed): Handbook of Statistics in Clinical Oncology. New York, Dekker, 2001, pp 321–378.
34 Miller AJ: Subset Selection in Regression. London, Chapman and Hall, 1990.
35 Harrell FE, Lee KL, Mark DB: Multivariable prognostic models: Issues in developing models, evaluating assumptions and adequacy, and measuring and reducing errors. Stat Med 1996;15:361–387.
36 Breiman L, Friedman JH, Olshen RA, Stone CJ: Classification and Regression Trees. Monterey, Wadsworth; 1984.
37 Cheng B, Titterington DM: Neural networks: A review from a statistical perspective (with discussion). Stat Sci 1994;9:2–54.
38 Penny W, Frost D: Neural networks in clinical medicine. Med Decis Making 1996;16:386–398.
39 Katz M: Multivariable analysis: A primer for readers of medical research. Ann Intern Med 2003;138:644–650.
40 Baker E, Krebs D, Sellin D, Schulz BO: Analysis of survival times with respect to prognostic factors in cancer patients using Cox hazard models. Tumor Diagn Ther 1985;6:185–190.
41 Bradborn MJ, Clark TG, Love SB, Altman DG: Survival analysis. III. Multivariate data analysis – Choosing a model and assessing its adequacy and fit. Br J Cancer 2003;89:605–611.
42 Vach W: Some issues in estimating the effect of prognostic factors from incomplete covariate data. Stat Med 1997;16:57–72.
43 Van Buuren S, Boshuizen HC, Knook DL: Multiple imputation of missing blood pressure covariates in survival analysis. Stat Med 1999;18:681–694.
44 Begg CB, Berlin JA: Publications bias: A problem of interpreting medical data. J R Stat Soc Ser A 1988;151:419–463.
45 Schulz KF, Chalmers I, Hayes RJ, Altman DG: Empirical evidence of bias: Dimensions of methodological quality associated with estimates of treatment effects in controlled trials. JAMA 1995;273:408–412.
46 Dickersin K: How important is publication bias? Synthesis of available data. AIDS Educ Prev 1997;9(suppl A):15–21.
47 Altman DG: Systematic reviews of studies of prognostic variables; in Egger M, Davey S, Altman DG (eds): Systematic Reviews in Health Care: Meta-Analysis in Context. London, BMJ Publishing Group, 2001, pp 228–247.
48 Blettner M, Sauerbrei W, Schlehofer B, Scheuchenpflug T, Friedenreich C: Traditional reviews, meta-analyses and pooled analyses in epidemiology. Int J Epidemiol 1998;28:1–9.

Dr. Willi Sauerbrei, PD
Universitätsklinikum Freiburg, Abteilung Medizinische Biometrie und Statistik
Stefan-Meier-Strasse 26, DE–79104 Freiburg (Germany)
Tel. +49 761 203 6669, Fax +49 761 203 6677, E-Mail wfs@imbi.uni-freiburg.de

Author Index

Subject Index